

Modern Carpentry



Fred T. Hodgson



Modern Carpentry

A PRACTICAL MANUAL

Containing full Instructions for Performing
all Kinds of Work in Carpentry
Joinery and General Woodwork

By
FRED T. HODGSON

VOLUME I

ILLUSTRATED

FREDERICK J. DRAKE & COMPANY
Published Expressly for SEARS, ROEBUCK & CO.

Copyright 1917, 1913, 1903 and 1902

By

FREDERICK J. DRAKE & Co.

Printed in U. S. A.

PREFACE

"Good wine," says Shakespeare, "needs no bush," which of course means that when a thing is good in itself, praise makes it no better. So with a book, if it is good, it needs no preface to make it better. The author of this book flatters himself that the work he has done on it, both as author and compiler, is good; therefore, from his standpoint a preface to it is somewhat a work of supererogation. His opinion regarding the quality of the book may be questioned, but after forty years' experience as a writer of books for builders, all of which have met with success, and during that time over thirty years editor of one of the most popular building journals in America, he feels his opinion, reinforced as it is by thousands of builders and woodworkers throughout the country, should be entitled to some weight. Be that as it may, however, this little book is sent out with a certainty that the one and a half million of men and boys who earn their living by working wood, and fashioning it for useful or ornamental purposes, will appreciate it, because of its main object, which is to lessen their labors by placing before them the quickest and most approved methods of construction.

To say more in this preface is unnecessary and a waste of time for both reader and author.

FRED T. HODGSON.

PREFACE TO SECOND EDITION.

MODERN CARPENTRY.

VOL. I.

The necessity of preparing a second edition of this work has become so urgent that its publication cannot be longer delayed. The demand for it has almost outgrown our means of production, and our supply is about exhausted, so we hasten to take advantage of this condition to enlarge and improve the work and render it more acceptable and valuable than ever. The additions and improvements now made to the work, are of so very useful and practical a character, that we are sure they will prove of benefit to the workman, and to the general student of the carpenter and joiners' art.

It is hardly necessary for me to indulge in a long preamble setting forth the good qualities contained in the contents of this work, as all this has been before the people now for several years; all recent developments in the carpenter trade, however, have been added, so that the present volume will be found to contain the very latest practice of doing things. The additional matter and diagrams will, I am sure, commend themselves to the workman, and will, I hope, prove a help to him in his everyday labors.

FRED T. HODGSON.

MODERN CARPENTRY

PART I

CARPENTER'S GEOMETRY

CHAPTER I

THE CIRCLE

While it is not absolutely necessary that, to become a good mechanic, a man must need be a good scholar or be well advanced in mathematics or geometry, yet, if a man be proficient in these sciences they will be a great help to him in aiding him to accomplish his work with greater speed and more exactness than if he did not know anything about them. This, I think, all will admit. It may be added, however, that a man, the moment he begins active operations in any of the constructional trades, commences, without knowing it, to learn the science of geometry in its rudimentary stages. He wishes to square over a board and employs a steel or other square for this purpose, and, when he scratches or pencils a line across the board, using the edge or the tongue of the square as a guide, while the edge of the blade is against the edge of the board or parallel with it, he thus solves his first geometrical problem, that is, he makes a right angle with the edge of the board. This is one step forward in the path of geometrical science.

He desires to describe a circle, say of eight inches diameter. He knows instinctively that if he opens his

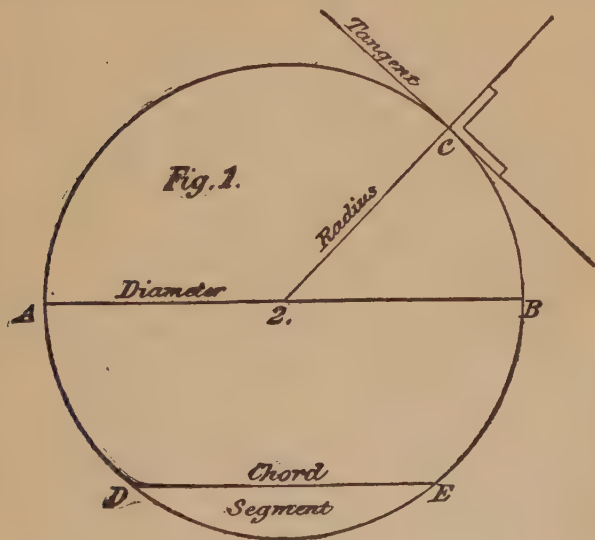
compasses until the points of the legs are four inches apart,—or making the radius four inches—he can, by keeping one point fixed, called a “center,” describe a circle with the other leg, the diameter of which will be eight inches. By this process he has solved a second geometrical problem, or at least he has solved it so far that it suits his present purposes. These examples, of course, do not convey to the operator the more subtle qualities of the right angle or the circle, yet they serve, in a practical manner, as assistants in every-day work.

When a man becomes a good workman, it goes without saying that he has also become possessor of a fair amount of practical geometrical knowledge, though he may not be aware of the fact.

The workman who can construct a roof, hipped, gabled, or otherwise, cutting all his material on the ground, has attained an advanced practical knowledge of geometry, though he may never have heard of Euclid or opened a book relating to the science. Some of the best workmen I have met were men who knew nothing of geometry as taught in the books, yet it was no trouble for them to lay out a circular or elliptical stairway, or construct a rail over them, a feat that requires a knowledge of geometry of a high order to properly accomplish.

These few introductory remarks are made with the hope that the reader of this little volume will not be disheartened at the threshold of his trade, because of his lack of knowledge in any branch thereof. To become a good carpenter or a good joiner, a young man must begin at the bottom, and first learn his A, B, C's, and the difficulties that beset him will disappear one after another as his lessons are learned. It

must always be borne in mind, however, that the young fellow who enters a shop, fully equipped with a knowledge of general mathematics and geometry, is in a much better position to solve the work problems that crop up daily, than the one who starts work without such equipment. If, however, the latter fellow be a boy possessed of courage and perseverance, there is no



reason why he should not "catch up"—even overtake—the boy with the initial advantages, for what is then learned will be more apt to be better understood, and more readily applied to the requirements of his work. To assist him in "catching up" with his more favored shopmate, I propose to submit for his benefit a brief description and explanation of what may be termed "Carpenter's Geometry," which will be quite

sufficient if he learn it well, to enable him to execute any work that he may be called upon to perform; and I will do so as clearly and plainly as possible, and in as few words as the instructions can be framed so as to make them intelligible to the student.

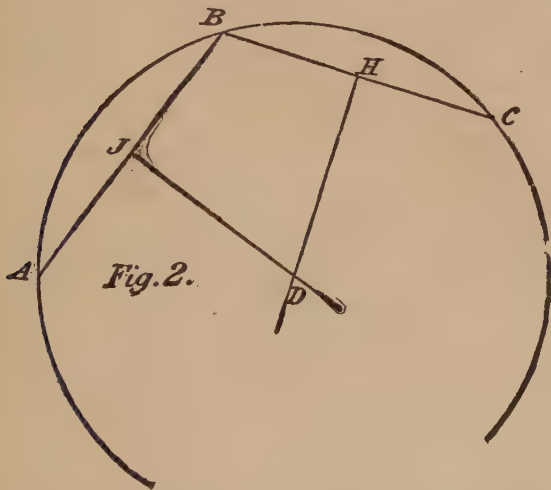
The circle shown in Fig. 1 is drawn from the center 2, as shown, and may be said to be a plain figure within a continual curved line, every part of the line being equally distant from the center 2. It is the simplest of all figures to draw. The line AB, which cuts the circumference, is called the diameter, and the line DE is denominated a chord, and the area enclosed within the curved line and the chord is termed a segment. The radius of a circle is a line drawn from the center 2 to the circumference C, and is always one-half the length of the diameter, no matter what that diameter may be. A tangent is a line which touches the circumference at some point and is at right angles with a radial line drawn to that point as shown at C.

The reader should remember these definitions as they will be frequently used when explanations of other figures are made; and it is essential that the learner should memorize both the terms and their significations in order that he may the more readily understand the problems submitted for solution.

It frequently happens that the center of a circle is not visible but must be found in order to complete the circle or form some part of the circumference. The center of any circle may be found as follows: let BHC, Fig. 2, be a chord of the segment H; and BJA a chord enclosing the segment. Bisect or divide in equal parts, the chord BC, at H, and square down from this point to D. Do the same with the chord AJB, squaring over from J to D, then the

point where JD and HD intersect, will be the center of the circle.

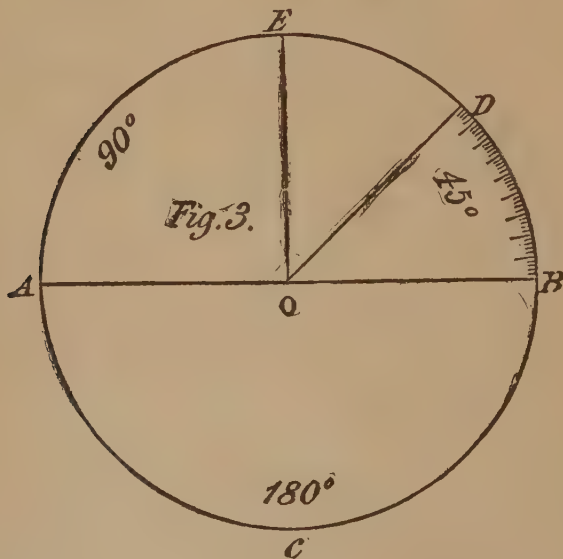
This is one of the most important problems for the carpenter in the whole range of geometry as it enables the workman to locate any center, and to draw curves he could not otherwise describe without this or other similar methods. It is by aid of this problem that through any three points not in a straight line, a



circle can be drawn that will pass through each of the three points. Its usefulness will be shown further on as applied to laying out segmental or curved top window, door and other frames and sashes, and the learner should thoroughly master this problem before stepping further, as a full knowledge of it will assist him very materially in understanding other problems.

The circumference of every circle is measured by being supposed to be divided into 360 equal parts, called *degrees*; each degree containing 60 *minutes*, a

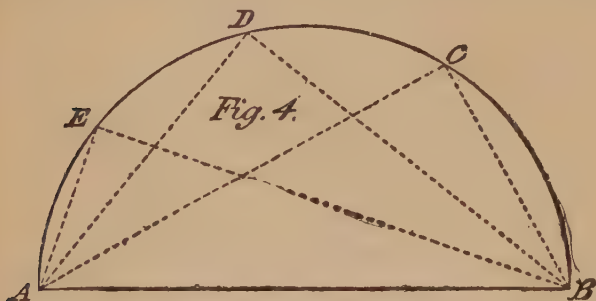
smaller division, and each minute into 60 *seconds*, a still smaller division. Degrees, minutes, and seconds are written thus: $45^{\circ} 15' 30''$, which is read, forty-five degrees, fifteen minutes, and thirty seconds. This, I think, will be quite clear to the reader. Arcs are measured by the number of degrees which they contain: thus, in Fig. 3, the arc AE, which contains 90° , is called a quadrant, or the quarter of a circumference, because



90° is one quarter of 360° , and the arc ABC which contains 180° , is a semi-circumference. Every angle is also measured by degrees, the degrees being reckoned on an arc included between its sides; described from the vertex of the angle as a center, as the point O, Fig. 3; thus, AOE contains 90° ; and the angle BOD, which is half a right angle, is called an angle of 45° , which is

the number it contains, as will be seen by counting off the spaces as shown by the divisions on the curved line BD. These rules hold good, no matter what may be the diameter of the circle. If large, the divisions are large; if small, the divisions are small, but the manner of reckoning is always the same.

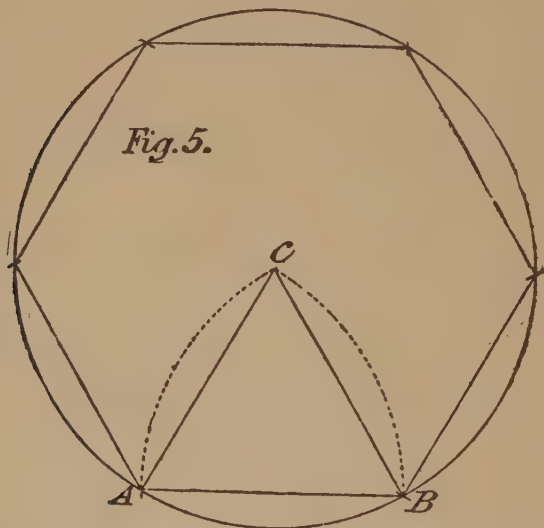
One of the qualities of the circle is, that when divided in two by a diameter, making two semicircles, any chord starting at the extremity of such a diameter, as at A or B, Fig. 4, and cutting the circumference at any point, as at C, D or E, a line drawn from this



point to the other extremity of the diameter, will form a right angle—or be square with the first chord, as is shown by the dotted lines BCA, BDA, and BEA. This is something to be remembered, as the problem will be found useful on many occasions.

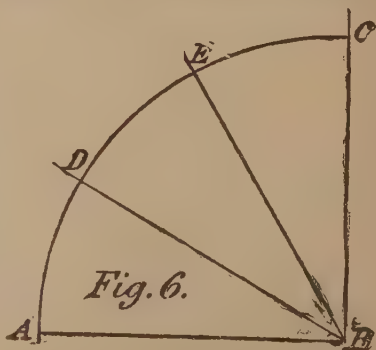
The diagram shown at Fig. 5 represents a hexagon within a circle. This is obtained by stepping around the circumference, with the radius of the circle on the compasses, six times, which divides the circumference into six equal parts; then draw lines to each point, which, when completed, will form a hexagon, a six-sided figure. By drawing lines from the points obtained in the circumference to the center, we get a

three-sided figure, which is called an equilateral triangle, that is, a triangle having all its sides equal in



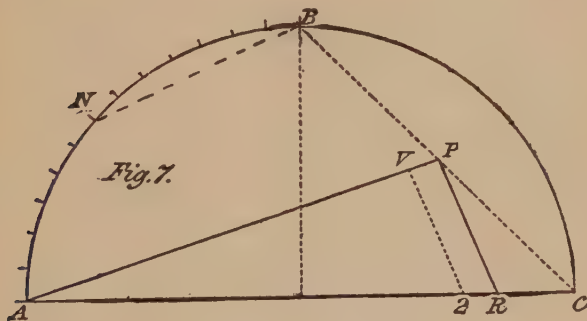
length; as AB, AC and BC. The dotted lines show how an equilateral triangle may be produced on a straight line if necessary.

The diagram shown at Fig. 6 illustrates the method of trisecting a right angle or quadrant into three equal parts. Let A be a center, and with the same radius intersect at E, thus the quadrant or right angle is divided into three equal parts.



If we wish to get the length of a straight line that shall equal the circumference of a circle or part of circle or quadrant, we can do so by proceeding as follows: Suppose Fig. 7 to represent half of the circle, as at ABC; then draw the chord BC, divide it at P, join it at A; then four times PA is equal to the circumference of a circle whose diameter is AC, or equal to the curve CB.

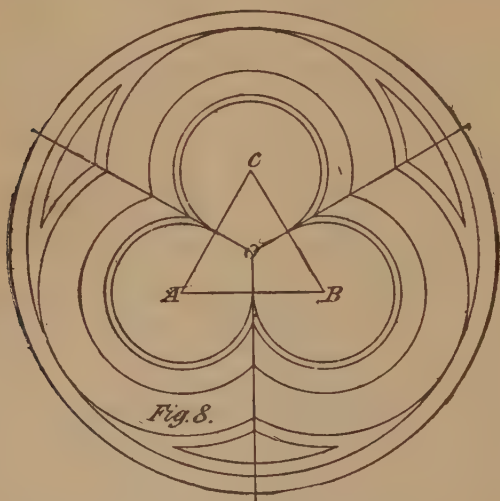
To divide the quadrant AB into any number of equal parts, say thirteen, we simply lay on a rule and make the distance from A to R measure three and one-



fourth inches, which are thirteen quarters or parts on the rule; make R2 equal one-fourth of an inch; join RP; draw from 2 parallel with RP, cutting at V; now take PV in the dividers and set off from A on the circle thirteen parts, which end at B, each part being equal to PV, and the problem is solved. The "stretchout" or length of any curved line in the circle can then be obtained by breaking it into segments by chords, as shown at BN.

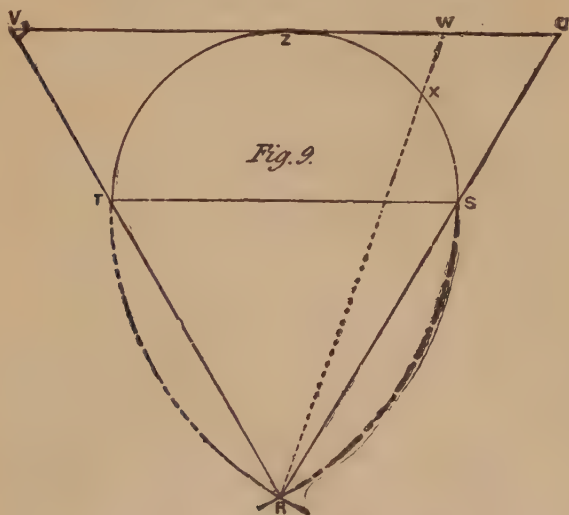
I have shown in Fig. 5, how to construct an equilateral triangle by the use of the compasses. I give at

Fig 8 a practical example of how this figure, in connection with circles, may be employed in describing a figure known as the trefoil, a figure made much use of in the construction of church or other Gothic work and for windows and carvings on doors and panelings. Each corner of the triangle, as ABC, is a center from which are described the curves shown within the outer circles. The latter curves are struck from the center



O, which is found by dividing the sides of the equilateral triangle and squaring down until the lines cross at O. The joint lines shown are the proper ones to be made use of by the carpenter when executing his work. The construction of this figure is quite simple and easy to understand, so that any one knowing how to handle a rule and compass should be able to construct it after a few minutes' thought. This figure is the key to most Gothic ornamentation, and is worth mastering.

There is another method of finding the length or "stretchout" of the circumference of a circle, which I show herewith at Fig. 9. Draw the semicircle SZT, and parallel to the diameter ST draw the tangent UZV; upon S and T as centers, with ST as radius, mark the arcs TR and SR; from R, the intersection of the arcs, draw RS and continue to U; also draw RT, and continue to V; then the line VU will nearly equal in



length the circumference of the semicircle. The length of any portion of a circle may be found as follows: Through X draw RW, then WU will be the "stretchout" or length of that portion of the circle marked SX. There are several other ways of determining by lines a near approach to the length of the circumference or a portion thereof; but, theoretically, the exact "stretchout" of a circumference has not been found by any of the known methods, either arith-

metically or geometrically, though for all practical purposes the methods given are quite near enough. No method, however, that is given geometrically is so simple, so convenient and so accurate as the arithmetical one, which I give herewith. If we multiply the diameter of a circle by 3.1416, the product will give the length of the circumference, very nearly. These figures are based on the fact that a circle whose diameter is 1—say one yard, one foot, or one inch—will have a circumference of nearly 3.1416 times the diameter.

With the exception of the formation of mouldings, and ornamentation where the circle and its parts take a prominent part, I have submitted nearly all concerning the figure, the everyday carpenter will be called

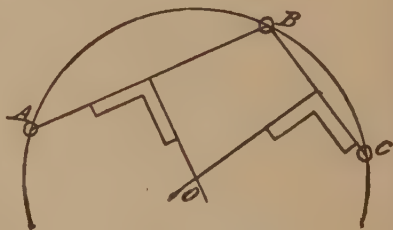


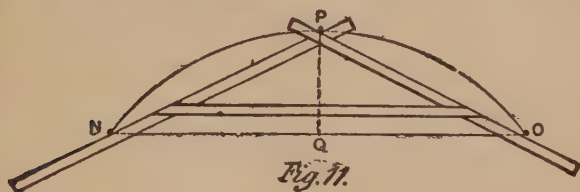
Fig. 10.

upon to employ, and when I approach the chapter on Practical Carpentry later on, I will try and show how to use the knowledge now given.

Before leaving the subject, however, it may be as well to show how a curve, having any reasonable radius, may be obtained—practically—if but three points in the circumference are available; as referred to in the explanation given of Fig. 5. Let us suppose there are three points given in the circumference of a circle, as ABC, Fig. 10, then the center of such circle can be found by connecting the points AB and BC by straight lines as shown, and by dividing these lines

and squaring down as shown until the lines intersect at O as shown. This point O is the center of the circle.

It frequently happens that it is not possible to find a place to locate a center, because of the diameter being so great, as in segmental windows and doors of large dimensions. To overcome this difficulty a method



has been devised by which the curve may be correctly drawn by nailing three wooden strips together so as to form a triangle, as shown in Fig. 11. Suppose NO to be the chord or width of frame, and QP the height of segment, measuring from the springing lines N and O; drive nails or pins at O and N, keep the triangle close against the nails, and place a pencil at P, then slide the triangle against the pins or nails while sliding, and the pencil will describe the necessary curve. The arms of the triangle should be several inches longer than the line NO, so that when the pencil P arrives at N or O, the arms will still rest against the pins.

CHAPTER II

POLYGONS

A polygon is a figure that is bounded by any number of straight lines; three lines being the least that can be employed in surrounding any figure, as a triangle, Fig. 1.

A polygon having three sides is called a trigon; it is also called an equilateral triangle. A polygon of four sides is called a tetragon; it is also called a square and



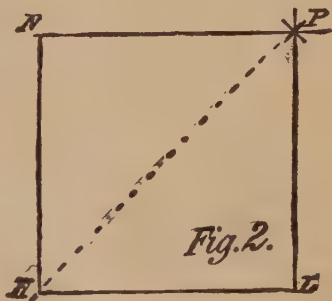
an equilateral rectangle. A polygon of five sides is a pentagon. A polygon of six sides is a hexagon. A polygon of seven sides is called a heptagon. A polygon of eight sides is called an

octagon. A polygon of nine sides is called a nonagon. A polygon of ten sides is called a decagon. A polygon of eleven sides is called an undecagon. And a polygon of twelve sides is called a dodecagon.

There are regular and irregular polygons. Those having equal sides are regular; those having unequal sides are irregular. Polygons having more than twelve sides are known among carpenters by being denominated as a polygon having "so many sides," as a "polygon with fourteen sides," and so on.

Polygons are often made use of in carpenter work, particularly in the formation of bay-windows, oriel, towers, spires, and similar work; particularly is this the case with the hexagon and the octagon; but the most used is the equilateral rectangle, or square; therefore it is essential that the carpenter should know considerable regarding these figures, both as to their qualities and their construction.

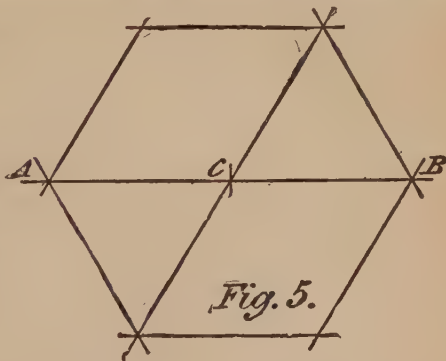
The polygon having the least lines is the trigon, a three-sided figure. This is constructed as follows: Let CD, Fig. 1, be any given line, and the distance CD the length of the side required. Then with one leg of the compass on D as a center, and the other on C, describe the arc shown at P. Then with C as a center, describe another arc at P, cutting the first arc. From this point of intersection draw the lines PD and PC, and the figure is complete. To get the miter joint of this figure, divide one side into two equal parts, and from the point obtained draw a line through opposite angle as shown by the dotted line, and this line will be the line of joint at C, or for any of the other angles.



The square, or equilateral rectangle, Fig. 2, may be obtained by a number of methods, many of which will suggest themselves to the reader. I give one method that may prove suggestive. Suppose two sides of a square are given, LHN, the other sides are found by taking HL as radius, and with LN for centers make the intersection in P, draw LP and NP, which com-

radius equal to AB, strike an arc; with the same radius and A and B as centers, intersect the arc in EC. By joining these points the pentagon is formed. The cut, or angle of joints, is found by raising a line from 2 and cutting D, as shown by the dotted line.

The hexagon, a six-sided figure shown at Fig. 4, is one of the simplest to construct. A quick method is described in Chapter I, when dealing with circles, but I show the method of construction in order to be certain that the student may be the better equipped to deal with the figure. Take the length of one side of the figure on compasses; make this length the radius of a circle, thus describe a circle as shown. Start from any point, as at A, and step around the circumference of the circle with the radius of it, and the points from which to draw the sides are found, as the radius of any circle will divide the circumference of that circle into six equal parts.

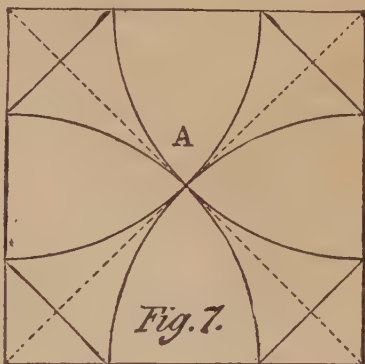


This figure may be drawn without first making a circle if necessary. Set off two equal parts, ABC, Fig. 5, making three centers; from each, with radius AC, make the intersection as shown, through which draw straight lines, and a hexagon is formed. The miter joint follows either of the straight lines passing through the center, the bevel indicating the proper angle.

tious young carpenter, who desires to become, not only a good workman, but a good draftsman as well.

The octagon or eight-sided figure claims rank next to the square and circle, in point of usefulness to the general carpenter, owing partly to its symmetry of form, and its simplicity of construction. There are a great number of methods of constructing this figure, but I will give only a few of the simplest, and the ones most likely to be readily understood by the ordinary workman.

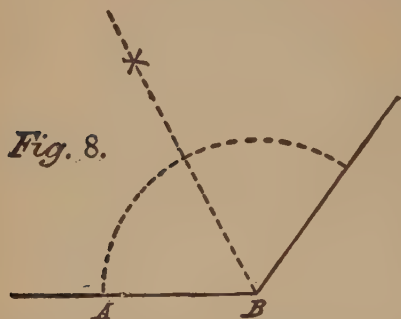
One of the simplest methods of forming an octagon is shown at Fig. 7, where the corners of the square are used as centers, and to the center A of the square for radius. Parts of a circle are then drawn and continued until the boundary lines are cut. At the points found draw diagonal lines across the corner as shown, and the figure will be a complete octagon, having all its sides of equal length.



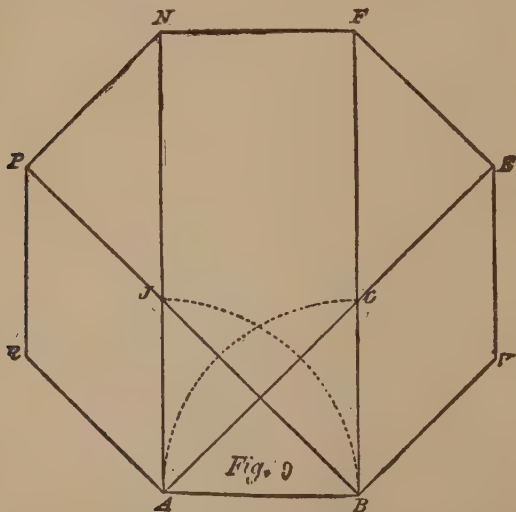
The method of obtaining the joint cut or miter for an octagon is shown at Fig. 8, where the angle ABC, is divided into two equal angles by the following process: From B, with any radius, strike an arc, giving A and C as centers, from which, with any radius, make an intersection, as shown, and through it from B, draw a line, and the proper angle for the cut is obtained, the dotted line being the angle sought. By this method

of bisecting an angle, no matter how obtuse or acute it may be, the miter joint or cut may be obtained. This

is a very useful problem, as it is often called into requisition for cutting mouldings in panels and other work, where the angles are not square, as in stair spandrils and raking wainscot.

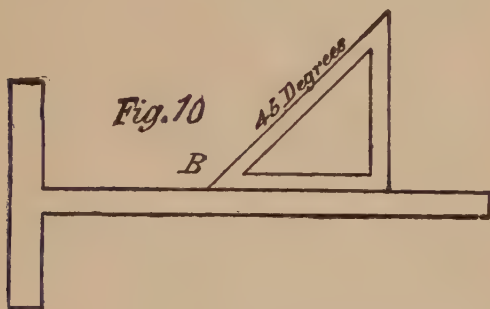


To construct an octagon when the length of one of its sides is given, as AB, Fig. 9, square up the two lines, AN, BF, then



take AB as radius with A and B as centers, and draw the arcs, cutting the two lines at C and J;

draw from AB, through CJ, and again from A draw parallel with BJ; then draw from B parallel with AC; make BV and CF equal AB; join EV; make CF equal CA; square over FN; join FE; draw NP parallel with AC, then join PR, and the figure is complete.

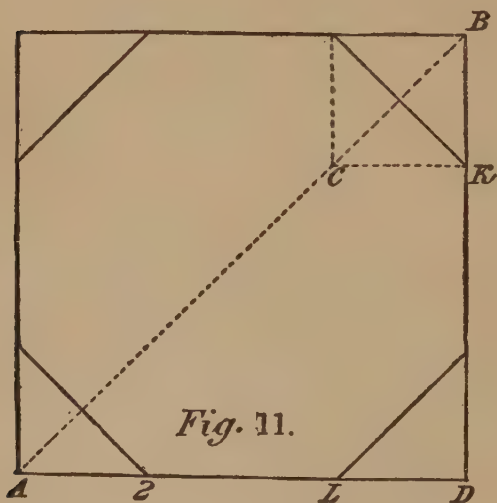


As the sides of all regular octagons are at an angle of 45° with each other, it follows that an octagon may be readily constructed by making use of a set square having its third side to correspond with an angle of 45° , for by extending the line AB, and laying the set square on the line with one point at B, as shown in Fig. 10, the line BV, Fig. 9, can be drawn, and when made the same length as BV, the process can be repeated to VE; and so on until all the points have been connected.

Suppose we have a square stick of timber 12 x 12 inches, and any length, and we wish to make it an octagon; we will first be obliged to find the gauge points so as to mark the stick, to snap a chalk line on it so as to tell how much of the corners must be removed in order to give to the stick eight sides of equal width. We do this as follows: Make a drawing the size of a

section of the timber, that is, twelve inches square, then draw a line from corner to corner as AB, Fig. 11, and make AC equal in length to AD, which is twelve inches; square over from C to K; set your gauge to BK, and run your lines to this gauge, and remove the corners off to lines, and the stick will then be an octagon having eight equal sides.

There are a number of other methods of finding the



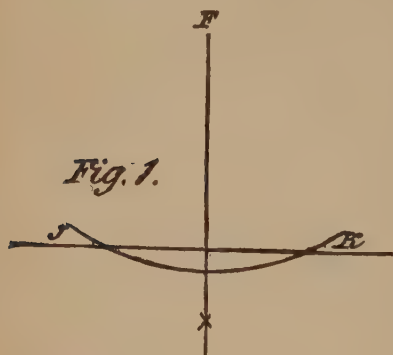
gauge points, some of which I may describe further on, but I think I have dwelt long enough on polygons to enable the reader to lay off all the examples given. The polygons not described are so seldom made use of in carpentry, that no authority that I am aware of describes them when writing for the practical workman; though in nearly all works on theoretical geom-

etry the figures are given with all their qualities. If the solution of any of the problems offered in this work requires a description and explanation of polygons with a greater number of sides than eight, such explanation will be given.

CHAPTER III

SOME STRAIGHT LINE SOLUTIONS

The greatest number of difficult problems in carpentry are susceptible of solution by the use of straight lines and a proper application of the steel square, and



in this chapter I will endeavor to show the reader how some of the problems may be solved, though it is not intended to offer a treatise on the subject of the utility of the steel square, as that subject has been treated at length in other

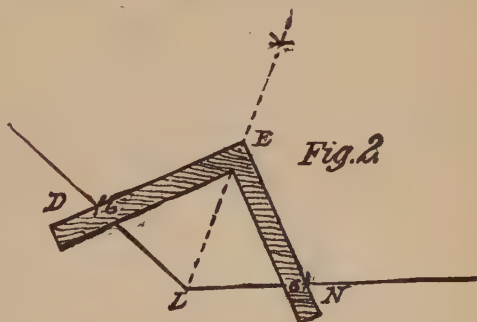
works, and another and exhaustive work is now in preparation; but it is thought no work on carpentry can be complete without, at least, showing some of the solutions that may be accomplished by the proper use of this wonderful instrument, and this will be done as we proceed.

One of the most useful problems is one that enables us to make a perpendicular line on any given straight line without the aid of a square. This is obtained as follows: Let JK, Fig. 1, be the given straight line, and make F any point in the square or perpendicular line required. From F with any radius, strike the arc

cutting in JK; with these points as centers, and any radius greater than half JK, make intersection as shown, and from this point draw a line to F, and this line is the perpendicular required. Foundations, and other works on a large scale are often "squared" or laid out by this method, or by another, which I will submit later.

In a previous illustration I showed how to bisect an angle by using the compasses and straight lines, so as to obtain the proper joints or miters for the angles. At Fig. 2, I show how this may be done by the aid of the steel square alone,

as follows: The angle is obtuse, and may be that of an octagon or pentagon or other polygon. Mark any two points on the angle, as DN,



equally distant from the point of angle L; apply the steel square as shown, keeping the distance EN and ED the same, then a line running through the angle L and the point of the square E will be the line sought.

To bisect an acute angle by the same method, proceed as follows: Mark any two points AC, Fig. 3, equally distant from B; apply the steel square as shown, keeping its sides on AC; then the distance on each side of the square being equal from the corner gives it for a point, through which draw a line from B, and the angle is divided. Both angles shown are divided by the same method, making the intersection

To get a correct miter cut, or, in other words, an angle of 45° , on a board, make either of the points A or C, Fig. 5, the starting point for the miter, on the edge of the board, then apply the square as shown, keeping the figure 12" at A or C, as the case may be, with the figure 12" on the

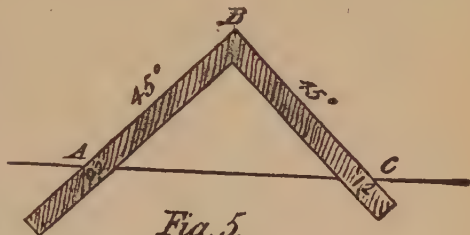


Fig. 5.

other blade of the square on the edge of the board as shown; then the slopes on the edge of the square from A to B and C to B, will form angles of 45° with the base line AC. This problem is useful from many points of view, and will often suggest itself to the workman in his daily labor.

To construct a figure showing on one side an angle of 30° and on the other an angle of 60° , by the use of

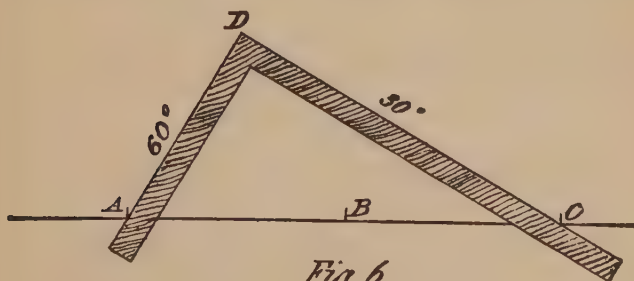
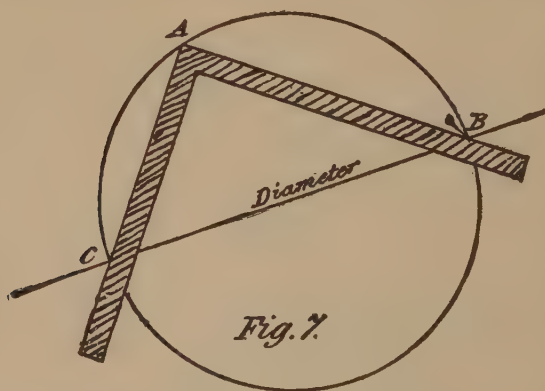


Fig. 6.

the steel square, we go to work as follows: Mark on the edge of a board two equal spaces as AB, BC, Fig. 6. apply the square, keeping its blade on AC and making

AD equal AB; then the angles 30° and 60° are formed as shown. If we make a templet cut exactly as shown in Fig. 5, also a templet cut as shown in this last figure, and these templets are made of some hard wood, we get a pair of set squares for drawing purposes, by which a large number of geometrical problems and drawing kinks may be wrought out.

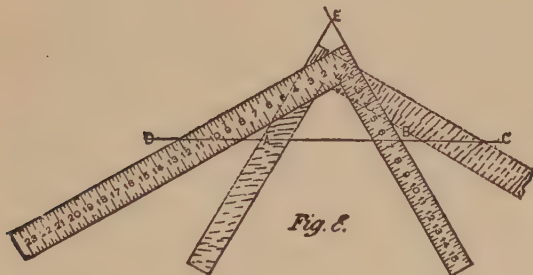
The diameter of any circle within the range of the steel square may be determined by the instrument as follows: The corner of the square touching any part of the circumference A, Fig. 7, and the blade cutting in points C, B, gives the diameter of the circle as



shown. Another application of this principle is, that the diameter of a circle being known, the square may be employed to describe the circumference. Suppose CB to be the known diameter; then put in two nails as shown, one at B and the other at C, apply the square, keeping its edges firmly against the nails, continually sliding it around, then the point of the square A will describe half the circumference. Apply the

square to the other side of the nails, and repeat the process, when the whole circle will be described. This problem may be applied to the solution of many others of a similar nature.

At Fig. 8, I show how an equilateral triangle may be obtained by the use of a square. Draw the line



DC; take 12 on the blade and 7 on the tongue; mark on the tongue for one side of the figure. Make the distance from D to A equal to the desired length of one side of the figure. Reverse the square, placing it as shown by the dotted lines in the sketch, bringing 7 of the tongue against the point A. Scribe along the tongue, producing the line until it intersects the first line drawn in the point E, then AEB will be an equilateral triangle. A method of describing a hexagon by the square, is shown at Fig. 9, which is quite simple. Draw the line GH; lay off the required length of one side on this line, as DE. Place the square as before, with 12 of the blade and 7 of the tongue against the line GH; placing 7 of the tongue against the point D, scribe along the tongue for the side DC. Place the square as shown by the dotted lines; bringing 7 of the tongue against the point E, scribe the side EF. Con-

tinue in this way until the other half of the figure is drawn. All is shown by FABC.

The manner of bisecting angles has been shown in Figs. 2, 3 and 4 of the present chapter, so that it is not necessary to repeat the process at this time.

The method of describing an octagon by using the square, is shown at Fig. 10. Lay off a square

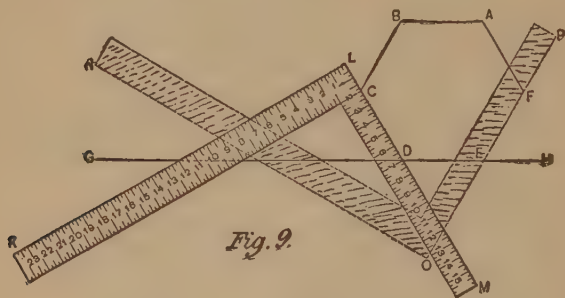


Fig. 9.

section with any length of sides, as AB. Bisect this side and place the square as shown on the side AB, with the length bisected on the blade and tongue; then the tongue cuts the side at the point to gauge for the piece to be removed. To find the size of square required for an octagonal prism, when the side is given: Let CD equal the given side; place the square on the

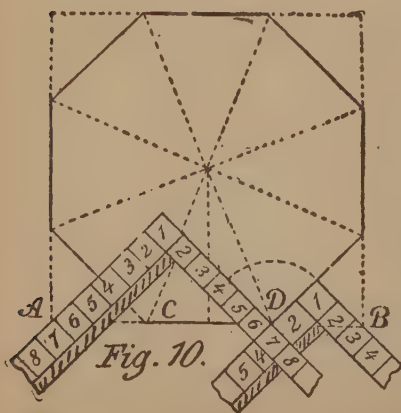
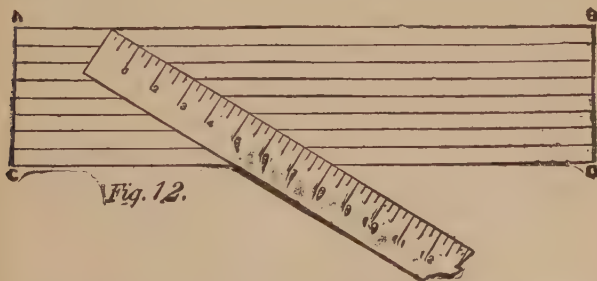


Fig. 10.

line of the side, with one-half of the side on the blade and tongue; then the tongue cuts the line at the point B, which determines the size of the square, and the piece to be removed.

A near approximation to the length or stretch-out of a circumference of a circle may be obtained by the aid of the steel square and a straight line, as follows: Take three diameters of the circle and measure up the side of the blade of the square, as shown at Fig. 11, and fifteen-sixteenths of one diameter on the tongue. From these two points



draw a diagonal, and the length of this diagonal will be the length or stretch-out of the circumference nearly.

If it is desired to divide a board or other substance into any given number of equal parts, without going through the process of calculation, it may readily be done by the aid of the square or even a pocket rule. Let AC, BD, Fig. 12, be the width of the board or

other material, and this width is seven and one-quarter inches, and we wish to divide it into eight equal parts. Lay on the board diagonally, with furthestmost point of the square fair with one edge, and the mark 8 on the square on the other edge; then prick off the inches, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 and 7 as shown, and these points will be the gauge points from which to draw the parallel lines. These lines, of course, will be something less than one inch apart.

If the board should be more than eight inches wide, then a greater length of the square may be used, as for instance, if the board is ten inches wide, and we wish to divide it into eight equal parts, we simply make use of the figure 12 on the square instead of 8, and prick off the spaces every one and a half inches on the square. If the board is more than 12 inches wide, and we require the same number of divisions, we make use of figure 16 on the square, and prick off at every two inches. Any other divisions of the board may be obtained in a like manner, varying only the use of the figures on the square to get the number of divisions required.

As a number of problems in connection with actual work, will be wrought out on similar lines to the foregoing, further on in this book, I will close this chapter in order to give as much space as possible in describing the ellipse and the higher curves.

CHAPTER IV

ELLIPSES, SPIRALS, AND OTHER CURVES

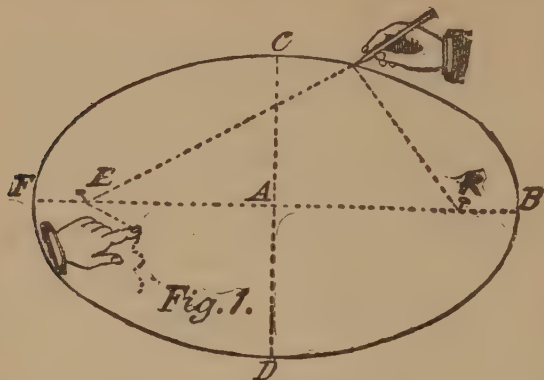
The ellipse, next to the circle, is the curve the carpenter will be confronted with more than any other, and while it is not intended to discuss all, or even a major part, of the properties and characteristics of this curve, I will endeavor to lay before the reader all in connection with it that he may be called upon to deal with.

According to geometers, an ellipse is a conic section formed by cutting a cone through the curved surface, neither parallel to the base nor making a subcontrary section, so that the ellipse like the circle is a curve that returns within itself, and completely encloses a space. One of the principal and useful properties of the ellipse is, that the rectangle under the two segments of a diameter is as the square of the ordinate. In the circle, the same ratio obtains, but the rectangle under the two segments of the diameter becomes equal to the square of the ordinate.

It is not necessary that we enter into a learned description of the relations of the ellipse to the cone and the cylinder, as the ordinary carpenter may never have any practical use of such knowledge, though, if he have time and inclination, such knowledge would avail him much and tend to broaden his ideas. Suffice for us to show the various methods by which this curve may be obtained, and a few of its applications to actual work.

One of the simplest and most correct methods of describing an ellipse, is by the aid of two pins, a string

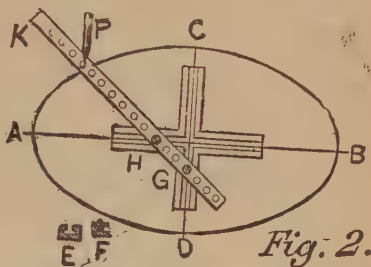
and a lead-pencil, as shown at Fig. 1. Let FB be the major or longest axis, or diameter, and DC the minor or shorter axis or diameter, and E and K the two foci



These two points are obtained by taking the half of the major axis AB or FA, on the compasses, and standing one point at D, cut the points E and K on the line FB, and at these points insert the pins at E and K as shown. Take a string as shown by the dotted lines and tie to the pins at K, then stand the pencil at C and run the string round it and carry the string to the pin E, holding it tight and winding it once or twice around the pin, and then holding the string with the finger. Run the pencil around, keeping the loop of the string on the pencil and it will guide the latter in the formation of the curve as shown. When one-half of the ellipse is formed, the string may be used for the other half, commencing the curve at F or B, as the case may be. This is commonly called "a gardener's oval," because gardeners make use of it for forming ornamental beds for flowers, or in making curves for

walks, etc., etc. This method of forming the curve, is based on the well-known property of the ellipse that the sum of any two lines drawn from the foci to their circumference is the same.

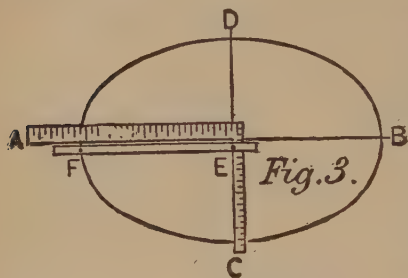
Another method of projecting an ellipse is shown at Fig. 2, by using a trammel. This is an instrument consisting of two principal parts, the fixed part



in the form of a cross as CD, AB, and the movable tracer HG. The fixed piece is made of two triangular bars or pieces of wood of equal thickness, joined together so as to be in the same plane. On one side of the frame when made, is a groove forming a right-angled cross; the groove is shown in the section at E. In this groove, two studs are fitted to slide easily, the studs having a section same as shown at F. These studs are to carry the tracer and guide it on proper lines. The tracer may have a sliding stud on the end to carry a lead-pencil, or it may have a number of small holes passed through it as shown in the cut, to carry the pencil. To draw an ellipse with this instrument, we measure off half the distance of the major axis from the pencil to the stud G, and half the minor axis from the pencil point to the stud H, then swing the tracer round, and the pencil will describe the ellipse required. The studs have little projections on their tops, that fit easily into the holes in the tracer, but this may be done away with, and two brad awls or pins may be thrust through the tracer and into the studs, and then

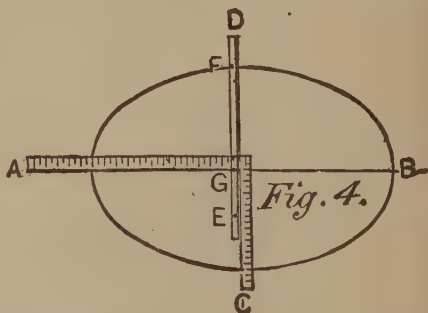
proceed with the work. With this instrument an ellipse may easily be described.

Another method, based on the trammel principle, is shown at Figs. 3 and 4, where the steel square is substituted for the instrument shown in Fig. 2. Draw the line AB, bisecting it at right angles, draw CD. Set off these lines the required dimensions of the ellipse to be drawn. Place an ordinary square as



shown. Lay the straightedge lengthwise of the figure, as shown in Fig. 3, and putting a pin at E against the square, place the pencil at F, at a point corresponding with the one of the figure. Next place the straight-

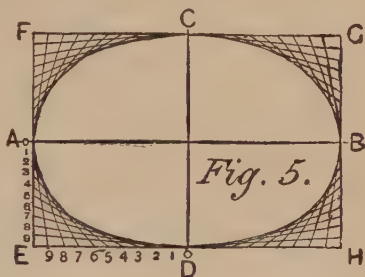
edge, as shown in Fig. 4, crosswise of the figure, and bring the pencil F to a point corresponding to one side of the figure, and set a pin at G. By keeping the two pins E and G against the square,



and moving the straightedge so as to carry the pencil from side to side, one-quarter of the figure will be struck. By placing the square in the same relative position in each of the other three-quarters, the other parts may be struck.

A method,—and one that is very useful for many purposes,—of drawing an ellipse approximately, is shown in Fig. 5. It is convenient and may be applied to hundreds of purposes, some of which will be illustrated as we proceed.

To apply this method, work as follows: First lay off the length of the required figure, as shown by AB, Fig. 5, and the width as shown by CD. Construct a parallelogram that shall have its sides tangent



to the figure at the points of its length and width, all as shown by EFGH. Subdivide one-half of the end of the parallelogram into any convenient number of equal parts, as shown at AE, and one-half of its side in the same manner, as shown by ED. Connect these two sets of points by intersecting lines in the manner shown in the engraving. Repeat the operation for each of the other corners of the parallelogram. A line traced through the inner set of intersections will be a very close approximation to an ellipse.

There are a number of ways of describing figures that approximate ellipses by using the compasses, some of them being a near approach to a true ellipse, and it is well that the workman should acquaint himself with the methods of their construction. It is only necessary that a few examples be given in this work, as a knowledge of these shown will lead the way to the construction of others when required. The method exhibited in Fig. 6 is, perhaps, the most useful of any employed by workmen, than all other methods com-

lined. To describe it, lay off the length CD, and at right angles to it and bisecting it lay off the width AB. On the larger diameter lay off a space equal to the shorter diameter or width, as shown by DE. Divide

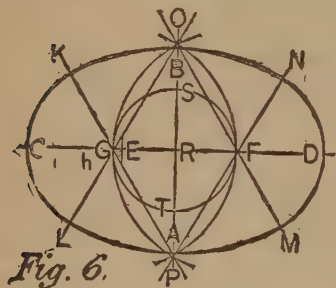


Fig. 6.

the remainder of the length or larger diameter EC into three equal parts; with two of these parts as a radius, and R as a center, strike the circle GSFT. Then, with F as a center, and FG as radius, and G as center and GF as radius, strike the arcs as

shown, intersecting each other and cutting the line drawn through the shorter diameter at O and P respectively. From O, through the points G and F, draw OL and OM, and likewise from P through the same points draw PK and PN. With O as center and OA as radius, strike the arc LM, and with P as center and with like radius, or PB which is the same, strike the arc KN. With F and G as centers, and with FD and CG which are the same, for radii, strike the arcs NM and KL respectively, thus completing the figure. Another method in which the centers for the longer arc are outside the curve lines, is shown at Fig 7. Let AB be the length and CD the breadth; join BD through the center of the line EB, and at

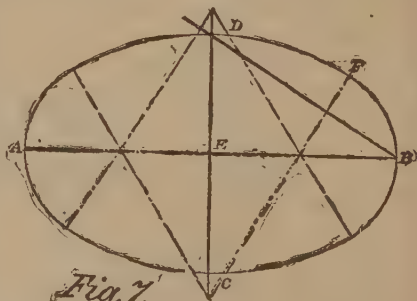


Fig. 7.

Let AB be the length and CD the breadth; join BD through the center of the line EB, and at

right angles to BD draw the line CF indefinitely; then at the points of intersection of the dotted lines will be found the points to describe the required ellipse.

A method of describing an ellipse by the intersection of lines is shown at Fig. 8, and which may be applied to any kind of an ellipse with longer or shorter axis. Let WX be

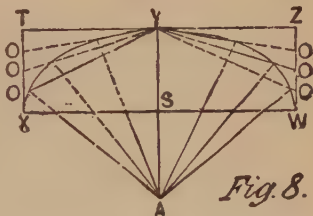


Fig. 8.

the given major axis, and YA the minor axis drawn at right angles to and at the center of each other.

Through Y parallel to WX draw ZT, parallel to AY, draw WZ and XT; divide WZ and XT into any number of equal parts, say four, and draw lines from the points

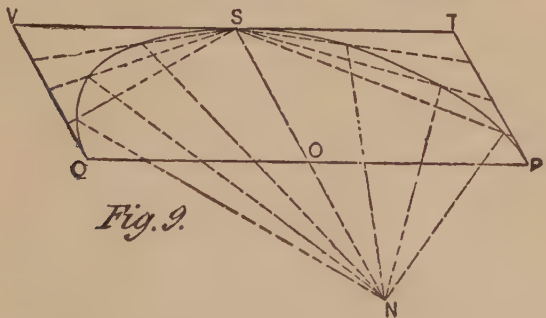


Fig. 9.

of division OOO, etc., to Y. Divide WS and XS each into the same number of equal parts as WZ and XT, and draw lines from A through these last points of division intersecting the lines drawn from OOO, etc., and at these intersections trace the semi-ellipse WYX. The other half of the ellipse may be described in the same manner.

To describe an ellipse from given diameters, by intersection of lines, even though the figure be on a rake: Let SN and QP, Fig. 9, be the given diameters, drawn through the centers of each other at any required angle. Draw QV and PT parallel to SN, through S draw TV parallel to QP. Divide into any number of equal parts PT, QV, PO, and OQ; then proceed as in Fig. 8, and the work is complete

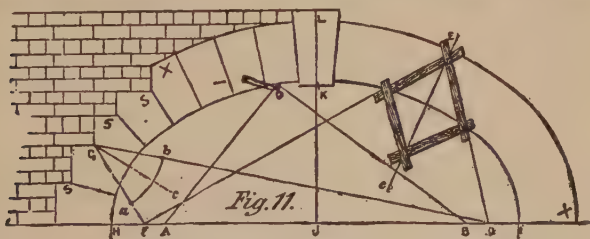
An ellipse may be described by the intersection of arcs as at Fig. 10. Lay off HG and JK as the given axes; then find the foci as described in Fig. 1. Between L and L and the center M mark any number of points at pleasure as 1, 2, 3, 4. Upon L and L with HI for radius describe arcs at O, O, O, O; upon L and with CI for radius describe intersecting arcs at O, O, O, and



O; then these points of intersection will be in the curve of the ellipse. The other points V, S, C, are found in the same manner, as follows: For the point V take H2 for one radius, and G2 for the other; S is found by taking H3 for one radius, and G3 for the other; C is found in like manner, with H4 for one radius, and G4 for the last radius, using the foci for centers as at first. Trace a curve through the points H, O, V, S, C, K, etc., to complete the ellipse

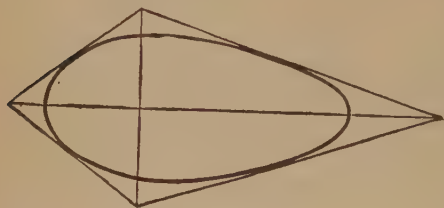
It frequently happens that the carpenter has to make

the radial lines for the masons to get their arches in proper form, as well as making the centers for the same, and, as the obtaining of such lines for elliptical work is very tedious, I illustrate a device that may be employed that will obviate a great deal of labor in producing such lines. The instrument and the method of using it is exhibited at Fig. 11 and marked Ee. The semi-ellipse HI, or xx, may be described with a string or strings, the outer line being described by use of a string fastened to the foci F and D, with the extreme point at E; and the inner line, with the string being fastened at A and B, with the pencil point in the tightened string at O. The sectional line LKJ shows the center of the arch, and the lines SSS are at



right angles with this vertical line. The usual method of finding the normal by geometry is shown at GABC, but the more practical method of finding it is by the use of the instrument, where Ee shows the normal. I believe the device is of French origin, and I give a translation of a description and use of the instrument: "It is made of four pieces of lath or metal put together so as to form a perfect rectangle and having its joints loose, as shown in the diagram. Considering that the most perfect elliptical curve is that described by a string from the foci (foyer) of the ellipse, draw the profiles of the extrados and intrados, as shown in Fig. 11, where your joints are to be, then take your

string, draw it to the point marked as at E, adjust two sides of your instrument to correspond with the lines of the string, then, from the point marked, draw a



line passing through the two angles, E and e, and the line Ee will be the normal or the radial line sought."

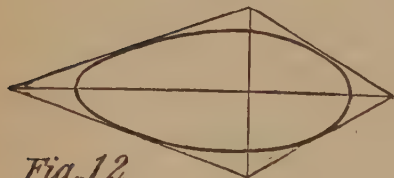


Fig. 12.

The oval is not an ellipse, nor are any of the figures obtained by using the compasses, as no part of an ellipse is a circle, though it

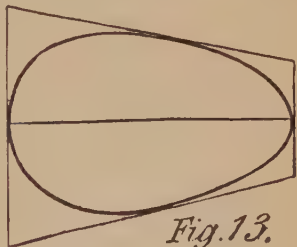
may approach closely to it. The oval may sometimes be useful to the carpenter, and it may be well to illustrate one or two methods by which these figures may be described.

Let us describe a diamond or lozenge-shaped figure, such as shown at Fig. 12, and then trace a curve inside of it as shown, touching the four sides of the figure, and a beautiful egg-shaped curve will be formed. For effect we may elongate the lozenge or shorten it at will, placing the short diameter at any point. This form of oval is much used by turners and lathe men generally, in the formation of pillars, balusters, newel-posts and turned ornamental work generally.

An egg-shaped oval may also be inscribed in a figure having two unequal but parallel sides, both of which

are bisected by the same line, perpendicular to both as shown in Fig. 13. These few examples are quite sufficient to satisfy the requirements of the workman, as they give the key by which he may construct any oval he may ever be called upon to form.

I have dwelt rather lengthily on the subject of the ellipse because of its being rather difficult for the workman to deal with, and it is meet he should acquire a fair knowledge of the methods of constructing it. It is not my province to enter into all the details of the properties of this very intersecting figure, as the workman can find many of these in any good work on mensuration, if he should require more. I may say here, however, that geometers so far have failed to discover



any scientific method of forming parallel ellipses, so that while the inside or outside lines of an ellipse can be obtained by any of the methods I have given, the parallel line must be obtained either by gauging the width of the material or space required, or must be obtained by "pricking off" with compasses or other aid. I thought it best to mention this as many a young man has spent hours in trying to solve the unsolvable problem when using the pins, pencil and string.

There are a number of other curves the carpenter will sometimes meet in daily work, chief among these being the scroll or spiral, so it will be well for him to have some little knowledge of its structure. A true spiral can be drawn by unwinding a piece of string that

has been wrapped around a cone, and this is probably the method adopted by the ancients in the formation of the beautiful Ionic spirals they produced. A spiral

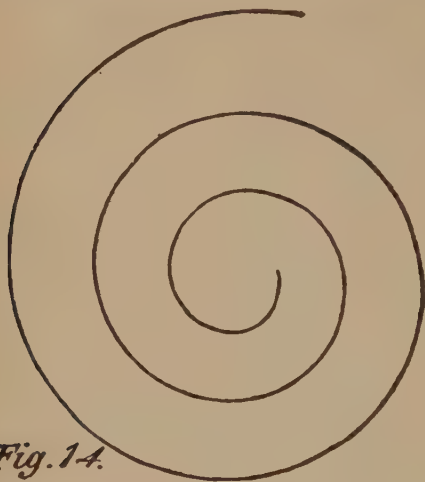


Fig. 14.

drawn by this method is shown at Fig. 14. This was formed by using two lead-pencils which had been sharpened by one of those patent sharpeners and which gave them the shape seen in Fig. 15. A piece of string was then tied

tightly around the pencil, and one end was wound round the conical end, so as to lie in notches made in one of the pencils; the point of a second pencil was pierced through the string at a convenient point near the first pencil, completing the arrangement shown in Fig. 15. To draw the spiral the pencils must be kept vertical, the point of the first being held firmly in the hole of the spiral, and the second pencil must then be carried around the first, the distance between the two increasing regularly, of course, as the string unwinds.



Fig. 15.

This is a rough-and-ready apparatus, but a true

spiral can be described by it in a very few minutes. By means of a larger cone, spirals of any size can, of course, be drawn, and that portion of the spiral can be used which conforms to the required height.

Another similar method is shown in Fig. 16, only in this case the string unwinds from a spool on a fixed center A, D, B. Make loop E in the end of the thread, in which place a pencil as shown. Hold the spool firmly and move the pencil around it, unwinding the thread. A curve will be described, as shown in the lines. It is evident that the proportions of the figure are determined by the size of the spool. Hence

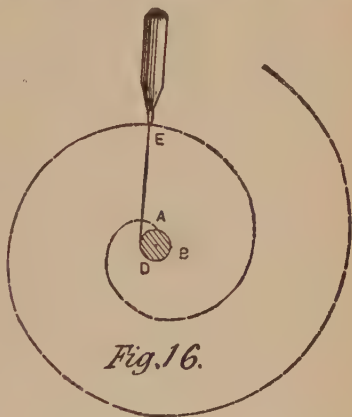


Fig. 16.

a larger or smaller spool is to be used, as circumstances require.

A simple method of forming a figure that corresponds to the

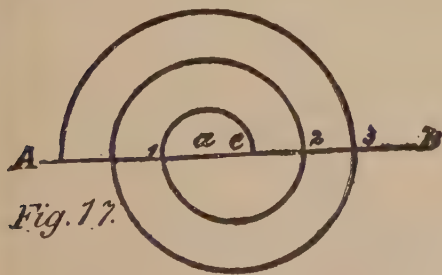


Fig. 17.

spiral somewhat, is shown in Fig. 17. This is drawn from two centers only, a and e, and if the distance between these centers is not too great, a fairly smooth appearance will be given to the figure. The method

of describing is simple. Take a_1 as radius and describe a semi-circle; then take e_1 and describe semi-circle 12 on the lower side of the line AB. Then with a_2 as radius describe semi-circle above the line; again, with e_3 as radius, describe semi-circle below the line AB; lastly with a_3 as radius describe semi-circle above the line.

In the spiral shown at Fig. 18 we have one drawn in a scientific manner, and which can be formed to

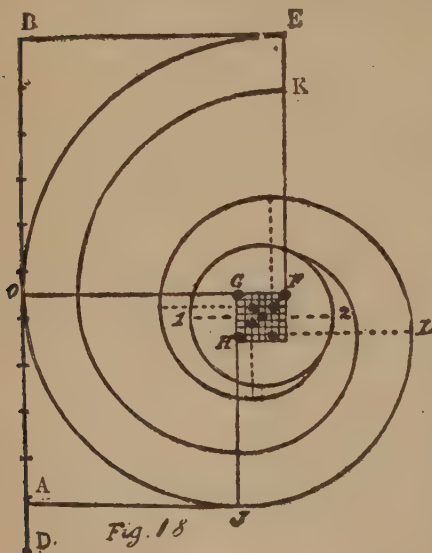


Fig. 18

dimensions. To draw it, proceed as follows: Let BA be the given breadth, and the number of revolutions, say one and three-fourths; now multiply one and three-fourths by four, which equals seven; to which add three, the number of times a side of a square is contained in the diameter of the eye, making ten in

all. Now divide AB into ten equal parts and set one from A to D, making eleven parts. Divide DB into two equal parts at O, then OB will be the radius of the first quarter OF, FE; make the side of the square, as shown at GF, equal to one of the eleven parts, and divide the number of parts obtained by multiplying the revolutions by four, which is seven; make the

diameter of the eye, 12, equal to three of the eleven parts. With F as a center and E as a radius make the quarter EO; then, with G as a center, and GO as a radius, mark the quarter OJ. Take the next center at H and HJL in the quarter; so keep on for centers, dropping one part each time as shown by the dotted angles. Let EK be any width desired, and carry it around on the same centers.

Another method of obtaining a spiral by arcs of circles is shown at Fig. 19, which may

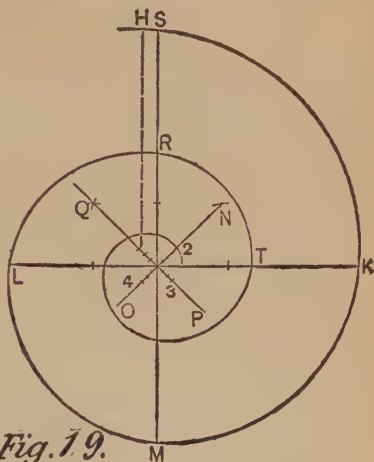


Fig. 19.

be confined to given dimensions. Proceed as follows: Draw SM and LK at right angles; at the intersection of these lines bisect the angles by the lines NO and QP; and on NO and QP from the intersection each way set off three equal parts as shown. On 1 as center and 1H as radius, describe the arc HK, on 2 describe the arc KM, on 3 describe the arc ML, on 4 describe the arc LR. The fifth center to describe the arc RT is under 1 on the line QP; and so proceed to complete the curve.

There are a few other curves that may occasionally prove useful to the workman, and I submit an example or two of each in order that, should occasion arise where such a curve or curves are required, they may be met with a certain amount of knowledge of the subject.

The first is the parabola, a curve sometimes used in bridge work or similar construction. Two examples of the curve are shown at Fig. 20, and the methods of describing them.

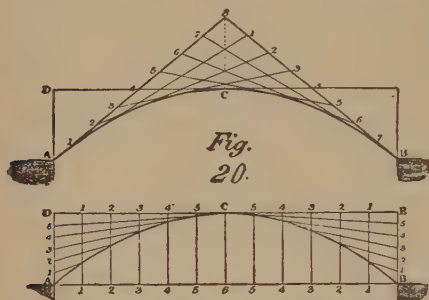


*Fig.
20.*

describing them.

The upper one is drawn as follows:

1. Draw C8 perpendicular to AB, and make it equal to AD.

Next, join A8 and B8, and divide both lines into the

same number of equal parts, say 8; number them as in the figure; draw 1, 1-2, 2-3, 3, etc., then these lines will be tangents to the curve; trace the curve to touch the center of each of those lines between the points of intersection.

The lower example is described thus: 1. Divide AD and BE, into any number of equal parts; CD and CE into a similar number.

2. Draw 1, 1-2, 2, etc., parallel to AD, and from the points of division in AD and BE, draw lines to C. The points of intersection of the respective lines are points in the curve.

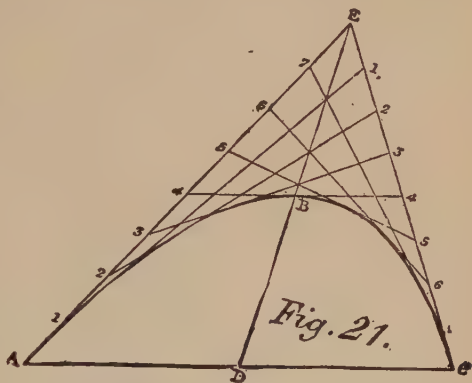
The curves found, as in these figures, are quicker at the crown than a true circular segment; but, where the rise of the arch is not more than one-tenth of the span, the variation cannot be perceived.

A raking example of this curve is shown in Fig. 21, and the method of describing it: Let AC be the ordinate or vertical line, and DB the axis, and B its vertex; produce the axis to E, and make BE equal to DB; join EC, EA, and divide them each into the same number

of equal parts, and number the divisions as shown on the figures. Join the corresponding divisions by the lines 11, 22, etc., and their intersections will produce the contour of the curve.

The hyperbola is somewhat similar in appearance to the parabola but it has properties peculiar to itself. It is a figure not much used in carpentry, but it may

be well to refer to it briefly: Suppose there be two



right equal cones, Fig. 22, having the same axis, and cut by a plane Mm , Nm , parallel to that axis, the sections MAN , mna , which result, are hyperbolas. In place of two cones opposite to each other, geometricians sometimes suppose four cones, which join on the lines EH , GB , Fig. 23, and of which axis form two right lines, Ff , $F'f'$, crossing the center C in the same plane.

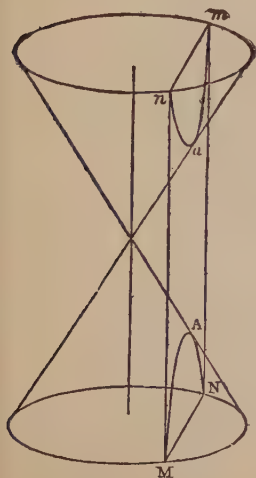


Fig. 22.

To describe a cycloid: The cycloid is the curve described by a point in the circumference of a circle rolling on a straight line, and is described as follows:

1. Let GH, Fig. 24, be the edge of a straight ruler, and C the center of the generating circle.

2. Through C draw the diameter AB perpendicular to GH, and EF parallel to GH; then AB is the height of the curve, and EF is the place of the center of the generating circle at every point of its progress.

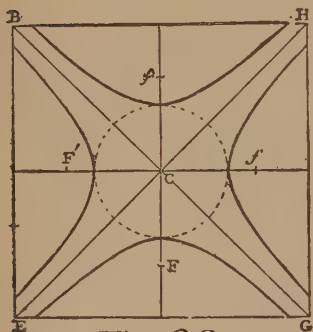


Fig. 23.

3. Divide the semi-circumference from B to A into any number of equal parts, say 8, and from A draw chords to the points of division.

4. From C, with a space in the dividers equal to one of the divisions on the circle, step off on each side the same number of spaces as the semi-circumference is divided into, and through the points draw perpendiculars to GH; number them as in the diagram.

5. From the points of division in EF with the

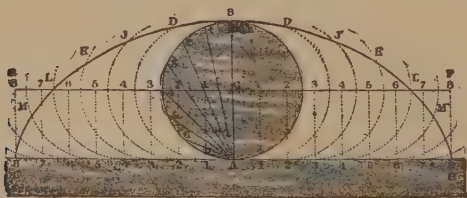


Fig. 24.

radius of the generating circle, describe indefinite arcs as shown by the dotted lines.

6. Take the chord AI in the dividers, and with the foot at I and I on the line GH, cut the indefinite arcs

described from 1 and 1 respectively at D and D', then D and D' are points in the curve.

7. With the chord A2, from 2 and 2 in GH, cut the indefinite arcs in J and J', with the chord A3, from 3 and 3, cut the arcs in K and K' and apply the other chords in the same manner, cutting the arcs in LM, etc.

8. Through the points so found trace the curve.

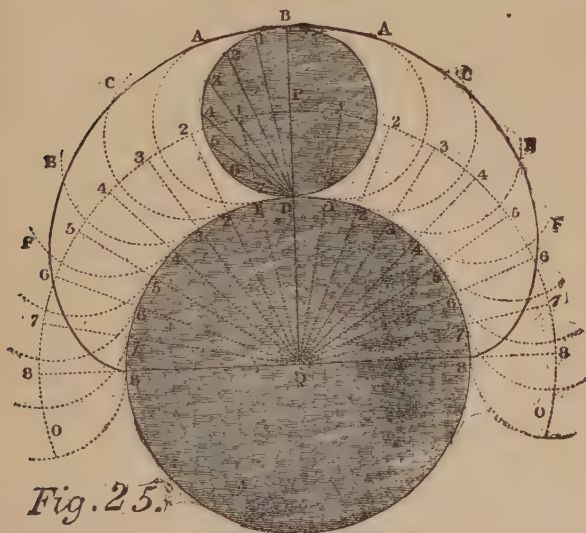


Fig. 25.

Each of the indefinite arcs in the diagram represents the circle at that point of its revolution, and the points D, J, K, etc., the position of the generating point B at each place. This curve is frequently used for the arches of bridges, its proportions are always constant, viz.: the span is equal to the circumference of the generating circle and the rise equal to the diameter. Cycloidal arches are frequently constructed which are

not true cycloids, but approach that curve in a greater or less degree.

The epicycloidal curve is formed by the revolution of a circle round a circle, either within or without its circumference, and described by a point B, Fig. 25, in the circumference of the revolving circle, and Q of the stationary circle.

The method of finding the points in the curve is here given:

1. Draw the diameter 8, 8 and from Q the center, draw QB at right angles to 8, 8.

2. With the distance QP from Q, describe an arc O, O representing the position of the center P throughout its entire progress.

3. Divide the semi-circle BD and the quadrants D8 into the same number of equal parts, draw chords from D to 1, 2, 3, etc., and from Q draw lines through the divisions in D8 to intersect the curve OO in 1, 2, 3, etc.

4. With the radius of P from 1, 2, 3, etc., in OO, describe indefinite arcs; apply the chords D1, D2, etc. from 1, 2, 3, etc., in the circumference of Q, cutting the indefinite arcs in A, C, E, F, etc., which are points in the curve.

We are now in a position to undertake actual work, and in the next chapter, I will endeavor to apply a part of what has preceded to practical examples, such as are required for every-day use. Enough geometry has been given to enable the workman, when he has mastered it all, to lay out any geometrical figure he may be called upon to execute; and with, perhaps, the exception of circular and elliptical stairs and hand-railings, which require a separate study, by what has been formulated and what will follow, he should be able to execute almost any work in a scientific manner that may be placed under his control.

PART II

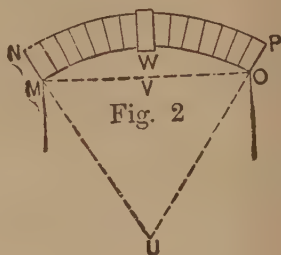
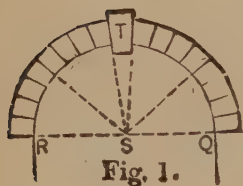
PRACTICAL EXAMPLES

CHAPTER I

We are now in a position to undertake the solution of practical examples, and I will commence this department by offering a few practical solutions that will bring into use some of the work already known to the student, if he has followed closely what has been presented.

It is a part of the carpenter's duty to lay out and construct all the wooden centers required by the bricklayer and mason for turning arches over openings of all kinds; therefore, it is essential he should know as much concerning arches as will enable him to attack the problems with intelligence. I have said something of arches, in Part I, but not sufficient to satisfy all the needs of the carpenter, so I supplement with the following on the same subject: Arches used in building are named according to their curves,—circular, elliptic, cycloid, parabolic, hyperbolic, etc. Arches are also known as three or four centered arches. Pointed arches are called lancet, equilateral and depressed. Voussoirs is the name given to the stones forming the arch; the central stone is called the keystone. The highest point in an arch is called the crown, the lowest the springing line, and the spaces between the crown and springing line on either side, the haunches or flanks. The under, or concave, sur-

face of an arch is called the intrados or soffit, the upper or convex surface is called the extrados. The span of an arch is the width of the opening. The supports of an arch are called abutments, piers, or



springing walls. This applies to the centers of wood, as well as to brick, stone or cement. The following six illustrations show the manner of getting the curves, as well as obtaining the radiating lines, which, as a rule, the carpenter will be asked to prepare for the mason. We take them in the following order:

Fig. 1. A Semi-circular Arch.—RQ is the span, and the line RQ is the springing line; S is the center from

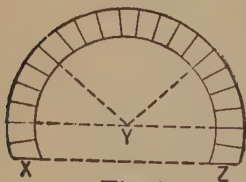


Fig. 3.

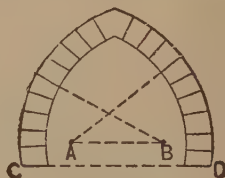


Fig. 4.

which the arch is described, and to which all joints of the voussoirs tend. T is the keystone of the arch.

Fig. 2. A Segment Arch.—U is the center from which the arch is described, and from U radiate all

the joints of the arch stones. The bed line of the arch OP or MN is called by mason builders a skew-back. OM is the span, and VW is the height or versed sine of the segment arch.

Figs. 3 and 4. Moorish or Saracenic Arches, one of which is pointed. Fig. 3 is sometimes called the horseshoe arch. The springing lines DC and ZX of both arches are below the centers BA and Y.

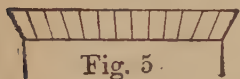


Fig. 5.

Fig. 5. A Form of Lintol Called a Platband, built in this form as a substitute for a segment arch over the opening of doors or windows, generally of brick, wedge-shaped.

Fig. 6. The Elliptic Arch.—This arch is most perfect when described with the trammel, and in that case

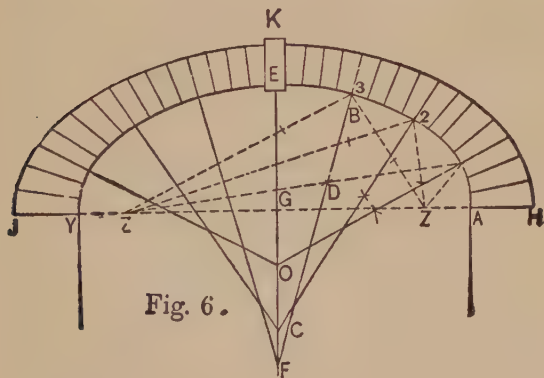
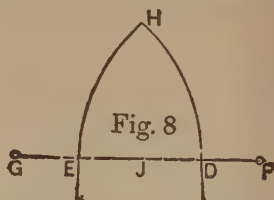
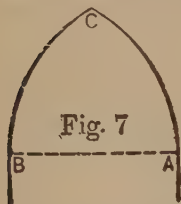


Fig. 6.

the joints of the arch stones are found as follows: Let ZZ be the foci, and B a point on the intrados where a joint is required; from ZZ draw lines to B, bisect the angle at B by a line drawn through the intersecting arcs D produced for the joint to F. Joints at 1 and 2

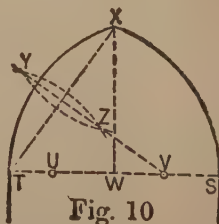
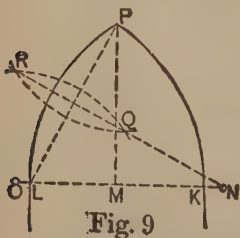
are found in the same manner. The joints for the opposite side of the arch may be transferred as shown. The semi-axes of the ellipse, HG, GK, are in the same ratio as GE to GA. The voussoirs near the springing



line of the arch are thus increased in size for greater strength. I gave a very good description of this latter arch in Part I, which see.

Another series of arches, known as Gothic arches, are shown as follows, with all the centers of the curve given, so that their formation is rendered quite simple. The arch shown at Fig. 7 is equilateral and its outlines have been shown before. I repeat, however, let AB be the given span; on A and B as centers with AB as radius, describe the arcs AC and BC.

The lancet arch, Fig. 8, is drawn as follows: DE is the given span; bisect DE in J, make DF and EG equal DJ; on F as center with FE as radius describe



the arc EH, and on G as center describe the arc DH.

A lancet arch, not so acute as the previous one, is

shown at Fig. 9. Let KL be the given span; bisect KL in M , make MP at right angles to KL and of the required height; connect LP , bisect LP by a line through the arcs R, Q produced to N ; make MO equal MN ; with N and O as centers, with NL for radius describe the arcs KP and LP . Fig. 10 shows a low or drop arch, and is obtained as follows: Let ST be the given span, bisect ST in W ; let WX be the required height at right angles to TS ; connect TX ,

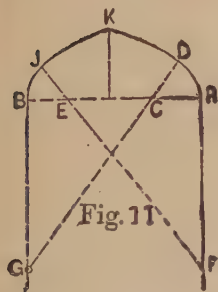


Fig. 11

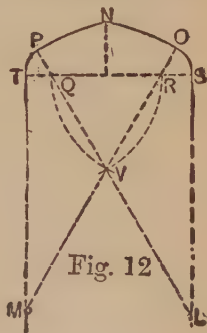


Fig. 12

bisect TX by a line through the arcs YZ produced to V , make TU equal SV ; on V and U as centers with VT as radius describe the arcs TX and SX . Another Gothic arch with a still less height is shown at Fig. 11. Suppose AB to be the given span; then divide AB into four equal parts; make AF and BG equal AB , connect FE and produce to D ; with CA as radius, on C and E , describe the arcs AD and BK ; on F and G as centers, describe the arcs JK and DK .

Another four-centred arch of less height is shown at Fig. 12. Let SI be the given span, divide into six equal parts; on R and Q as centers with RQ as radius describe the arcs QV and RV , connect QV and RV and produce to L and M ; on R and Q as centers with QT as

radius describe the arcs TP and SO; on L and M as centers describe the arcs PN and ON.

To describe an equilateral Ogee arch, like Fig. 13, proceed as follows: Make YZ the given span; make

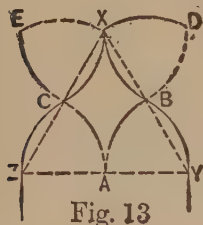


Fig. 13



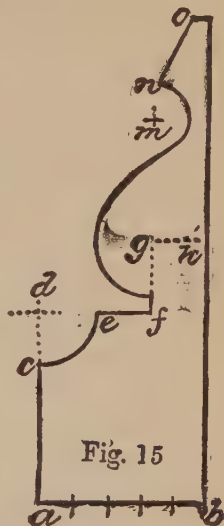
Fig. 14

YX equal YZ, bisect YZ in A; on A as center with AY as radius describe the arcs YB and ZC; on B and X as centers describe the arcs BD and XD, and on C and X as centers describe the arcs CE and XE, on E and D as centers describe the arcs BX and CX.

Fig. 14 shows the method of obtaining the lines for an Ogee arch, having a height equal to half the span. Suppose FH to be the span, divide into four equal parts, and at each of the points of division draw lines LN, KG and JO at right angles to FH; with LF for radius on L and J describe the quarter circles FM and HP; and with the same radius on O and N describe the quarter circles PG and MG.

These examples—all or any of them—can be made use of in a great number of instances. Half of the Ogee curve is often employed for veranda rafters, as for the roofs of bay-windows, for tower roofs and for bell bases, for oriel and bay-windows, and many other pieces of work the carpenter will be confronted with from time to time. They also have value as aids in forming mouldings and other ornamental work, as for

example Fig. 15, which shows a moulding for a base or other like purpose. It is described as follows: Draw AB; divide it into five equal parts; make CD equal to four of these. Through D draw DF parallel with AB. From D, with DC as radius, draw the arc CE. Make EF equal to DE; divide EF into five parts; make the line above F equal to one of these; draw FG equal to six of these. From G, with radius DE, describe the arc; bisect GF, and lay the distance to H. It is the center of the curve, meeting the semi-circle described from M. Join NO, OS, and the moulding is complete.

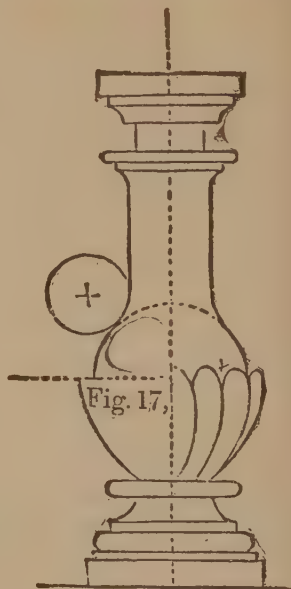
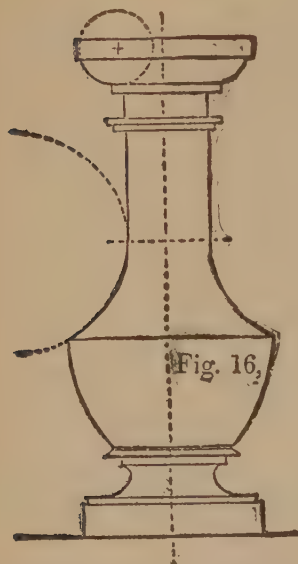


The two illustrations shown at Figs. 16 and 17 will give the student an idea of the manner in which he can apply the knowledge he has now obtained, and it may not be out of place to say that with a little ingenuity he can form almost any sort of an ornament he wishes by using this knowledge. The two illustrations require no explanation as their formation is self evident. Newel posts, balusters, pedestals and other turned or wrought ornaments, may be designed easily if a little thought be brought to bear on the subject.

The steel square is a great aid in working out problems in carpentry, and I will endeavor to show, as briefly as possible, how the square can be applied to some difficult problems, and insure correct solutions.

It is unnecessary to give a full and complete description of the steel square. Every carpenter and joiner is

supposed to be the possessor of one of these useful tools, and to have some knowledge of using it. It is not everyone, however, who thoroughly understands its powers or knows how to employ it in solving all



the difficulties of framing, or to take advantage of its capabilities in laying out work. While it is not my intention to go deeply into this subject in this volume, as that would lengthen it out to unreasonable limits, so it must be left for a separate work, yet there are some simple things connected with the steel square, that I think every carpenter and joiner should know, no matter whether he intends to go deeper into the study of the steel square or not. One of these things is the learning to read the tool. Strange as it may,

appear, not over one in fifty of those who use the square are able to read it, or in other words, able to explain the meaning and uses of the figures stamped on its two sides. The following will assist the young fellows who want to master the subject.

The square consists of two arms, at right angles to each other, one of which is called the blade and which is two feet long, and generally two inches wide. The other arm is called the tongue, and may be any length from twelve to eighteen inches, and $1\frac{1}{4}$ to 2 inches in width. The best square has always a blade 2 inches wide. Squares made by firms of repute are generally perfect and require no adjusting or "squaring."

The lines and figures formed on squares of different make sometimes vary, both as to their position on the square and their mode of application, but a thorough understanding of the application of the scales and lines shown on any first-class tool, will enable the student to comprehend the use of the lines and figures exhibited on any good square.

It is supposed the reader understands the ordinary divisions and subdivisions of the foot and inch into twelfths, inches, halves, quarters, eighths and sixteenths, and that he also understands how to use that part of the square that is subdivided into twelfths of an inch. This being conceded, we now proceed to describe the various rules as shown on all good squares. Sometimes the inch is subdivided into thirty-seconds, in which the subdivision is very fine, but this scale will be found very convenient in the measurement of drawings which are made to a scale of half, quarter, one-eighth or one-sixteenth of an inch to a foot.

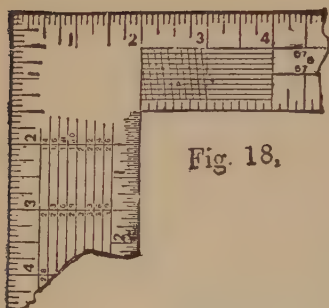


Fig. 18,

intended for taking off hundredths of an inch The

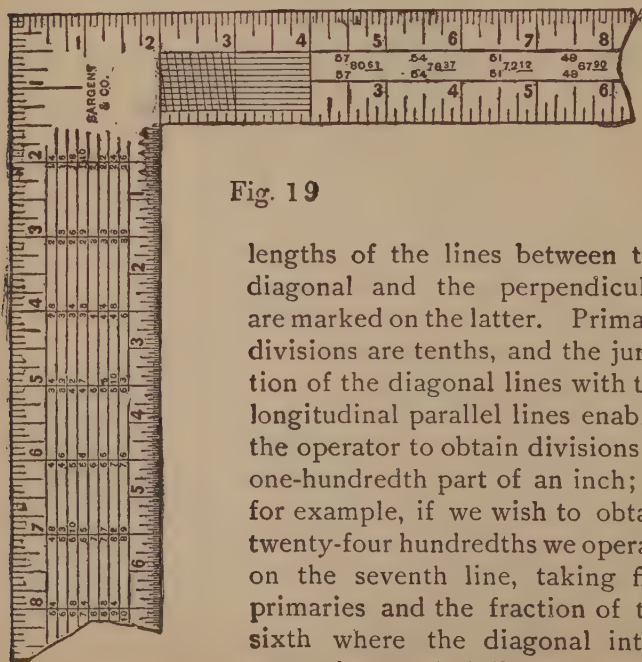


Fig. 19

lengths of the lines between the diagonal and the perpendicular are marked on the latter. Primary divisions are tenths, and the junction of the diagonal lines with the longitudinal parallel lines enables the operator to obtain divisions of one-hundredth part of an inch; as for example, if we wish to obtain twenty-four hundredths we operate on the seventh line, taking five primaries and the fraction of the sixth where the diagonal intersects the parallel line, as shown

by the "dots" on the compasses, and this gives us the distance required.

The use of the scale is obvious, and needs no further explanation, as the dots or points are shown.

The lines of figures running across the blade of the square, as shown in Fig. 19, forms what is a very convenient rule for determining the amount of material in length or width of stuff. To use it proceed as follows: If we examine we will find under the figure 12, on the outer edge of the blade, where the length of the boards, plank or scantling to be measured is given, and the answer in feet and inches is found under the inches in width that the board, etc., measures. For example, take a board nine feet long and five inches wide, then under the figure 12, on the second line, will be found the figure 9, which is the length of the board; then run along this line to the figure directly under the five inches (the width of the board) and we find three feet nine inches, which is the correct answer in 'board measure.' If the stuff is three inches thick it is trebled, etc., etc. If the stuff is longer than any figures shown on the square it can be measured as above and doubling the result. This rule is calculated, as its name indicates, for board measure, or for surfaces 1 inch in thickness. It may be advantageously used, however, upon timber by multiplying the result of the face measure of one side of a piece by its depth in inches. To illustrate, suppose it be required to measure a piece 25 feet long, 10x14 inches in size. For the length we will take 12 and 13 feet. For the width we will take 10 inches, and multiply the result by 14. By the rule a board 12 feet long and 10 inches wide contains 10 feet, and one 13 feet long and 10 inches wide, 10 feet 10 inches. Therefore, a board 25 feet long and 10 inches wide must contain 20 feet and

10 inches. In the timber above described, however, we have what is equivalent to 14 such boards, and therefore we multiply this result by 14, which gives 291 feet and 8 inches the board measure.

Along the tongue of the square following the diagonal scale is the brace rule, which is a very simple and very convenient method of determining the length of any brace of regular run. The length of any brace simply represents the hypotenuse of a right-angled triangle. To find the hypotenuse extract the square root of the sum of the squares of the perpendicular and horizontal runs. For instance, if 6 feet is the horizontal run and 8 feet the perpendicular, 6 squared equals 36, 8 squared equals 64; 36 plus 64 equals 100, the square root of which is 10. These are the rules generally used for squaring the frame of a building.

If the run is 42 inches. 42 squared is 1764, double that amount, both sides being equal, gives 3528, the square root of which is, in feet and inches, 4 feet 11.40 inches.

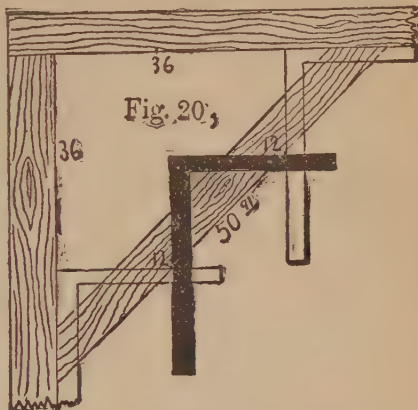
In cutting braces always allow in length from a sixteenth to an eighth of an inch more than the exact measurement calls for.

Directly under the half-inch marks on the outer edge of the back of the tongue, Fig. 19, will be noticed two figures, one above the other. These represent the run of the brace, or the length of two sides of a right-angled triangle; the figures immediately to the right represent the length of the brace or the hypotenuse. For instance, the figures $\frac{57}{8}$, and 80.61 show that the run on the post and beam is 57 inches, and the length of the brace is 80.61 inches.

Upon some squares will be found brace measurements given, where the run is not equal, as $\frac{18}{24}$.30. It will be noticed that the last set of figures are each just

three times those mentioned in the set that are usually used in squaring a building. So if the student or mechanic will fix in his mind the measurements of a few runs, with the length of braces, he can readily work almost any length required.

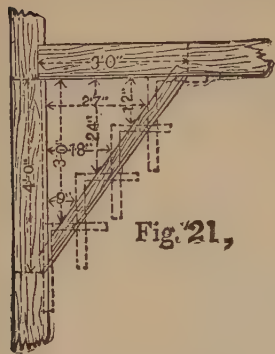
Take a run, for instance, of 9 inches on the beam and 12 inches on the post. The length of



brace is 15 inches. In a run, therefore, of 12, 16, 20, or any number of times above the figures, the length of the brace will bear the same proportion to the run as the multiple used. Thus if you multiply all the figures by 3 you will have 36 and 48 inches for the run, and 60 inches for the brace, or to remember still more easily, 3, 4 and 5 feet.

There is still another and an easier method of obtaining the lengths of braces by aid of the square, also the bevels as may be seen in Fig. 20, where the run is 3 feet, or 36 inches, as marked. The length and bevels of the brace are found by applying the square three times in the position as shown; placing 12 and 12 on the edge of the timber each time. By this method both length and bevel are obtained with the least amount of labor. Braces having irregular runs may be operated in the same manner. For instance, suppose we wish to set in a brace where the run is 4 feet and 3 feet; we simply take 9 inches on the

tongue and 12 inches on the blade and apply the square four times, as shown in Fig. 21, where the brace is given in position. Here we get both the proper length and the exact bevels. It is evident from this that braces, regular or irregular, and of any length, may be obtained with bevels for same by this method, only care must be taken in adopting the figures for the purpose.



If we want a brace with a two-foot run and a four-foot run, it must be evident that as two is the half of four, so on the square take 12 inches on the tongue, and 6 inches on the blade, apply four times and we have the length and the bevels of a brace for this run.

For a three-by-four foot run take 12 inches on the tongue and 9 inches on the blade, and apply four times, because as 3 feet is $\frac{3}{4}$ of four feet, so 9 inches is $\frac{3}{4}$ of 12 inches.

While on the subject of braces I submit the following table for determining the length of braces for any run from six inches to fourteen feet. This table has been carefully prepared and may be depended upon as giving correct measurements. Where the runs are regular or equal the bevel will always be a miter or angle of 45° , providing always the angle which the brace is to occupy is a right angle—a “square.” If the run is not equal, or the angle not a right angle, then the bevels or “cuts” will not be miters, and will have to be obtained either by taking figures on the square or by a scaled diagram.

TABLE

LENGTH OF RUN		LENGTH OF BRACE		LENGTH OF RUN		LENGTH OF BRACE						
ft.	in.	ft.	in.	ft.	in.	ft.	in.					
6	×	6	=	8.48	4	3	×	4	3	=	6	0.12
6	×	9	=	10.81	4	3	×	4	6	=	6	2.27
9	×	9	=	1 0.72	4	3	×	4	9	=	6	4.49
1 0	×	1 0	=	1 4.97	4	3	×	5 0	=	6	6.74	
1 0	×	1 3	=	1 7.20	4	6	×	4	6	=	6	4.36
1 3	×	1 3	=	1 9.23	4	6	×	4	9	=	6	6.51
1 3	×	1 6	=	1 11.43	4	6	×	5 0	=	6	8.72	
1 6	×	1 6	=	2 1.45	4	9	×	4	9	=	6	8.61
1 6	×	1 9	=	2 3.65	4	9	×	5 0	=	6	10.75	
1 9	×	1 9	=	2 5.69	5	0	×	5 0	=	7	0.85	
1 9	×	2 0	=	2 7.89	5	3	×	5 3	=	7	5.09	
2 0	×	2 0	=	2 9.94	5	6	×	5 6	=	7	9.33	
2 0	×	2 3	=	3 0.12	5	9	×	5 9	=	8	1.58	
2 0	×	2 6	=	3 2.41	6	0	×	6 0	=	8	5.82	
2 3	×	2 6	=	3 4.36	6	3	×	6 3	=	8	10.06	
2 6	×	2 6	=	3 6.42	6	6	×	6 6	=	9	2.30	
2 6	×	2 9	=	3 8.59	6	9	×	6 9	=	9	6.55	
2 9	×	2 9	=	3 10.66	7	0	×	7 0	=	9	10.79	
2 9	×	3 0	=	4 0.83	7	3	×	7 3	=	10	3.03	
3 0	×	3 0	=	4 2.91	7	6	×	7 6	=	10	7.28	
3 0	×	3 3	=	4 5.02	7	9	×	7 9	=	10	11.52	
3 0	×	3 6	=	4 7.31	8	0	×	8 0	=	11	3.76	
3 0	×	3 9	=	4 9.62	8	3	×	8 3	=	11	8.00	
3 3	×	3 3	=	4 7.15	8	6	×	8 6	=	12	0.24	
3 3	×	3 6	=	4 9.31	8	9	×	8 9	=	12	4.49	
3 3	×	3 9	=	4 11.54	9	0	×	9 0	=	12	8.73	
3 3	×	4 0	=	5 1.84	9	6	×	9 6	=	13	5.22	
3 6	×	3 6	=	4 11.39	10	0	×	10 0	=	14	1.70	
3 6	×	3 9	=	5 1.55	10	6	×	10 6	=	14	10.19	
3 6	×	4 0	=	5 3.78	11	0	×	11 0	=	15	6.67	
3 9	×	3 9	=	5 3.63	11	6	×	11 6	=	16	3.16	
3 9	×	4 0	=	5 5.79	12	0	×	12 0	=	16	11.64	
4 0	×	4 0	=	5 7.88	12	6	×	12 6	=	17	8.13	
4 0	×	4 3	=	5 10.03	13	0	×	13 0	=	18	4.61	
4 0	×	4 6	=	6 0.25	13	6	×	13 6	=	19	1.10	
4 0	×	4 9	=	6 2.51	14	0	×	14 0	=	19	9.58	
4 0	×	5 0	=	6 4.83								

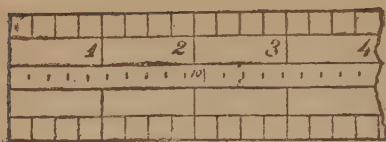


Fig. 22.

There is on the tongue of the square a scale called the "octagonal scale." This is generally on the opposite side to

the scales shown on Fig. 19. Fig. 22 exhibits a portion of the tongue on which this scale is shown. It is the central division on which the number 10 is seen along with a number of divisions. It is used in this way: If you have a stick 10 inches square which you wish to dress up octagonal, make a center mark on each face, then with the compasses, take 10 of the spaces marked by the short cross-lines in the middle of the scale, and lay off this distance each side of the center lines, do the same at the other end of the stick, and strike a chalk line through these marks. Dress off the corners to the lines, and the stick will be octagonal. If the stick is not straight it must be gauged, and not marked with the chalk line. Always take a number of spaces equal to the square width of the octagon in inches. This scale can be used for large octagons by doubling or trebling the measurements.

On some squares, there are other scales, but I do not advise the use of squares that are surcharged with too many scales and figures, as they lead to confusion and loss of time.

It will now be in order to offer a few things that can be done with the steel square, in a shorter time than by applying any other methods. If we wish to get the



Fig. 23.

length and bevels for any common rafter it can be done on short notice by using the square as shown in Fig. 23. The pitch of the roof will, of course, govern the figures to be employed on the blade and tongue. For a quarter pitch, the figures must be 6 and 12. For half pitch, 12 and 12 must be used. For a steeper pitch, 12 and a larger figure must be used according to the pitch required. For the lower pitches, 8 and 12 gives a one-third pitch and 9 and 12 a still steeper pitch; and from this the workman can obtain any pitch he requires. If the span is 24 feet, the square must be applied 12 times, as 12 is half of 24. And so with any other span: The square must be applied half as many times as there are feet in the width. This is self-evident. The bevels and lengths of hip and valley rafters may be obtained in a similar manner, by first taking the length of the diagonal line between 12 and 12, on the square, which is 17 inches in round numbers. Use this figure on the blade, and the "rise" whatever that may be, on the tongue. Suppose we have a roof of one-third pitch, which has a span of 24 feet; then 8, which is one-third of 24, will be the height of the roof at the point or ridge, from the base of the roof on a line with the plates. For example, always use 8, which is one-third of 24, on tongue for altitude; 12, half the width of 24, on blade for base. This cuts common rafter. Next is the hip rafter. It must be understood that the diagonal of 12 and 12 is 17 in framing, as before stated, and the hip is the diagonal of a square added to the rise of roof; therefore we take 8 on tongue and 17 on blade; run the same number of times as common rafter. To cut jack rafters, divide the number of openings for common rafter. Suppose we have 5 jacks, with six open-

ings, our common rafter 12 feet long, each jack would be 2 feet shorter, first 10 feet, second 8 feet, third 6 feet, and so on. The top down cut the same as cut of common rafter; foot also the same. To cut miter to fit hip: Take half the width of building on tongue and length of common rafter on blade; blade gives cut. Now find the diagonal of 8 and 12, which is $14\frac{7}{8}$, take 12 on tongue, $14\frac{7}{8}$ on blade; blade gives cut. The hip rafter must be beveled to suit; height of hip on tongue, length of hip on blade; tongue gives bevel. Then we take 8 on tongue, $8\frac{3}{4}$ on blade; tongue gives the bevel. Those figures will span all cuts in putting on cornice or sheathing. To cut bed moulds for gable to fit under cornice, take half width of building on

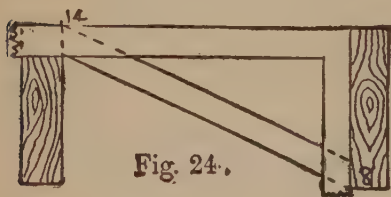


Fig. 24.

tongue, length of common rafter on blade; blade gives cut; machine mouldings will not member, but this gives a solid joint; and to member properly it is necessary to make moulding by hand, the diagonal plumb cut differences. To cut planceer to run up valley, take height of rafter on tongue, length of rafter on blade; tongue gives cut. The plumb cut takes the height of hip rafter on tongue, length of hip rafter on blade; tongue gives cut. These figures give the cuts for one-third pitch only, regardless of width of building. The construction of roofs generally will be taken up in another chapter.

A ready way of finding the length and cuts for cross-bridging is shown at Fig. 24. If the joists are 8 inches wide and 16 inches centers, there will be 14 inches

between. Place the square on 8 and 14, and cut on 8, and you have it. The only point to observe is that the 8 is on the lower side of the piece of bridging, while the 14 is on the upper, and not both on same side of timber, as in nearly all work. Bridging for any depth of joists, to any reasonable distance of joists apart, may be obtained by this method. A quick way of finding the joists for laying out

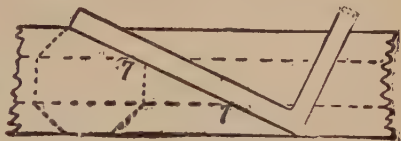


Fig. 25.

timber to be worked from the square to an octagon section is shown at Fig. 25. Lay your square diagonally across your timber and mark at 7 and 17, which gives corner of octagon. The figures 7 and 17, on either a square or two-foot pocket rule, when laid on a board or piece of timber as shown, always define the points where the octagonal angle or arris should be.

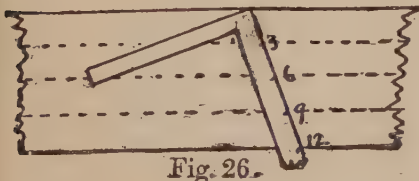


Fig. 26.

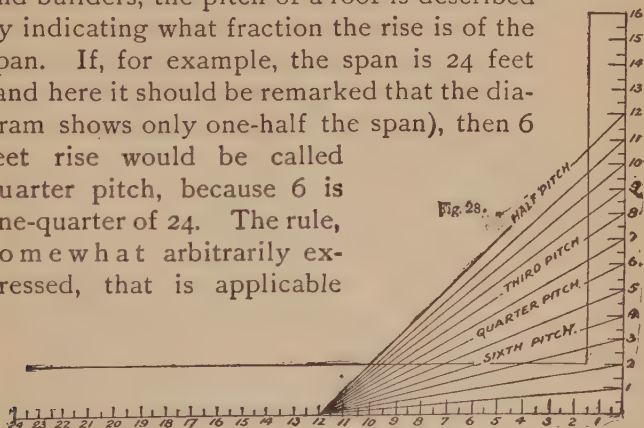
Fig. 26 shows a rapid method of dividing anything into several equal parts. If the board is $10\frac{1}{2}$ inches wide, lay the square from

heel to 12, and mark at 3, 6 and 9, and you have it divided into four equal parts. Any width of board or any number of parts may be worked with accuracy under the same method.

A method for obtaining the "cuts" for octagon and hexagon joints is shown at Fig. 27. Lay off a quarter circle XA, with C as a center; then along the horizontal line AB the square is laid with 12" on the blade

line, and the tongue at 7", and the line of the blade gives the angle of cut—nearly. The actual figure for octagon is $4\frac{3}{8}\frac{1}{2}$, but 5" is close enough; and for a hexagon cut, the exact figures are 12" and $6\frac{1}{6}\frac{5}{6}$, but 12" and 7" is as near as most workmen will require, unless the cut is a very long one.

The diagram shown at Fig. 28 illustrates a method of defining the pitches of roofs, and also gives the figures on the square for laying out the rafters for such pitches. By a very common usage among carpenters and builders, the pitch of a roof is described by indicating what fraction the rise is of the span. If, for example, the span is 24 feet (and here it should be remarked that the diagram shows only one-half the span), then 6 feet rise would be called quarter pitch, because 6 is one-quarter of 24. The rule, somewhat arbitrarily expressed, that is applicable

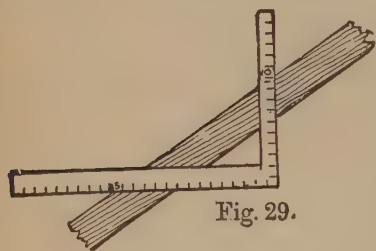


in such cases in roof framing where the roof is one-quarter pitch, is as follows: Use 12 of the blade, and 6 of the tongue. For other pitches use the figures appropriate thereto in the same general manner.

The diagram indicates the figures for sixth pitch, quarter pitch, third pitch and half pitch. The first three of these are in very common use, although the latter is somewhat exceptional.

It will take but a moment's reflection upon the part

of a practical man, with this diagram before him, to perceive that no changes are necessary in the rule where the span is more or less than 24 feet. The cuts are the same for quarter pitch irrespective of the actual dimensions of the building. The square in all such cases is used on the basis of similar triangles. The broad rule is simply this: To construct with the square such a triangle as will proportionately and correctly represent the full size, the blade becomes the base, the tongue the altitude or rise, while the hypotenuse that results represents the rafter. The necessary cuts are shown by the tongue and blade respectively.



In order to give a general idea of the use of the square I herewith append a few illustrations

of its application in framing a roof of, say, one-third pitch, which will be supposed to consist of common rafters, hips, valleys, jack rafters and ridges. Let it be assumed that the building to be dealt with measures 30 feet from outside to outside of wall plates; the toe of the rafters to be fair with the outside of the wall plates, the pitch being one-third (that is the roof rises from the top of the wall plate to the top of the ridge, one-third of the width of the building, or 10 feet), the half width of the building being 15 feet. Thus, the figures for working on the square are obtained; if other figures are used, they must bear the same relative proportion to each other.

To get the required lengths of the stuff, measure across the corner of the square, from the 10-inch mark

: the tongue to the 15-inch mark on the blade, Fig. 29. This gives 18 feet as the length of the common rafter. To get the bottom bevel or cut to fit on the wall plate, lay the square flat on the side of the rafter. Start, say, at the right-hand end, with the blade of the square to the right, the point or angle of the square away from you, and the rafter, with its back (or what will be the top edge of it when it is fixed) towards you. Now place the 15-inch mark of the blade and the 10-inch mark of the tongue on the corner of the rafter—that is, towards you—still keeping the square laid flat, and mark along the side of the blade. This gives the bottom cut, and will fit the wall plate. Now move the square to the other

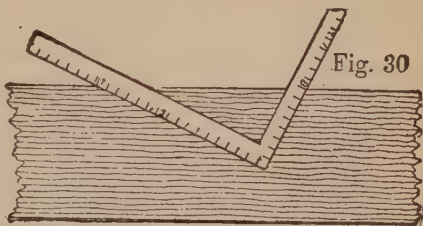


Fig. 30

end of the rafter, place it in the same position as before to the 18-foot mark on the rafter and to the 10-inch mark on the tongue, and the 15-inch mark on the blade; then mark alongside the tongue. This gives the top cut to fit against the ridge. To get the length of the hip rafter, take 15 inches on the blade and 15 inches on the tongue of the square, and measure across the corner. This gives $21\frac{3}{4}$ inches. Now take this figure on the blade and 10 inches on the tongue, then measuring across the corner gives the length of the hip rafter.

Another method is to take the 17-inch mark on the blade and the 8-inch mark on the tongue and begin as with the common rafter, as at Fig. 30. Mark along

the side of the blade for the bottom cut. Move the square to the left as many times as there are feet in the half of the width of the building (in the present case, as we have seen, 15 feet is half the width), keeping the above mentioned figures 17 and 8 in line with

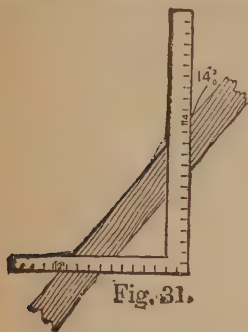


Fig. 31.

the top edge of the hip rafter; step it along just the same as when applying a pitch board on a stair-string, and after moving it along 15 steps, mark alongside the tongue. This gives the top cut or bevel and the length. The reason 17 and 8 are taken on the square is that 12 and 8 represent the rise and run of the common rafter to 1 foot on plan,

while 17 and 8 correspond with the plan of the hips.

To get the length of the jack rafters, proceed in the same manner as for common or hip rafters; or alternately space the jacks and divide the length of the common rafter into the same number of spaces. This gives the length of each jack rafter.

To get the bevel of the top edge of the jack rafter, Fig. 31, take the length, $14\frac{3}{8}$ of the common rafter on the blade and the run of the common rafter on the tongue, apply the square to the jack rafter, and mark along the side of the blade; this gives the bevel or cut. The down bevel and the bevel at the bottom end are the same as for the common rafter



Fig. 32.

To get the bevel for the side of the purlin to fit

against the hip rafter, place the square flat against the side of the purlin, with 8 inches on the tongue and $14\frac{3}{8}$ inches on the blade, Fig. 32. Mark alongside of the tongue. This gives the side cut or bevel. The $14\frac{3}{8}$ inches is the length of the common rafter to the 1-foot run, and the 8 inches represent the rise.

For the edge bevel of purlin, lay the square flat against the edge of purlin with 12 inches on the tongue and $14\frac{3}{8}$ inches on the blade, as at Fig. 33, and mark along the side of the tongue. This gives the bevel or cut for the edge of the purlin.

The rafter patterns must be cut half the thickness of ridge shorter; and half the thickness of the hip rafter allowed off the jack rafters.

These examples of what may be achieved by the aid of the square are only a few of the hundreds that can be solved by an intelligent use of that wonderful instrument, but it is impossible in a work of this kind to illustrate more than are here presented. The subject will be dealt with at length in a separate volume.

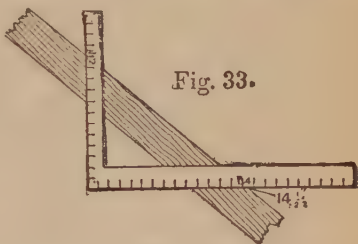
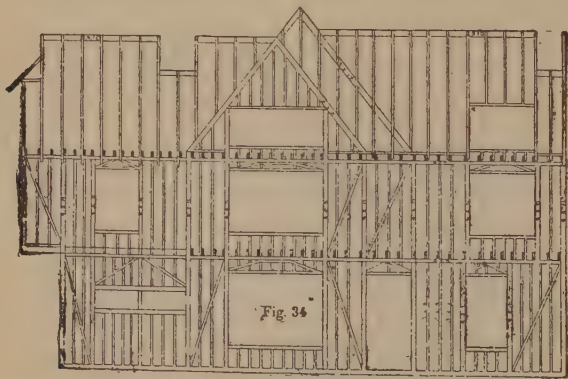


Fig. 33.

CHAPTER II

GENERAL FRAMING AND ROOFING

Heavy framing is now almost a dead science in this country unless it be in the far west or south, as steel and iron have displaced the heavy timber structures that thirty or forty years ago were so plentiful in roofs, bridges and trestle-work. As it will not be



necessary to go deeply into heavy-timber framing, therefore I will confine myself more particularly to the framing of ballon buildings generally.

A ballon frame consists chiefly of a frame-work of scantling. The scantling may be 2 x 4 inches, or any other size that may be determined. The scantlings are spiked to the sills, or are nailed to the sides of the joist which rests on the sills, or, as is sometimes the case, a rough floor may be nailed on the joists,

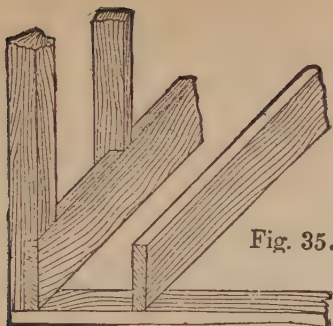


Fig. 35.

and on this, ribbon pieces of 2 x 4-inch stuff are spiked around to the outer edge of the foundation, and onto these ribbon pieces the scantling is placed and "toe-nailed" to them. The doors and windows are spaced off as shown in Fig. 34, which represents a balloon frame and roof in skeleton condition. These frames are generally boarded on both sides, always on the outside. Sometimes the boarding on the outside is nailed on diagonally, but more frequently horizontally, which, in my opinion, is the better way, providing always the boarding is dry and the joints laid close.

The joists are laid on "rolling," that is, there are no gains or tenons employed, unless in trimmers or similar work. The joists are simply "toe-nailed" onto sill plates, or ribbon pieces, as shown in the illustration. Sometimes the joists are made to rest on the sills, as shown in Fig. 35, the sill being no more than a 2 x 4-inch scantling laid in mortar on the foundation, the outside joists forming a sill for the side studs. A better plan is

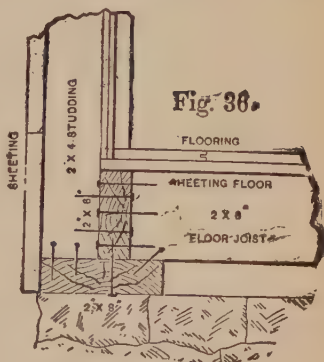
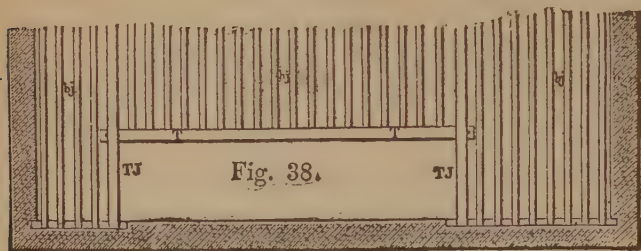


Fig. 36.

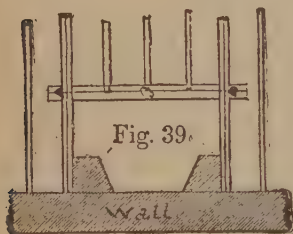


Fig. 37

shown in Fig. 36, which gives a method known as a "box-sill." The manner of construction is very simple.



All joists in a building of this kind must be bridged similar to the manner shown in Fig. 37, about every eight feet of their length; in spans less than sixteen feet, and more than eight feet, a row of bridging should always be put in midway in the span. Bridging should not be less than 1 to 1½ inches in section.



In trimming around a chimney or a stair well-hole, several methods are employed. Sometimes the headers and trimmers are made from material twice as thick and the same depth as

the ordinary joists, and the intermediate joists are tenoned into the header, as shown in Fig. 38. Here we have T, T, for header, and T, J, T, J, for trimmers, and *b, j*, for the ordinary joists. In the western, and also some of the central States, the trimmers and headers are made up of two thicknesses, the header being mortised to secure the ends of the joists. Th

two thicknesses are well nailed together. This method is exhibited at Fig. 39., which also shows one way to trim around a hearth; C shows the header with trimmer joists with tusk tenons, keyed solid in place.

Frequently it happens that a chimney rises in a building from its own foundation, disconnected from the walls, in which case the chimney shaft will require to be trimmed all around, as shown in

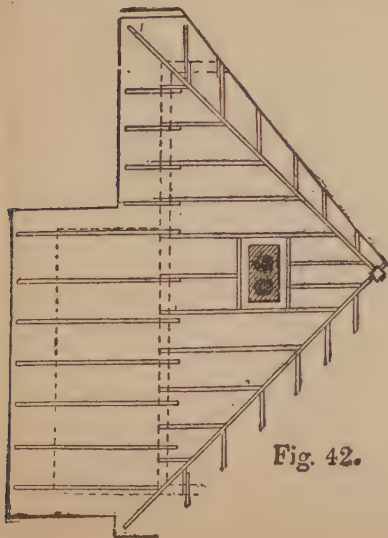
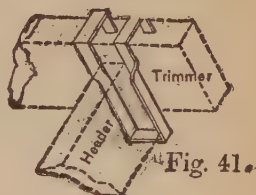
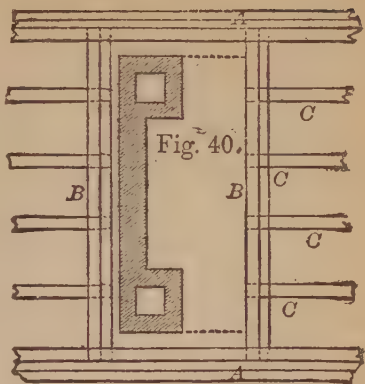


Fig. 40. In cases of this kind the trimmers A, A, should be made of stuff very much thicker than the joists, as they have to bear a double burden; B, B shows the heading, and C, C, C, C the tail joists. B, B, should have a thickness double that of C, C, etc., and A, A should at least be

three times as stout as C, C. This will to some extent equalize the strength of the whole floor, which is a matter to be considered in laying down floor timbers, for a floor is no stronger than its weakest part.

There are a number of devices for trimming around stairs, fire-places and chimney-stacks by which the cutting or mortising of the timbers is avoided. One method is to cut the timbers the exact length, square

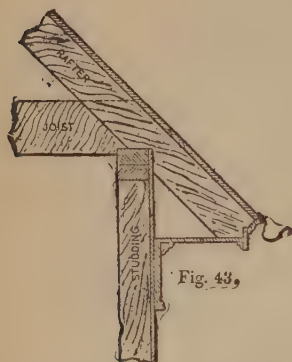


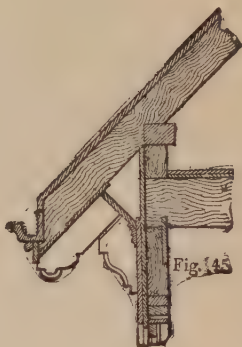
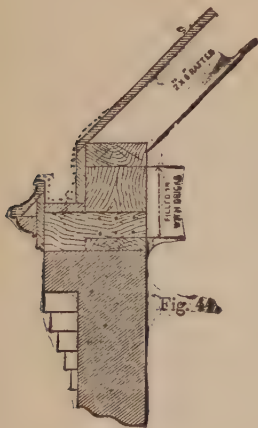
Fig. 43,

in the ends, and then insert iron dowels—two or more—in the ends of the joists, and then bore holes in the trimmers and headers to suit, and drive the whole solid together. The dowels are made from $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch or 1-inch round iron. Another and a better device is the “bridle iron,” which may be hooked over the trimmer or header, as the case may be, the stir-

rup carrying the abutting timber, as shown in Fig. 41. These “bridle irons” are made of wrought iron—2 x 2½ inches, or larger dimensions if the work requires such; for ordinary jobs, however, the size given will be found plenty heavy for carrying the tail joists, and a little heavier may be employed to carry the header. This style of connecting the trimmings does not hold the frame-work together, and in places where there is any tendency to thrust the work apart, some provision must be made to prevent the work from spreading.

In trimming for a chimney in a roof, the “headers,” “stretchers” or “trimmers,” and “tail rafters,” may be simply nailed in place, as there is no great weight

beyond snow and wind pressure to carry, therefore the same precautions for strength are not necessary. The sketch shown at Fig. 42 explains how the chimney openings in the roof may be trimmed, the parts being only spiked together. A shows a hip rafter against which the cripples on both sides are spiked. The chimney-stack is shown in the center of the roof—isolated—trimmed on the four sides. The sketch is



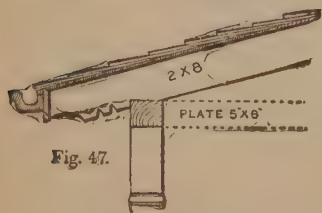
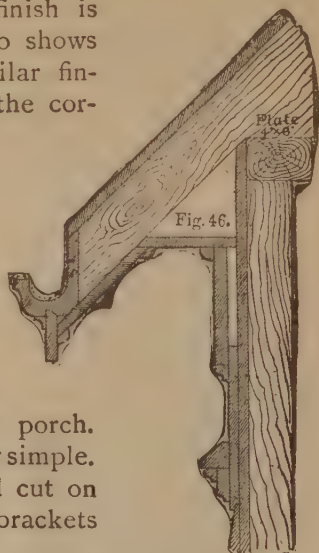
self-explanatory in a measure, and should be easily understood.

An example or two showing how the rafters may be connected with the plates at the eaves and finished for cornice and gutters, may not be out of place. A simple method is shown at Fig. 43, where the cornice is complete and consists of a few members only. The gutter is attached to the crown moulding, as shown.

Another method is shown at Fig. 44, this one being intended for a brick wall having sailing courses over cornice. The gutter is built in of wood, and is

lined throughout with galvanized iron. This makes a substantial job and may be used to good purpose on brick or stone warehouses, factories or similar buildings.

Another style of rafter finish is shown at Fig. 45, which also shows scheme of cornice. A similar finish is shown at Fig. 46, the cornice being a little different. In both these examples, the gutters are of wood, which should be lined with sheet metal of some sort in order to prevent their too rapid decay. At Fig. 47 a rafter finish is shown which is intended for a veranda or porch. Here the construction is very simple. The rafters are dressed and cut on projecting end to represent brackets and form a finish.



From these examples the workman will get sufficient ideas for working his rafters to suit almost any condition. Though there are many hundreds of styles which might be presented, the foregoing are ample for our purpose.

It will now be in order to take up the construction of roofs, and describe the methods by which such construction is obtained.

The method of obtaining the lengths and bevels of

rafters for ordinary roofs, such as that shown in Fig 48, has already been given in the chapter on the steel square. Something has also been said regarding hip and valley roofs; but not enough, I think, to satisfy the full requirements of the workman, so I will endeavor to give a clearer idea of the construction of these roofs by employing the graphic system, instead of depending altogether on the steel square, though I

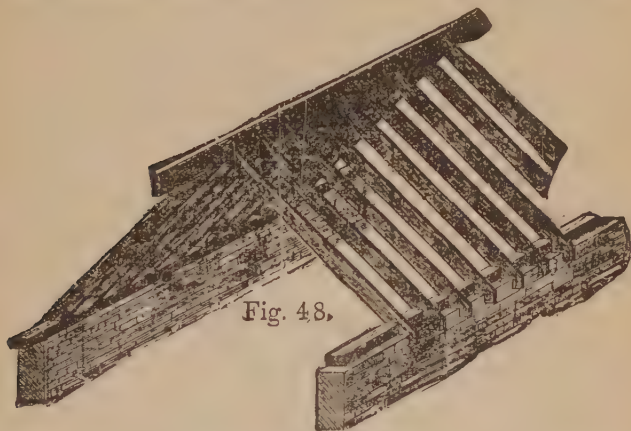


Fig. 48,

earnestly advise the workman to "stick to the square." It never makes a mistake, though the owner may in its application.

A "hip roof," pure and simple, has no gables, and is often called a "cottage roof," because of its being best adapted for cottages having only one, or one and a half, stories. The chief difficulty in its construction is getting the lengths and bevels of the hip or angle rafter and the jack or cripple rafter. To the expert workman, this is an easy matter, as he can readily obtain both lengths and bevels by aid of the square, or by lines such as I am about to produce.

The illustration shown at Fig. 49 shows the simplest form of a hip roof. Here the four hips or diagonal rafters meet in the center of the plan. Another style of hip roof, having a gable and a ridge in the center of the building, is shown at Fig. 50. This is quite a common style of roof, and under almost every condition it looks well and has a good effect. The plan

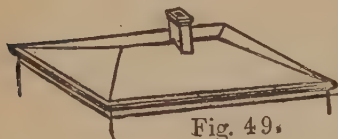


Fig. 49.

shows lines of hips, valleys and ridges.

The simplest form of roof is that known as the "lean-to" roof. This is formed by causing one side wall to be raised higher than the opposite side wall, so that when rafters or joists are laid from the high to the low wall a sloping roof is the result. This style of a roof is sometimes called a "shed roof" or a "pent roof." The shape is shown at Fig. 51, the upper sketch showing an end view and the lower one a plan of the roof. The method of framing this roof, or adjusting the timbers for it, is quite obvious and needs no explanation.

This style of roof is in general use where an annex or shed is built up against a superior building, hence its name of "lean-to," as it usually "leans" against the main building, the wall of which is utilized for the

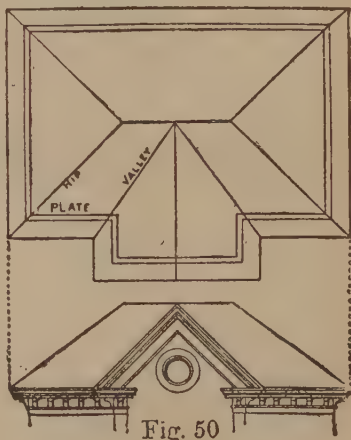


Fig. 50

high part of the shed or annex, thus saving the cost of the most important wall of the structure.

Next to the "lean-to" or "shed roof" in simplicity comes the "saddle" or "double roof." This roof is shown at Fig. 52 by the end view on the top of the figure, and the plan at the bottom. It will be seen that this roof has a double slope, the planes forming the slopes are equally inclined to the horizon; the meeting of their highest sides makes an arris which is

called the ridge of the roof; and the triangular spaces at the end of the walls are called gables.

It is but a few years ago when the mansard roof was very popular, and many of them can be found in the older parts of the country, having been erected between the early fifties and the eighties, but, for many reasons, they are now less



Fig. 51.



Fig. 52.

used. Fig. 53 shows a roof of this kind. It is penetrated generally by dormers, as shown in the sketch, and the top is covered either by a "deck roof" or a very flat hip roof, as shown. Sometimes the sloping sides of these roofs are curved, which give them a graceful appearance, but adds materially to their cost.

Another style of roof is shown at Fig. 54. This is a gambrel roof, and was very much in evidence in pre-revolutionary times, particularly among our Knickerbocker ancestors. In conjunction with appropriate dormers, this style of roof figures prominently in what is known as early "colonial style." It has some

advantages over the mansard. Besides these there are many other kinds of roofs, but it is not my purpose to enter largely into the matter of styles of roofs, but simply to arm the workman with such rules and prac-

tical equipment that he will be able to tackle with success almost any kind of a roof that he may be called upon to construct.

When dealing with the steel square I explained how the lengths

and bevels for common rafters could be obtained by the use of the steel square alone; also hips, purlins, valleys and jack rafters might be obtained by the use of the square, but, in order to fully equip the workman, I deem it necessary to present for his benefit a graphic method of obtaining the lengths, cuts and backing of rafters and purlins required for a hip roof.

At Fig. 55, I show the plans of a simple hip roof having a ridge. The hips on the

plan form an angle of 45° , or a miter, as it were. The plan being rectangular leaves the ridge the length of the difference between the length and the width of the building. Make cd on the ridge-line as shown, half the width of ab , and the angle bda will be a right angle. Then if we extend bd to e , making de the rise of the roof, ae will be the length of the hip rafter, and the

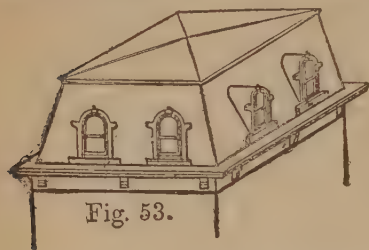


Fig. 53.

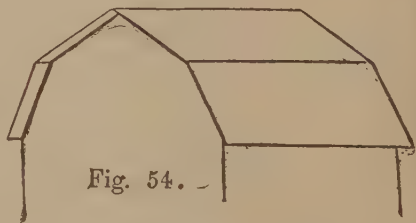


Fig. 54.

angle at x will be the plumb cut at point of hip and the angle at a will be the cut at the foot of the rafter. The angle at v shows the backing of the hip. This bevel is obtained as follows: Make ag and ah equal distances—any distance will serve—then draw a line hg across the angle of the building, then with a center on ad at p , touching the line ac at s , describe a circle as shown by the dotted line, then draw the lines kh and

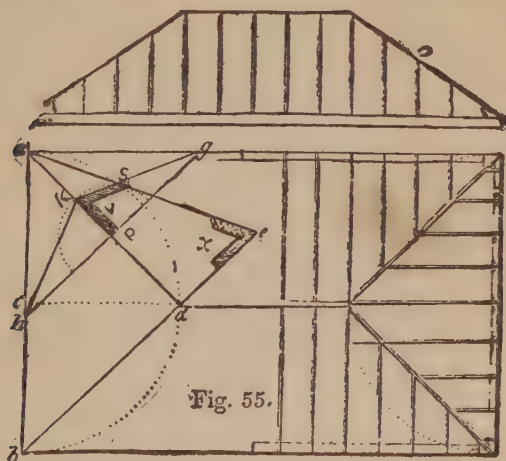


Fig. 55.

kg , and that angle, as shown by the bevel v , will be the backing or bevel for the top of the hip, beveling each way from a center line of the hip. This rule for backing a hip holds good in all kinds of hips, also for guttering a valley rafter, if the bevel is reversed. A hip roof where all the hips abut each other in the center is shown in Fig. 56. This style of roof is generally called a "pyramidal roof" because it has the appearance of a low flattened pyramid. The same rules governing Fig. 55 apply to this example. The bevels C and B show the backing of the hip, B showing the

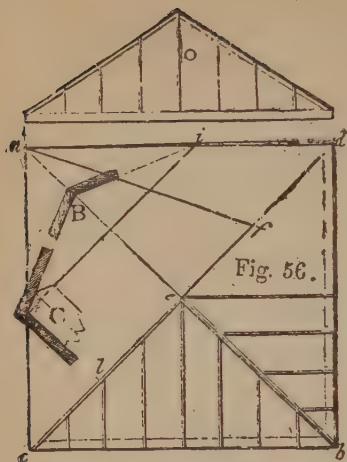


Fig. 56.

top from the center line *ae*; and C showing the bevel as placed against the side of the hip, which is always the better way to work the hip. A portion of the hip backed is shown at C. The rise of the roof is shown at O.

At Fig. 57 a plan of a roof is shown where the seats of the hips are not on an angle of 45° and where the ends and sides of the roof are of different

itches Take the base line of the hip, *ae* or *eg*, and make *ef* perpendicular to *ae*, from *e*, and equal to the rise at *f*; make *fa* or *fg* for the length of the hip, by drawing the line *lm* at right angles to *ae*. This gives the length of the hip rafter. The backing of the hip is obtained in a like manner to former examples, only, in cases of this kind, there are two bevels for the backing, one side of the hip being more acute than the other, as shown at D and E. If the hips are to be mitered, as is sometimes the case in roofs of this kind, then

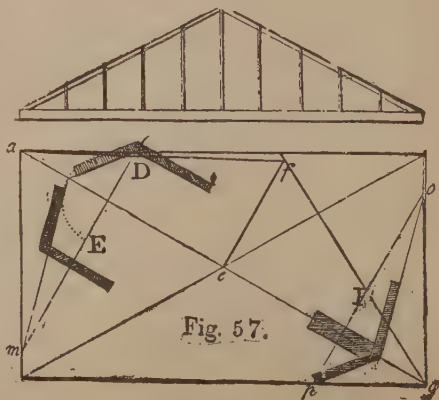
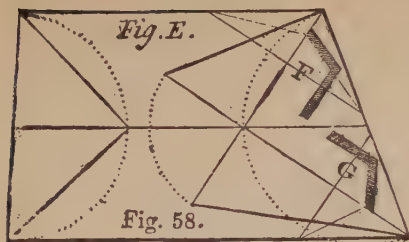


Fig. 57.



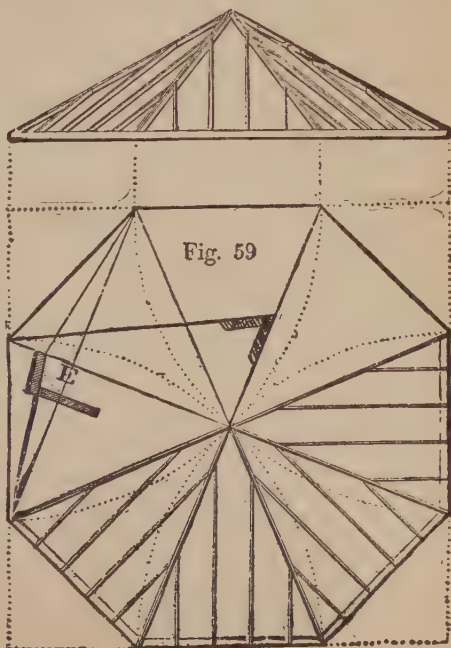
the back of the hip will assume the shape as shown by the two bevels at F. A hip roof having an irregular plan is shown at Fig. 58. This requires no ex-

planation, as the hips and bevels are obtained in the same manner as in previous examples. The backing of the hips is shown at FG.

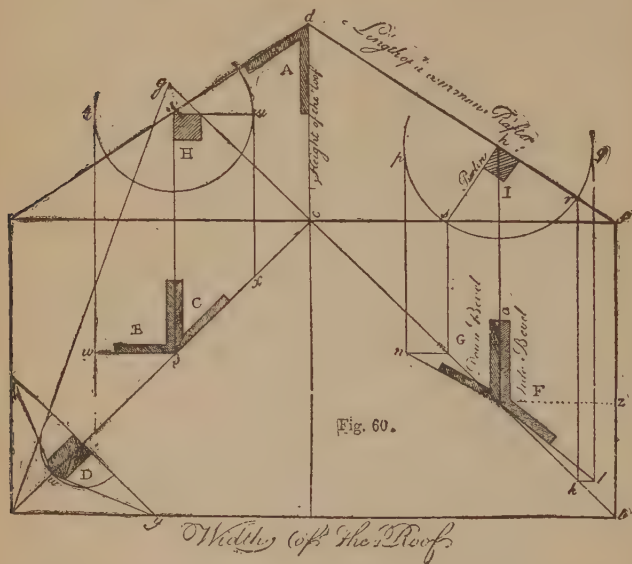
An octagon roof is shown at Fig. 59, with all the lines necessary for getting the lengths, Levels, and back-

ing for the hips. The line *ax* shows the seat of the hip, *xe* the rise of roof, and *ae* the length of hip and plumb cut, and the bevel at E shows the backing of the hips.

These examples will be quite sufficient to enable the workman to understand the general theory of laying out hip roofs. I



may also state that to save a repetition of drawing and explaining the rules that govern the construction of hip roofs, such as I have presented serve equally well for skylights or similar work. Indeed, the clever workman will find hundreds of instances in his work where the rules given will prove useful.



There are a number of methods for getting the lengths and bevels for purlins. I give one here which I think is equal to any other, and perhaps as simple. Suppose Fig. 60 shows one end of a hip roof, also the rise and length of common rafters. Let the purlin be in any place on the rafter, as I, and in its most common position, that is, standing square with the rafter; then with the point *b* as a center with any radius, describe a circle. Draw two lines, *ql* and *pn*, to touch

the circle p and q parallel to fb and at the points s and r , where the two sides of the purlin intersect, draw two parallel lines to the former, to cut the diagonal in m and k ; then G is the down bevel and F the side bevel of the purlin; these two bevels, when applied to the end of the purlin, and when cut by them, will exactly fit the side of the hip rafters.

To find the cuts of a purlin where two sides are parallel to horizon: The square at B and the bevel at C will show how to draw the end of the purlin in this easy case. The following is universal in all positions of the purlin: Let ab be the width of a square roof, make bf or ae one-half of the width, and make cd perpendicular in the middle of ef , the height of the roof or rise, which in this case is one-third; then draw de and df , which are each the length of the common rafter.

To find the bevel of a jack rafter against the hip, proceed as follows: Turn the stock of the side bevel at F from a around to the line iz , which will give the side bevel of the jack rafter. The bevel at A , which is the top of the common rafter, is the down bevel of the jack rafter.

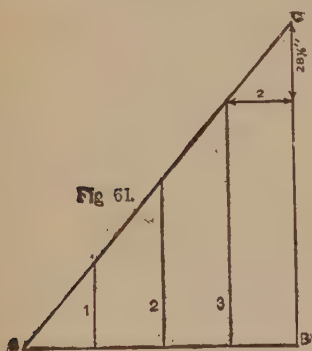
At D the method of getting the backing of a hip rafter is shown the same as explained in other figures.

There are other methods of obtaining bevels for purlins, but the one offered here will suffice for all practical purposes.

I gave a method of finding the back cuts for jack rafters by the steel square, in a previous chapter. I give another rule herewith for the steel square: Take the length of the common rafter on the blade and the run of the same rafter on the tongue, and the blade of the square will give the bevel for the cut on the back

of the jack rafter. For example, suppose the rise to be 6 feet and the run 8 feet, the length of the common rafter will be 10 feet. Then take 10 feet on the blade of the square, and 8 feet on the tongue, and the blade will give the back bevel for the cut of the jack rafters.

To obtain the length of jack rafters is a very simple process, and may be obtained easily by a diagram, as shown in Fig. 61, which is a very common method:



First lay off half the width of the building to scale, as from A to B, the length of the common rafter B to C, and the length of the hip rafter from A to C. Space off the widths from jack rafter to jack rafter as shown by the lines 1, 2, 3, and measure them accurately. Then the lines 1, 2, and 3

will be the exact lengths of the jack rafters in those divisions. Any number of jack rafters may be laid off this way, and the result will be the length of each rafter, no matter what may be the pitch of the roof or the distance the rafters are apart.

A table for determining the length of jack rafters is given below, which shows the lengths required for different spacing in three pitches:

One-quarter pitch roof:

They cut 13.5 inches shorter each time when spaced 12 inches.

They cut 18 inches shorter each time when spaced 16 inches.

They cut 27 inches shorter each time when spaced 24 inches.

One-third pitch roof:

They cut 14.4 inches shorter each time when spaced 12 inches.

They cut 19.2 inches shorter each time when spaced 16 inches.

They cut 28.8 inches shorter each time when spaced 24 inches.

One-half pitch roof:

They cut 17 inches shorter each time when spaced 12 inches.

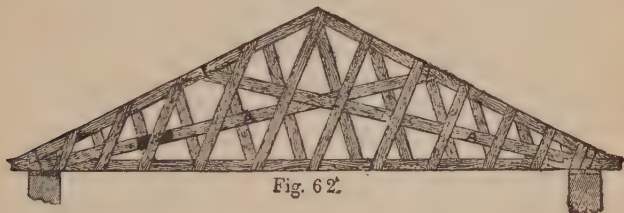


Fig. 62.

They cut 22.6 inches shorter each time when spaced 16 inches.

They cut 34 inches shorter each time when spaced 24 inches.

It is not my intention to enter deeply into a discussion of the proper methods of constructing roofs of all shapes, though a few hints and diagrams of octagonal, domical and other roofs and spires will doubtless be of service to the general workman. One of the most useful methods of trussing a roof is that known as a lattice "built-up" truss roof, similar to that shown at Fig. 62. The rafters, tie beams and the two main braces A, A, must be of one thickness—say, 2 x 4 or 2 x 6 inches, according to the length of the span—while the minor braces are made of 1-inch stuff and

about 10 or 12 inches wide. These minor braces are well nailed to the tie beams, main braces and rafters. The main braces must be halved over each other at their juncture, and bolted. Sometimes the main braces are left only half the thickness of the rafters, then no halving will be necessary, but this method has the disadvantage of having the minor braces nailed to one side only. To obviate this, blocks may be nailed to the inside of the main braces to make up the thickness

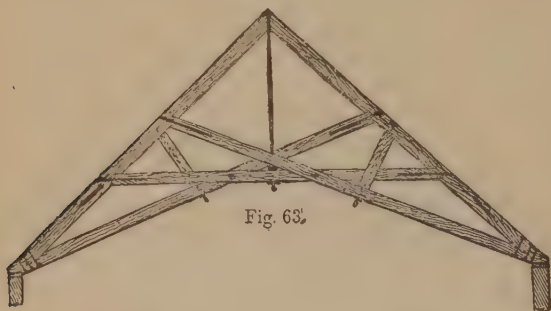


Fig. 63.

required, as shown, and the minor braces can be nailed or bolted to the main brace.

The rafters and tie beams are held together at the foot of the rafter by an iron bolt, the rafter having a crow-foot joint at the bottom, which is let into the tie beam. The main braces also are framed into the rafter with a square toe-joint and held in place with an iron bolt, and the foot of the brace is crow-footed into the tie beam over the wall.

This truss is easily made, may be put together on the ground, and, as it is light, may be hoisted in place with blocks and tackle, with but little trouble. This truss can be made sufficiently strong to span a roof from 40 to 75 feet. Where the span inclines to the

greater length, the tie beams and rafters may be made of built-up timbers, but in such a case the tie beams should not be less than 6 x 10 inches, nor the rafters less than 6 x 6 inches.

Another style of roof altogether is shown at Fig. 63. This is a self-supporting roof, but is somewhat expensive if intended for a building having a span of 30 feet or less. It is fairly well adapted for halls or for country churches, where a high ceiling is required and the span anywhere from 30 to 50 feet over all. It would not be safe to risk a roof of this kind on a building having a span more than 50 feet. The main features of this roof are: (1) having

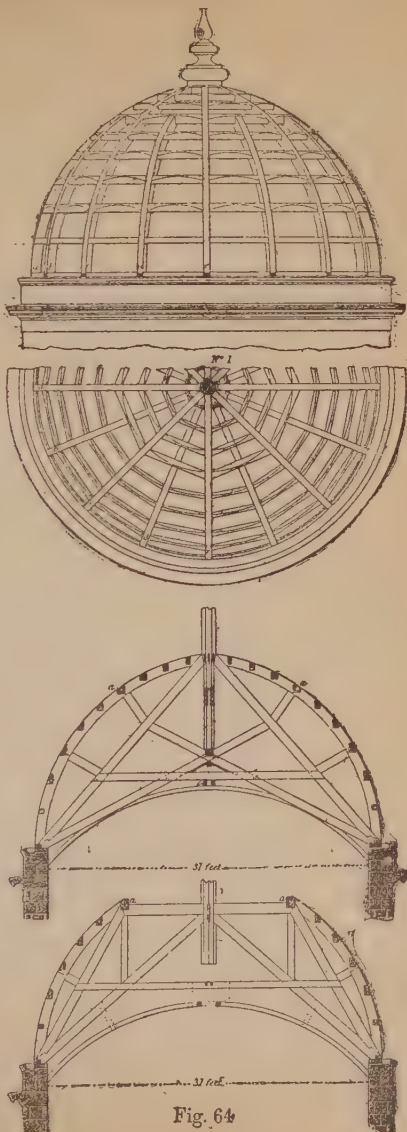
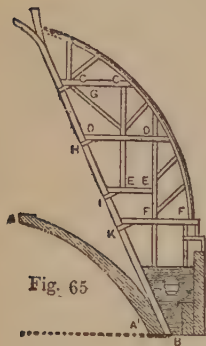


Fig. 64

collar beams, (2) truss bolts, and (3) iron straps at the joints and triple bolts at the feet.

I show a dome and the manner of its construction at Fig. 64. This is a fine example of French timber framing. The main carlins are shown at *a*, *b*, *c*, *d* and *e*, Nos. 1 and 2, and the horizontal ribs are also shown in the same numbers, with the curve of the outer edge described on them. These ribs are cut in between the carlins or rafters and beveled off to suit. This dome may be boarded over either horizontally or with boards made into "gores" and laid on in line with the rafters or carlins.



The manner of framing is well illustrated in Nos. 3 and 4 in two ways, No. 3 being intended to form the two principal trusses which stretch over the whole diameter, while No. 4 may be built in between the main trusses.

The illustrations are simple and clear, and quite sufficient without further explanation.

Fig. 65 exhibits a portion of the dome of St. Paul's Cathedral, London, which was designed by Sir Christopher Wren. The system of the framing of the external dome of this roof is given. The internal cupola, AA1, is of brick-work, two bricks in thickness, with a course of bricks 18 inches in length at every five feet of rise. These serve as a firm bond. This dome was turned upon a wooden center, whose only support was the projections at the springing of the dome, which is said to have been unique. Outside the brick cupola, which is only alluded to in order that the

description may be the more intelligible, rises a brickwork cone B. A portion of this can be seen, by a spectator on the floor of the cathedral, through the central opening at A. The timbers which carry the external dome rest upon this conical brickwork. The horizontal hammer beams, C, D, E, F, are curiously tied to the corbels, G, H, I, K, by iron cramps, well bedded with lead into the corbels and bolted to the hammer beams. The stairs, or ladders, by which the ascent to the Golden Gallery or the summit

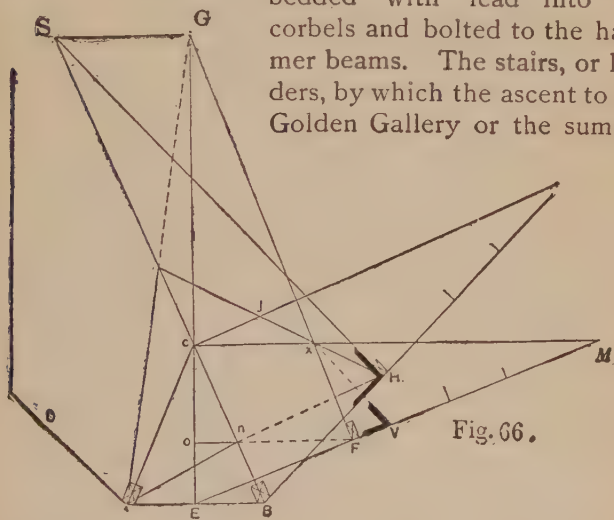


Fig. 66.

of the dome is made, pass among the roof trusses. The dome has a planking from the base upwards, and hence the principals are secured horizontally at a little distance from each other. The contour of this roof is that of a pointed dome or arch, the principals being segments of circles; but the central opening for the lantern, of course, hinders these arches from meeting at a point. The scantling of the curved principals is $10 \times 11\frac{1}{2}$ inches at the base, decreasing to 6×6 inches

used, as shown on the edge of the brace. No. 1 is to be used at the top above No. 5. For the bevel on the face to miter on the hip, draw AG, Fig. 66, cutting BS at J. Join JH. Next, in Fig. 68, make AP equal AP, Fig. 67, and make AJ equal to AJ, Fig. 66. Make PJ equal to JH, Fig. 66, and make PI equal to HI. Join AI; then the bevel marked No. 5 will be correct for the beam next to the hip, and the bevel marked No. 6 will be correct for the top. Bevel No. 2 in this figure will be correct for the beam next to the plate. The edge of the brace is to correspond with the boarding.

A few examples of scarfing timber are presented at Figs. 69, 70, 71 and 72. The example shown at Fig. 69 exhibits a method by which the two ends of the timber are joined together with a step-splice and spur or tenon on end, it being drawn tight together by the keys, as shown in the shaded part.

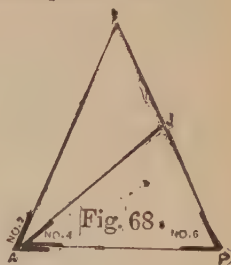


Fig. 70 is a similar joint though simpler, and therefore a better one; A, A are generally joggles of hardwood, and not wedged keys, but the latter are preferable, as they allow of tightening up. The shearing used along BF should be pine, and be not less than six and a half times BC; and BC should be equal to at least twice the depth of the key. The shear in the keys being at right angles to the grain of the wood, a greater stress per square inch of shearing area can be put upon them than along BF, but their shearing area should be equal in strength to the other parts of the joint; oak is the best wood for them, as its shearing is from four to five times that of pine.

Scarfed joints with bolts and indents, such as that shown at Fig. 70, are about the strongest of the kind. From this it will be seen that the strongest and most economical method in every way, in lengthening ties, is by adoption of the common scarf joint, as shown at Fig. 71, and finishing the scarf as there represented.

The carpenter meets with many conditions when timbers of various kinds have to be lengthened out

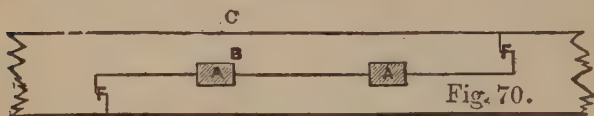


Fig. 72.



and spliced, as in the case of wall plates, etc., where there is not much tensile stress. In such cases the timbers may simply be halved together and secured with nails, spikes, bolts, screws or pins, or they may

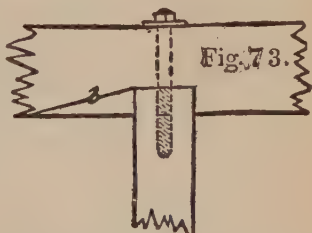
be halved or beveled as shown in Fig. 72, which, when loaded above, as in the case of wall plates built in the wall, or as stringers on which partitions are set, or joint beams on which the lower edges of the joists rest, will hold good together.

Treadgold gives the following rules, based upon the relative resistance to tension, crushing and shearing of different woods, for the proportion which the length or overlap of a scarf should bear to the depth of the tie:

	Without bolts	With bolts	With bolts and indents
Oak, ash, elm, etc. . . .	6	3	2
Pine and similar woods .	12	6	4

There are many other kinds of scarfs that will occur to the workman, but it is thought the foregoing may be found useful on special occasions.

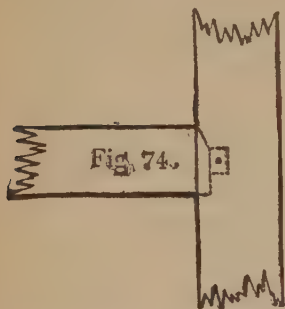
A few examples of odd joints in timber work will not be out of place. It sometimes happens that cross-beams are required to be fitted in between girders in position, as in



renewing a defective one, and when this has to be done, and a mortise and tenon joint is used, a chase has to be cut leading into the mortise, as shown in the horizontal section, Fig. 73. By inserting the tenon at the other end of the beams into a mortise cut so as to allow of fitting it in at an angle, the tenon can be slid along the chase *b* into its proper position. It is better in this case to dispense with the long tenon, and, if necessary, to substitute a bolt, as shown in the sketch. A mortise of this kind is called a *chase mortise*, but an

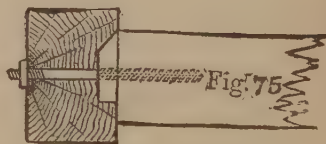
iron shoe made fast to the girder forms a better means of carrying the end of a cross-beam. The beams can be secured to the shoe with bolts or other fastenings.

To support the end of a horizontal beam or girt on the side of a post, the joint shown in Fig. 74 may be



used where the mortise for the long tenon is placed, to weaken the post as little as possible, and the tenon made about one-third the thickness of the beam on which it is cut. The amount of bearing the beam has on the post must greatly depend on the work it has to do. A hardwood pin can be passed through the

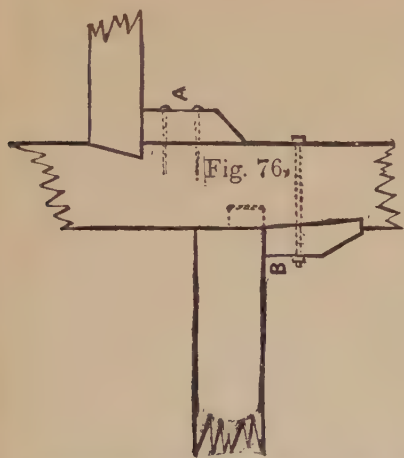
cheeks of the mortise and the tenon as shown to keep the latter in position, the holes being *draw-bored* in order to bring the shoulders of the tenon tight home against the post, but care must be taken not to overdo the draw-boring or the wood at the end of the tenon will be forced out by the pin. The usual rule for draw-boring is to allow a quarter of an inch *draw* in soft woods and one-eighth of an inch for hard woods.



These allowances may seem rather large, but it must be remembered that both holes in tenon and mortise will give a little, so also will the draw pin itself unless it is of iron, an uncommon circumstance.

Instead of a mortise and tenon, an iron strap or a screw bolt or nut may be used, similar to that shown in Fig. 75.

The end of the beam may also be supported on a block which should be of hardwood, spiked or bolted



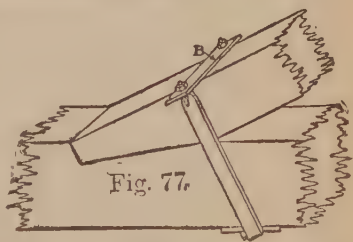
on to the side of the post, as at A and B, Fig. 76. The end of the beam may either be tenoned into the post as shown, or it may have a shoulder, with the end of the beam beveled, as shown at A.

Heavy roof timbers are rapidly giving place to steel, but there yet remain many cases where

timbers will remain employed and the old method of framing continued. The use of iron straps and bolts in fastening timbers together or for trussing purposes will never perhaps become obsolete, therefore a knowledge of the proper use of these will always remain valuable.

Heel straps are used to secure the joints between inclined struts and horizontal beams, such as the joints between rafters and beams.

They may be placed either so as merely to hold the beams close together at the joints, as in Fig. 77, or so as to directly resist the thrust of the inclined strut and prevent it from shearing off the portion of the horizontal beam against which it presses. Straps



of the former kind are sometimes called *kicking-straps*. The example shown at Fig. 77 is a good form of strap for holding a principal rafter down at the foot of the tie beam. The screws and nuts are prevented from sinking into the wood by the bearing plate B, which acts as a washer on which the nuts ride when tightening is done. A check plate is also provided under-

neath to prevent the strap cutting into the tie beam.

At Fig. 78 I show a form of joint often used, but it represents a difficulty in getting the two parallel abutments to take their fair share of the work, both from want of accuracy in workmanship as well as from the disturbing influence of shrinkage. In

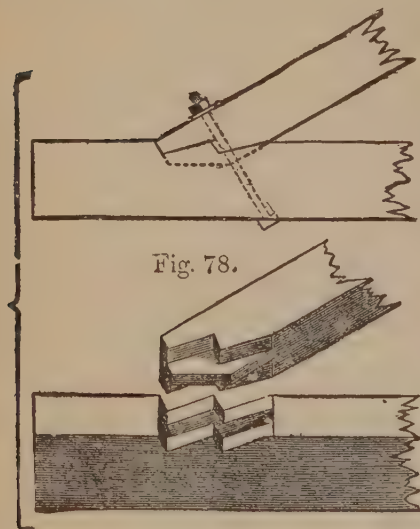


Fig. 78.

making a joint of this sort, care must be taken that sufficient wood is left between the abutments and the end of the tie beam to prevent shearing. A little judgment in using straps will often save both time and money and yet be sufficient for all purposes.

I show a few examples of strengthening and trussing joints, girders, and timbers at Fig 79. The diagrams need no explanation, as they are self-evident.

It would expand this book far beyond the dimensions

awarded me, to even touch on all matters pertaining to carpentry, including bridges, trestles, trussed girders and trusses generally, so I must content myself

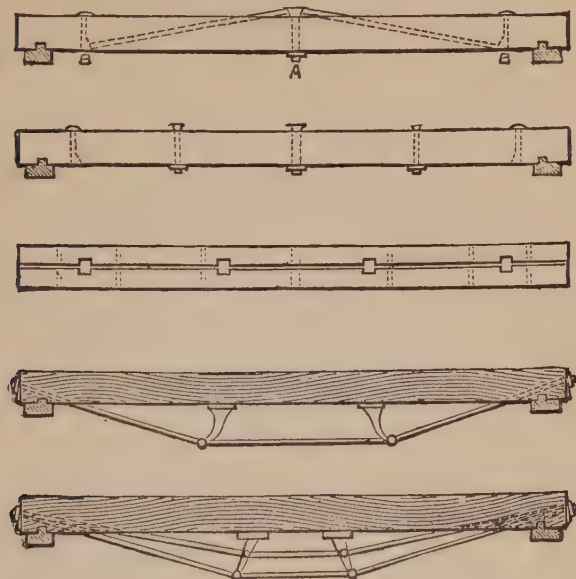


Fig. 79,

with what has already been given on the subject of carpentry, although, as the reader is aware, the subject is only **surfaced**.

PART III

JOINER'S WORK

CHAPTER I

KERFING, RAKING MOULDINGS, HOPPERS AND SPLAYS

This department could be extended indefinitely, as the problems in joinery are much more numerous than in carpentry, but as the limits of this book will not permit me to cover the whole range of the art, even if



I were competent, I must be contented with dealing with those problems the workman will most likely be confronted with in his daily occupation.

First of all, I give several methods of "kerfing," for few things puzzle the novice more than this little problem. Let us suppose any circle around which it is desired to bend a piece of stuff to be 2 inches larger on the outside than on the inside, or in other words, the veneer is to be 1 inch thick, then take out as many saw kerfs as will measure 2 inches. Thus, if a saw cuts a kerf one thirty-second of an inch in width, then it will take 64 kerfs in the half circle to allow for the

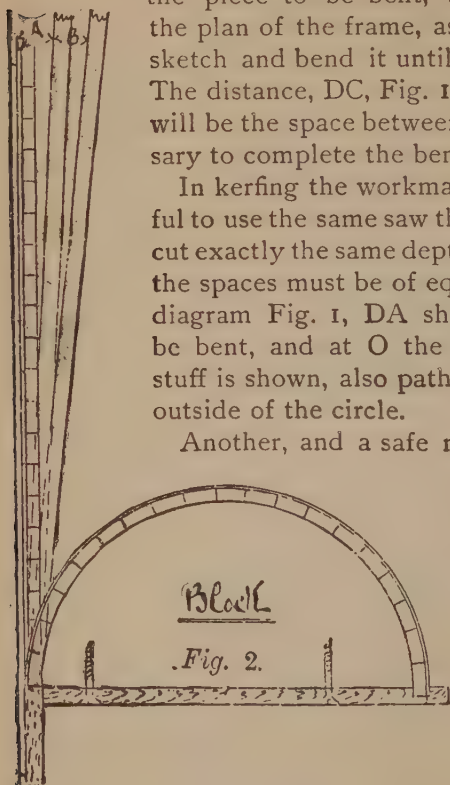
veneer to bend around neatly. The piece being placed in position and bent, the kerfs will exactly close.

Another way is to saw one kerf near the center of the piece to be bent, then place it on the plan of the frame, as indicated in the sketch and bend it until the kerf closes. The distance, DC, Fig. 1, on the line DB, will be the space between the kerfs necessary to complete the bending.

In kerfing the workman should be careful to use the same saw throughout, and to cut exactly the same depth every time, and the spaces must be of equal distance. In diagram Fig. 1, DA shows the piece to be bent, and at O the thickness of the stuff is shown, also path of the inside and outside of the circle.

Another, and a safe method of kerfing

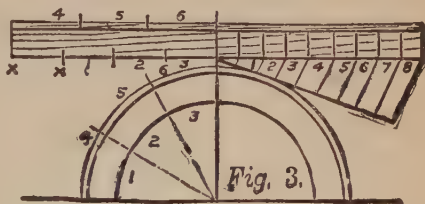
is shown at Fig. 2, in which it is desired to bend a piece as shown, and which is intended to be secured at the ends. Up to A is the piece to be treated.



First gauge a line on about one-eighth inch back from the face edges, and try how far it will yield when the first cut is made up to the gauge line, being cut perfectly straight through from side to side, then place the work

on a flat board and try it gently until the kerf closes, and it goes as far as is shown at A, which is the first cut, B representing the second. Those are the distances the kerfs require to be placed apart to complete the curve. Try the work as it progresses. This eases the back of it and makes it much easier done when the whole cuts are finished. Now make certain that the job will fold to the curve, then fill them all with hot glue and proceed to fix. The plan shown here is a half semi, and may be in excess of what is wanted, but the principle holds good.

Another method is shown at Fig. 3 for determining the number and



distances apart of the saw kerfs required to bend a board round a corner. The board is first drawn in position and a half of it divided into any number of equal parts by radii, as 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6. A straight piece is then marked off to correspond with the divisions on the circular one. By this it is seen that the part XX must be cut away by saw kerfs in order to let the board turn round. It therefore depends upon the thickness of the saw for the number of kerfs, and when that is known the distances apart can be determined as shown on the right in the figure. Here eight kerfs are assumed to be requisite.

To make a kerf for bending round an ellipse, such as that shown at Fig. 4, proceed as shown, CC and OO being the distances for the kerfs; 2 to 2 and 2 to 3 are the lengths of the points EF, while BB is the length of the

points EE, making the whole head piece in one. In case it is necessary to joint D, leave the ends about 8 inches longer than is necessary, as shown by N in the

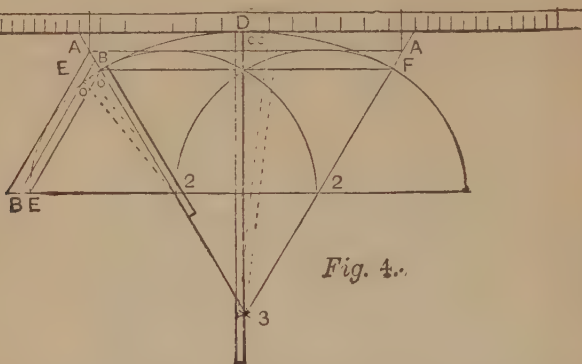


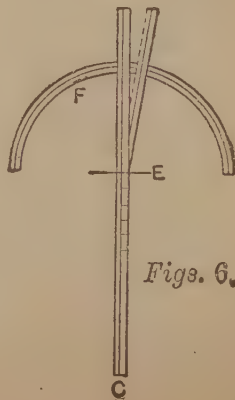
Fig. 4.

sketch, so that should a breakage occur this extra length may be utilized.

It is sometimes necessary to bend thick stuff around work that is on a rake, and when this is required, all that is necessary is to run in the kerfs the angle of the rake whatever that may be, as shown at Fig. 5. This rule holds good for all pitches or rakes. Fig. 6 shows a very common way of obtaining the distance to place the kerfs. The piece to be kerfed is shown at C; now make one at E; hold firm the lower part of C and bend

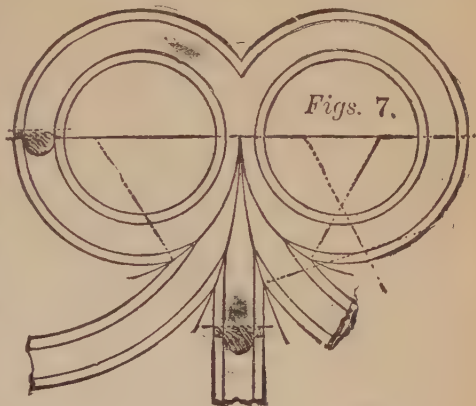


Fig. 5.

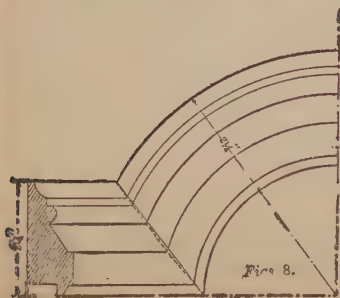


Figs. 6.

the upper end on the circle F until the kerf is closed. The line started at E and cutting the circumference of the circle indicates at the circumference the distance the saw kerfs will be apart. Set the dividers to this space, and beginning at the center cut, space the piece to be kerfed both ways. Use the same saw in all cuts and let it be clean and keen, with all dust well cleaned out.

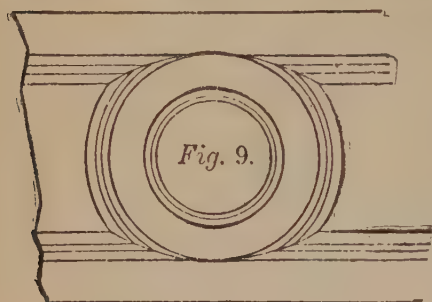


To miter mouldings, where straight lines must merge into lines having a curvature as in Figs. 7 and 8: In all cases, where a straight moulding is intersected with a curved moulding of the same profile at whatever angle, the miter is necessarily other than a straight line. The miter line



is found by the intersection of lines from the several points of the profile as they occur respectively in the straight and the curved mouldings. In order to find the miter between two such mouldings, first project lines from all of the points of

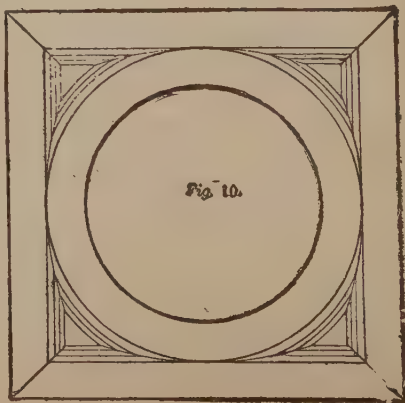
the profile indefinitely to the right, as shown in the elevation of the sketch. Now, upon the center line of the curved portion, or upon any line radiating from the center around which the curved moulding is to be



carried, set off the several points of the profile, spacing them exactly the same as they are in the elevation of the straight moulding. Place one leg of the dividers at the center of the cir-

cle, bringing the other leg to each of the several points upon the curved moulding, and carry lines around the curve, intersecting each with a horizontal line from the corresponding point of the level moulding. The dotted line drawn through the intersections at the miter shows what must be the real miter line.

Another odd mitering of this class is shown in Fig. 9. In this it will be seen that the plain faces of the stiles and circular rail form junctions, the mouldings all being mitered. The miters are curved in order



to have all the members of the mouldings merge in one another without overwood. Another example is shown at Fig. 10, where the circle and mouldings make a series of panels. These examples are quite sufficient to enable the workman to deal effectively with every problem of this kind.

The workman sometimes finds it a little difficult to lay out a hip rafter for a veranda that has a curved roof. A

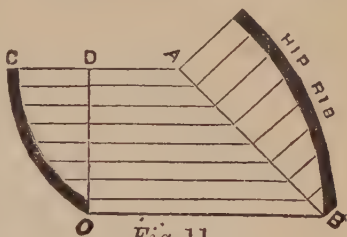
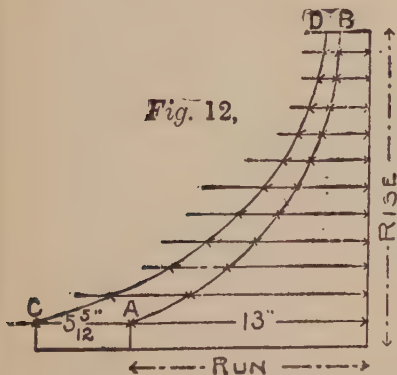


Fig. 11,

very easy method of finding the curve of the hip is shown at Fig. 11. Let AB be the length of the angle or seat of hip, and CO the curve; raise perpendicular

on AB, as shown, same as those on DO, and trace through the points obtained, and the thing is done.

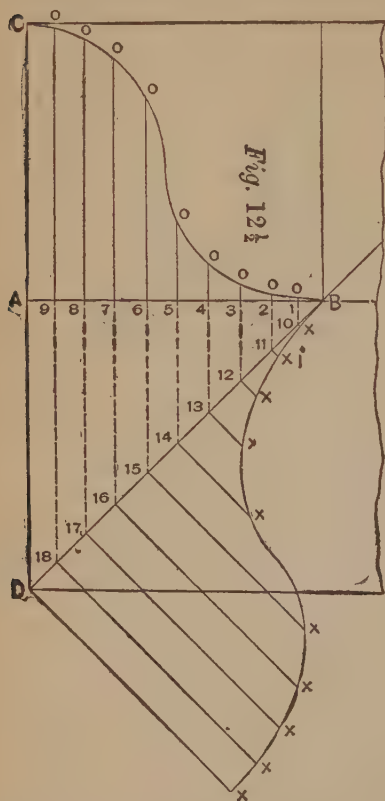
Fig. 12,



Another simple way of finding the hip for a single curve is shown at Fig. 12; AB represents the curve given the common rafter.

Now lay off any number of lines parallel with the seat from the rise, to and beyond the curve AB, as shown, and for each inch in length of these lines (between rise and curve), add $\frac{5}{12}$ of an inch to the same line to the left of the curve, and check. After

all lines have thus been measured, run an off-hand curve through the checks, and the curve will represent the corresponding hip at the center of its back.



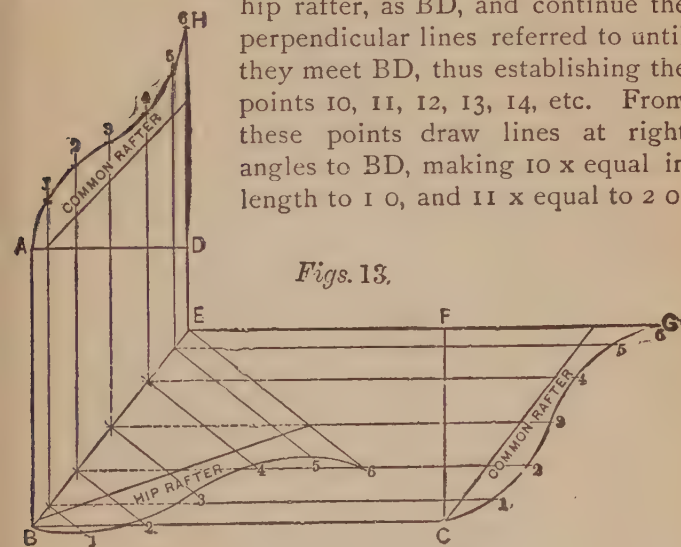
To find the bevel or backing of the hip to coincide with the plane of the common rafter, measure back on the parallel lines to the right of the curve one-half the thickness of the hip and draw another curve, which will be the lines on the side to trim to from the center of the back. A like amount must be added to the plumb cut to fit the corner of deck. Proceed in like manner for the octagon hip, but instead of adding $\frac{5}{12}$, add $\frac{1}{12}$ of an inch as before described.

[While this is worked out on a given rise and run for the

rafter, the rule is applicable to any rise or run, as the workman will readily understand.]

A more elaborate system for obtaining the curve of a hip rafter, where the common rafters have an ogee or concave and convex shape, is shown at Fig. 12½. This

is a very old method, and is shown—with slight variations—in nearly all the old works on carpentry and joinery. Draw the seat of the common rafter, AB, and rise, AC. Then draw the curve of the common rafter, CB. Now divide the base line, AB, into any number of equal spaces, as 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, etc., and draw perpendicular lines to construct the curve CB, as 10, 20, 30, 40, etc. Now draw the seat of the valley, or hip rafter, as BD, and continue the perpendicular lines referred to until they meet BD, thus establishing the points 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, etc. From these points draw lines at right angles to BD, making 10 x equal in length to 10, and 11 x equal to 20;



Figs. 13.

also 12 x equal to 30, and so on. When this has been done draw through the points indicated by x the curve, which is the profile of the valley rafters.

Another method, based on the same principles as Fig. 12½, is shown at Fig. 13. Let ABCFED represent the plan of the roof. FCG represents the profile of the wide side of common rafter. First divide this common rafter, GC, into any number of parts—in this case 6.

Transfer these points to the miter line EB, or, what is the same, the line in the plan representing the hip rafter. From the points thus established at E, erect perpendiculars indefinitely. With the dividers take the distance from the points in the line FE, measuring to the points in the profile GC, and set the same off on corresponding lines, measuring from EB, thus establishing the points 1, 2, etc.; then a line traced

through these points will be the required hip rafter.

For the common rafter, on the narrow side, continue the lines from EB parallel with the lines of the plan DE and AB. Draw AD at right angles to these lines. With the

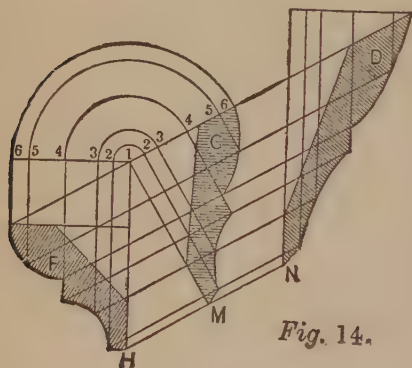


Fig. 14.

dividers, as before, measuring from FE to the points in GC, set off corresponding distances from AD, thus establishing the points shown between A and H. A line traced through the points thus obtained will be the line of the rafter on the narrow side.

These examples are quite sufficient to enable the workman to draw the exact form of any rafter no matter what the curve of its face may be, or whether it is for a veranda hip, or an angle bracket, for a cornice or niche.

Another class of angular curves the workman will meet with occasionally, is that when raking mouldings are used to work in level mouldings, as for

instance, a moulding down a gable that is to miter. The figures shaded in Fig. 14 represent the moulding in its various phases and angles. Draw the outline of the common level moulding, as shown at F, in the same position as if in its place on the building. Draw lines through as many prominent points in the profile as may be convenient, parallel with the line of rake. From the same points in the moulding draw vertical lines, as shown by 1H, 2, 3, 4 and 5, etc. From the point 1, square with the lines of the rake, draw 1M,

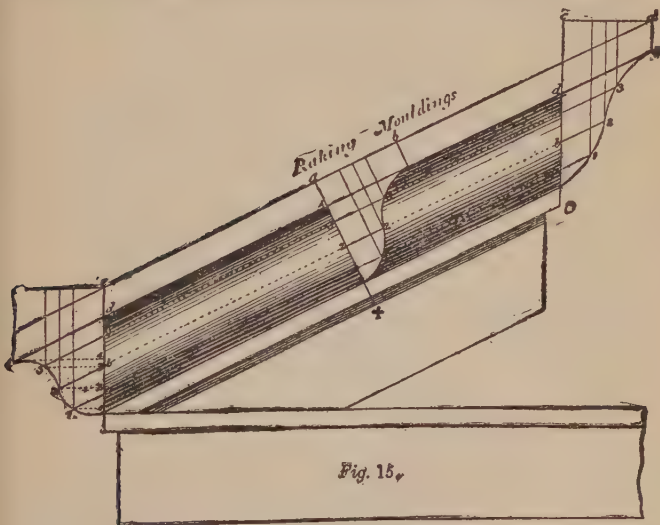


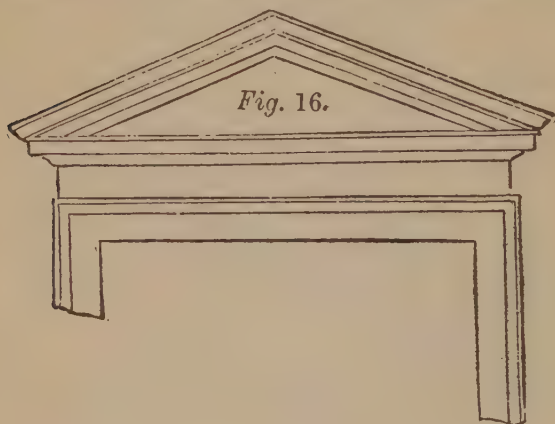
Fig. 15.

as shown, and from 1 as center, with the dividers transfer the divisions 2, 3, 4, etc., as shown, and from the points thus obtained, on the upper line of the rake draw lines parallel to 1M. Where these lines intersect with the lines of the rake will be points through which the outline C may be traced.

In case there is a moulded head to put upon a raking

gable, the moulding D shown at the right hand must be worked out for the upper side. The manner in which this is done is self-evident upon examination of the drawing, and therefore needs no special description.

A good example of a raking moulding and its applications to actual work is shown in Fig. 15, on a different scale. The ogee moulding at the lower end is the regular moulding, while the middle line, *ax*, shows the shape of the raking moulding, and the curve on



the top end, *cdo*, shows the face of a moulding that would be required to return horizontally at that point. The manner of pricking off these curves is shown by the letters and figures.

At Fig. 16 a finished piece of work is shown, where this manner of work will be required, on the returns.

Fig. 17 shows the same moulding applied to a curved window or door head. The manner of pricking the curve is given in Fig. 18.

At No. 2 draw any line, AD, to the center of the

pediment, meeting the upper edge of the upper fillet in D, and intersecting the lines AAA, *aaa*, *bbb*, *ccc*,

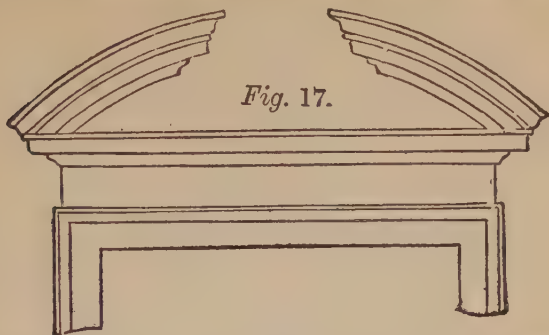


Fig. 17.

BBB in A, *a*, *b*, *c*, B, E. From these points draw lines *aa*, *bb*, *cc*, BB, EE, tangents to their respective arcs;

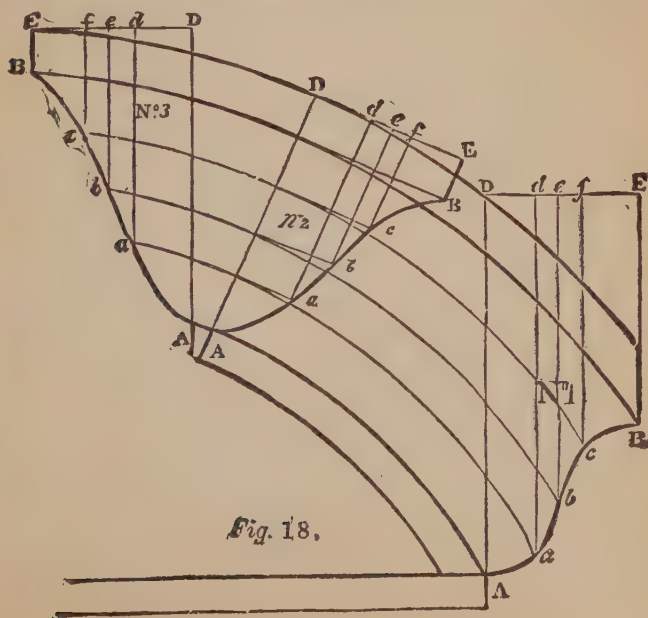


Fig. 18.

on the tangent line DE, from D, make Dd , De , Df , DE, respectively equal to the distances Dd , Dc , Df , DE on the level line DE, at No. 1. Through the points d , e , f , E, draw da , eb , fc , EB, then the curve drawn through the points A, a , b , c , B, will be the section of the circular moulding.

Sometimes mouldings for this kind of work are made

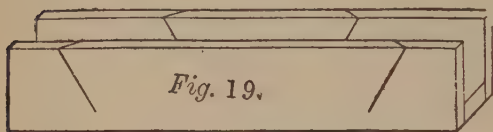


Fig. 19.

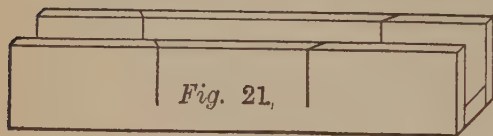


Fig. 21.

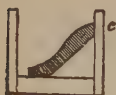


Fig. 20



Fig. 22.

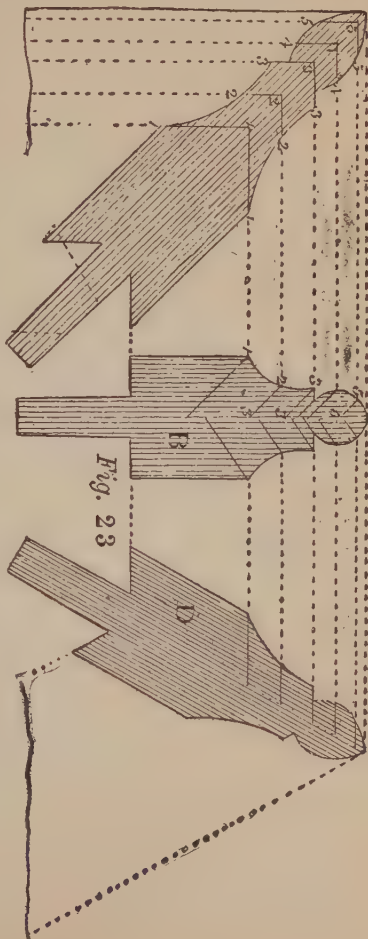
of thin stuff, and are beveled on the back at the bottom in such a manner that the top portion of the member hangs over, which gives it the appearance of being solid. Mouldings of this kind are called

“spring mouldings,” and much care is required in mitering them. This should always be done in a miter box, which must be made for the purpose; often two boxes are required, as shown in Figs. 19-22. The cuts across the box are regular miters, while the angles down the side are the same as the down cut of the rafter, or plumb cut of the moulding. When the box is ready, place the mouldings in it upside down, keeping the moulded side to the front, as seen in Fig. 20,

making sure that the level of the moulding at *c* fits close to the side of the box.

To miter the rake mouldings together at the top, the box shown in Fig. 21 is used. The angles on the top of the box are the same as the down bevel at the top of the rafter, the sides being sawed down square. Put the moulding in the box, as shown in Fig. 22, keeping the bevel at *c* flat on the bottom of the box, and having the moulded side to the front, and the miter for the top is cut, which completes the moulding for one side of the gable. The miter for the top of the moulding for the other side of the gable may then be cut.

When the rake moulding is made of the proper form these boxes are very convenient; but a great deal of the machine-made mouldings are



not of the proper form to fit. In such cases the moulding should be made to suit, or they come bad; although many use the mouldings as they come from the factory, and trim the miters so as to make them do.

The instructions given, however, in Figs. 13, 14, 15 and 18 will enable the workman to make patterns for what he requires.

While the "angle bar" is not much in vogue at the present time, the methods by which it is obtained, may be applied to many purposes, so it is but proper the method should be embodied in this work. In Fig. 23, B is a common sash bar, and C is the angle bar of the same thick-

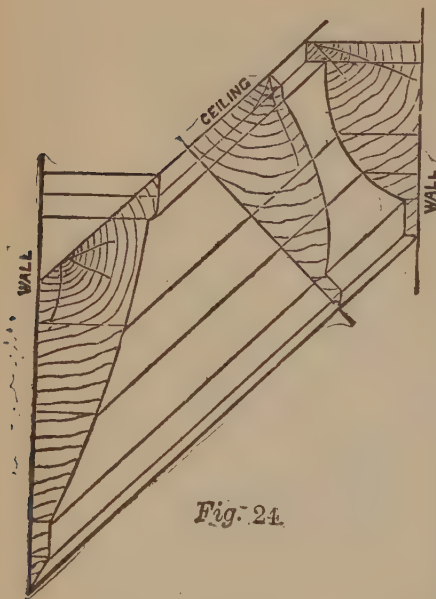


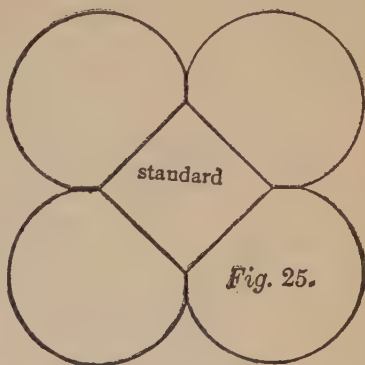
Fig. 24.

ness. Take the raking projection, 11, in C, and set the foot of your compass in 1 at B, and cross the middle of the bar at the other 1; then draw the points 2, 2, 3, 3, etc., parallel to 11, then prick your bar at C from the ordinates so drawn at B, which, when traced, will give the angle bar.

This is a simple operation, and may be applied to

many other cases, and for enlarging or diminishing mouldings or other work.

The next figure, 24, gives the lines for a raking moulding, such as a cornice in a room with a sloping ceiling. As may be seen from the diagram the three sections shown are drawn equal in thickness to miter at the angles of the room.



The construction should be easily understood. When a straight moulding is mitered with a curved one the line of miter is sometimes straight and sometimes curved, as seen at Fig. 18, and when the mouldings are all curved the miters are also straight and curved, as shown in previous examples.

If it is desired to make a cluster column of wood, it is first necessary to make a standard or core, which must have as many sides as there are to be faces of columns.

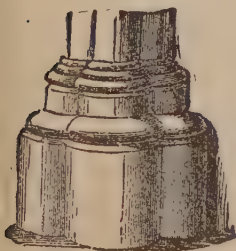


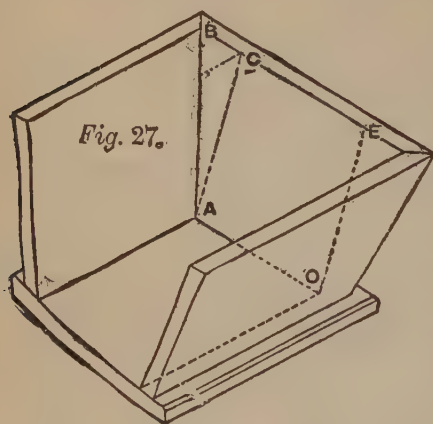
Fig. 26.

Fig. 25 shows how the work is done. This shows a cluster of four columns, which are nailed to a square standard or core. Fig. 26 shows the base of a clustered column. These are blocks turned in the lathe, requiring four of them for each base, which are cut and mitered as shown in Fig. 25. The cap, or capital, is, of course, cut in the same manner.

Laying out lines for hopper cuts is often puzzling, and on this account I will devote more space to this subject than to those requiring less explanations.

Fig. 27 shows an isometric view of three sides of a hopper. The fourth side, or end, is purposely left out, in order to show the exact build of the hopper. It will be noticed that AC and EO show the end of the

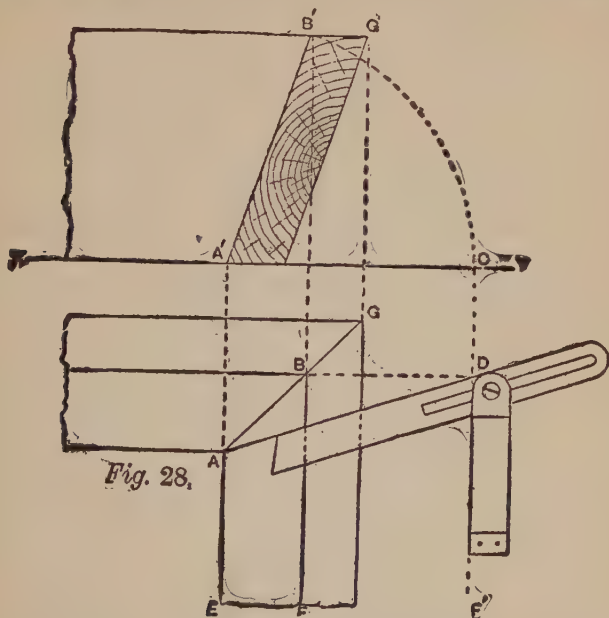
work as squared up from the bottom, and that BC shows the gain of the splay or flare. This gives the idea of what a hopper is, though the width of side and amount of flare may be any measurement that may be decided upon. The difficulty in this work is to get



the proper lines for the miter and for a butt cut.

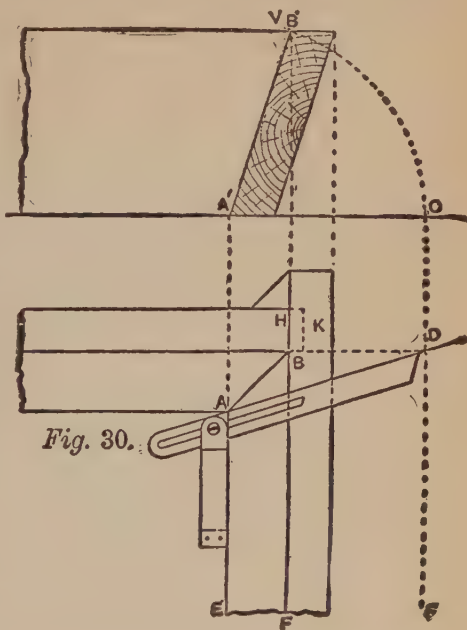
Let us suppose the flare of the sides and ends to be as shown at Fig. 28, though any flare or inclination will answer equally well. This diagram and the plan exhibit the method to be employed, where the sides and ends are to be mitered together. To obtain the bevel to apply for the side cut, use A' as center, B' as radius, and CDF' parallel to BF . Project from B to D parallel to XY . Join AD , which gives the bevel required, as shown. If the top edge of the stuff is to be horizontal, as shown at $B'G'$, the bevel to apply to the edge will be simply as shown in plan by BG ; but if

the edge of the stuff is to be square to the side, as shown at B'C', Fig. 29, the bevel must be obtained as follows: Produce EB' to D', as indicated, Fig. 29. With B as center, describe the arc from C', which gives the point D. Project down from D, making DF



parallel to CC, as shown. Project from C parallel to XY. This will give the point D. Join BD, and this will give the bevel line required. At A, Fig. 31, is shown the application of the bevel to the side of the stuff, and at B the application of the bevel to the edge of the stuff. When the ends butt to the sides, as indicated at H, Fig. 30, the bevel, it will be noticed, is obtained in a similar manner to that shown at Fig. 28. It is not often that simply a butt joint is used between

right angle, equally distant from B, make the angle B, K, L, equal that of 3, K, L, shown on the left; from B draw through point L; now take C as a center, and strike an arc, touching line BL. From A draw a line touching the arc at H, and cutting the extended line through B in N, thus fixing N as a point. Then by drawing from C through N, we get the bevel X for the butt joint. Joints on the ends of timbers running horizontally in tapered framed structures, when the plan is square and the inclinations equal, may be found by this method.

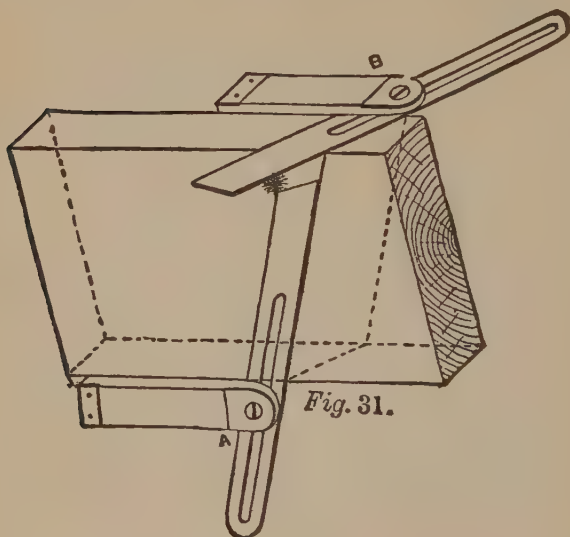


The backing of a hip rafter may also be obtained by this method, as shown at J, where the pitch line is used as at 2, 3, which would be the inclination of the roof.

The solution just rendered is intended only for hoppers having right angles and equal pitches or splays, as hoppers having acute or obtuse angles, must be treated in a slightly different way.

Let us suppose a butt joint for a hopper having an

acute angle, such as shown at A, B, C, Fig. 33, and with an inclination as shown at 2, 3. Take any two points, A, C, equally distant from B. Join A, C, bisect this line in P, draw through P, indefinitely. Find a bevel for the side cut by drawing 3, 4, square with 2, 3; take 3 as a center, and strike an arc, touching the lower line cutting in 4; draw from 4, cutting

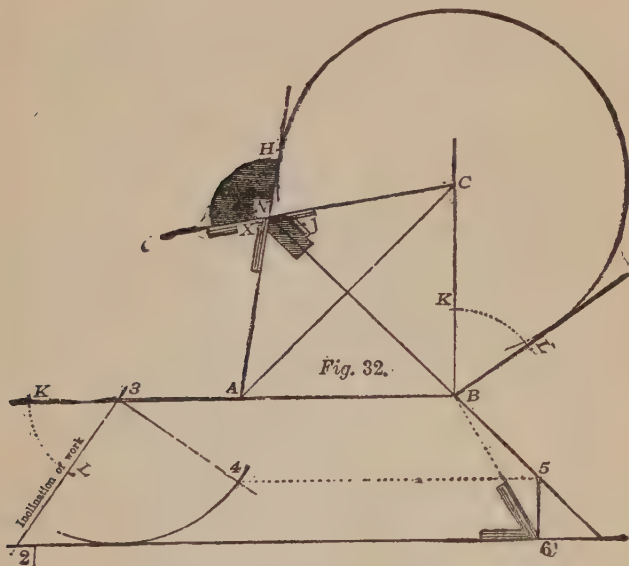


the miter line in 5, and from it square draw a line cutting in 6. Join 6, B, this gives bevel W, for direction of cut on the surface of inclined sides.

The bevel for a butt joint is found by drawing C, 8, square with A, B; make the angle 8, K, L, equal that of 3, K, L, shown on the left. Draw from 8 through point L; take C as a center and strike an arc touching the line 8, L; draw from A, touching the arc at D, cutting

the line from P, in D, making it a point, then by drawing from C, through D, we get the bevel X for the butt joint.

As stated regarding the previous illustration, the backing for a hip in a roof having the pitch as shown at 2, 3, may be found at the bevel J. The same rule



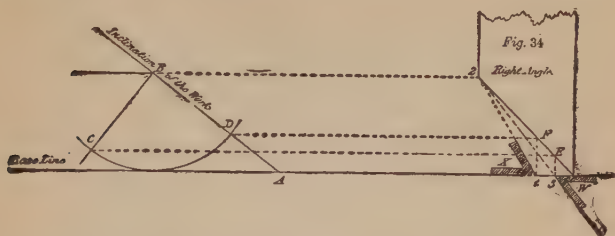
also applies to end joints on timbers placed in a horizontal double inclined frame, having an acute angle same as described.

Having described the methods for finding the butt joints in right-angled and acute-angled hoppers, it will be proper now to define a method for describing an obtuse-angled hopper having butt joints.

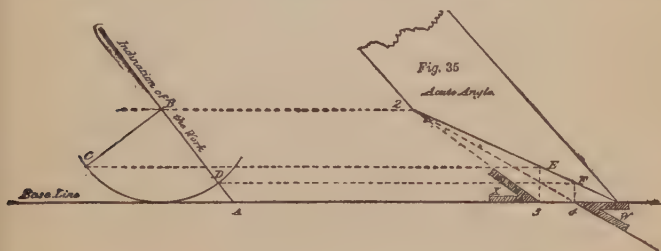
Let the inclination of the sides of the hopper be

To obtain the levels or miters is a simple matter to one who has mastered the foregoing, as evidenced by the following:

Fig. 34 shows a right-angled hopper; its sides may stand on any inclination, as AB. The miter line,



2, W, on the plan, being fixed, draw B, C square with the inclination. Then from B, as center, strike an arc, touching the base line and cutting in CD. From CD draw parallel with the base line, cutting the miters in F and E; and from these points square down the lines, cutting in 3 and 4. From 2 draw through 3; this gives

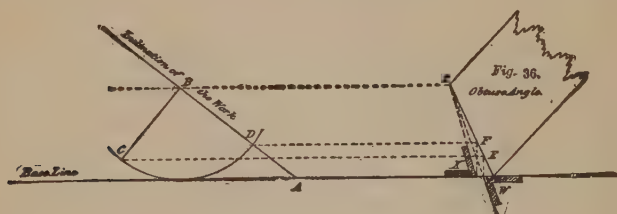


bevel W for the direction of cut on the surface sides. Now join 2, 4, this gives bevel X to miter the edges, which in all cases must be square, in order that bevels may be properly applied.

Fig. 35 shows a plan forming an acute-angled hop-

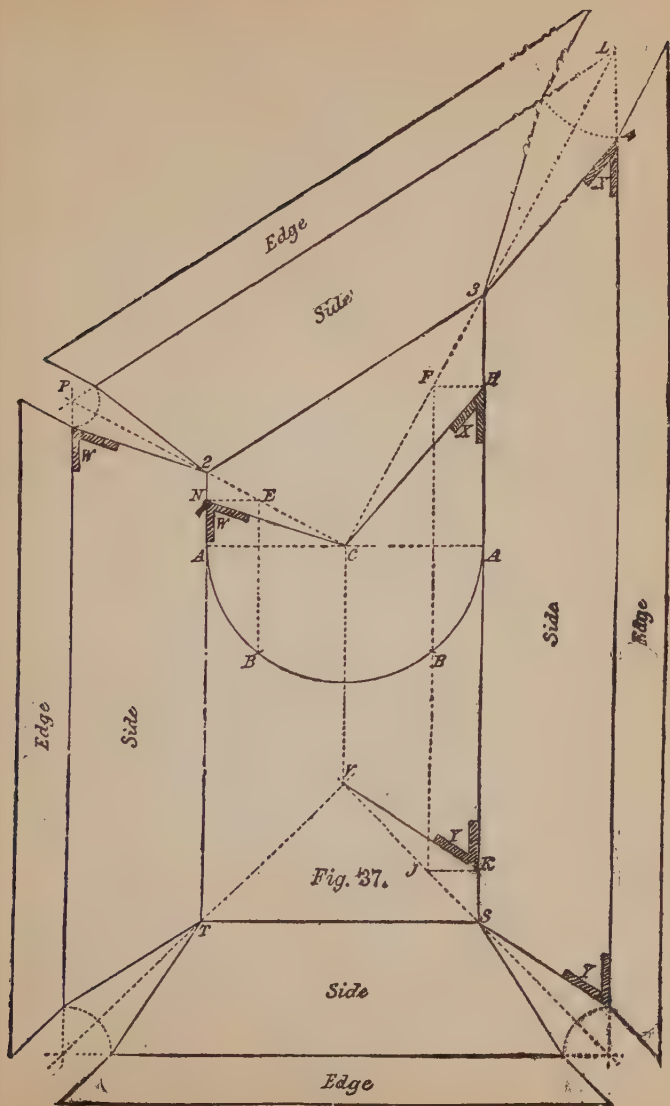
per, the miter line being 2, W. The sides of this plan are to stand on the inclination AB. Draw BC square with the inclination, and from B, as center, strike an arc, touching the base line and cutting in CD. Draw from CD, cutting the miter line at E and F; from these points square down the lines, cutting in 3 and 4. From 2 draw through 4, which will give bevel W to miter the edges of sides. Now join 2, 3, which gives bevel X for the direction of cut on the surface of sides.

Fig. 36 shows an obtuse-angled hopper, its miter line on the plan being 2 W, and the inclination of sides



AB. Draw BC square with the inclination, and from B as center strike an arc, touching the base line and cutting CD. Draw from CD, cutting the miter in F and E. From these points square down the lines, cutting the base; then by drawing from 2 through the point below E, we get bevel W for the direction of cuts on the surface of sides, and in like manner the point below F being joined with 2, gives bevel X to miter the edges.

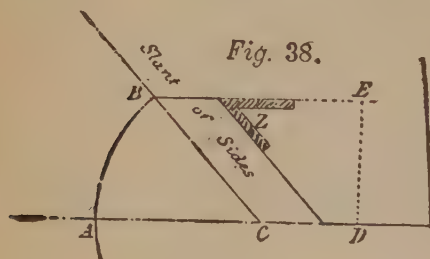
It will be noticed that the cuts for the three different angles are obtained on exactly the same principle, without the slightest variation, and so perfectly simple as to be understood by a glance at the drawing. The workman will notice that in each of the angles



line from C, cutting the miter, invariably gives a direction for the surface of sides, and the line from D directs the miter on their edges.

Unlike many other systems employed, this one meets all and every condition, and is the system that has been employed by high class workmen and millwrights for ages.

One more example on hopper work and I am done with the subject: Suppose it is desired to build a hopper similar to the one shown at Fig. 37, several



new conditions will be met with, as will be seen by an examination of the obtuse and acute angles, L and P. In order to work this out right make a diagram like

that shown at Fig. 38, where the line AD is the given base line on which the slanting side of hopper or box rises at any angle to the base line, as CB, and the total height of the work is represented by the line B, E. By this diagram it will be seen that the horizontal lines or bevels of the slanting sides are indicated by the bevel Z.

Having got this diagram, which of course is not drawn to scale, well in hand, the ground plan of the hopper may be laid down in such a shape as desired, with the sides, of course, having the slant as given in Fig 38.

Take T2, 3S, Fig. 37, as a part of the plan, then set off the width of sides equal to C, B, as shown in Fig. 38.

These are shown to intersect at P, L above; then draw lines from P, L through 2, 3, until they intersect at C, as the dotted lines show. Take C as a center, and with the radius A, describe the semi-circle A, A, and with the same radius transferred to C, Fig. 38, describe the arc A, B, as shown. Again, with the same radius, set off A, B, A, B on Fig. 37, cutting the semi-circle at B, as shown. Now draw through B, on the right, parallel with S, 3, cutting at J and F; square over F, H and J, K, and join H, C; this gives bevel X, as the cut for face of sides, which come together at the angle shown at 3. The miters on the edge of stuff are parallel with the dotted line, L, 3. This is the acute corner of the hopper, and as the edges are worked off to the bevel 2, as shown in Fig. 38, the miter must be correct.

Having mastered the details of the acute corner, the square corner at S will be next in order. The first step is to join K, V, which gives the bevel Y, for the cut on the face of sides on the ends, which form the square corners. The method of obtaining these lines is the same as that explained for obtaining them for the acute-angled corner, as shown by the dotted lines, Fig. 35. As the angles, S, T, are both square, being right and left, the same operation answers both, that is, the bevel Y does for both corners.

Coming to the obtuse angle, P, 2, we draw a line B, E, on the left, parallel with A, 2, cutting at E, as shown by dotted line. Square over at E, cutting T, A, 2 at N; join N, C, which will give the bevel W, which is the angle of cut for face of sides. The miters on edges are found by drawing a line parallel with P, 2.

In this problem, like Fig. 34, every line necessary to the cutting of a hopper after the plan as shown by

the boundary lines 2, 3, T, S, is complete and exhaustive, but it must be understood that in actual work the spreading out of the sides, as here exhibited, will not be necessary, as the angles will find themselves when the work is put together. When the plan of the base—which is the small end of the hopper in this case—is given, and the slant or inclination of the sides known, the rest may be easily obtained. In order to become thoroughly conversant with the problem, I would advise the workman to have the drawing made on cardboard, so as to cut out all the outer lines, including the open corners, which form the miters, leaving the whole piece loose. Then make slight cuts in the back of the cardboard, opposite the lines 2, 3, S, T, just deep enough to admit of the cardboard being bent upwards on the cut lines without breaking. Then run the knife along the lines, which indicates the edges of the hopper sides. This cut must be made on the face side of the drawing, so as to admit of the edges being turned downwards. After all cuts are made raise the sides until the corners come closely together, and let the edges fall level, or in such a position that the miters come closely together. If the lines have been drawn accurately and the cuts made on the lines in a proper manner, the work will adjust itself nicely, and the sides will have the exact inclination shown at Fig. 38, and a perfect model of the work will be the result.

This is a very interesting problem, and the working out of it, as suggested, cannot but afford both profit and pleasure to the young workman.

From what has preceded, it must be evident to the workman that the lines giving proper angles and bevels for the corner post of a hopper must of neces-

sity give the proper lines for the corner post for a pyramidal building, such as a railway tank frame, or any similar structure. True, the position of the post is inverted, as in the hopper, its top falls outward, while in the timber structure the top inclines inward; but this makes no difference in the theory, all the operator has to bear in mind is that the hopper in this case is reversed—inverted. Once the proper shape of the corner post has been obtained, all other bevels can readily be found, as the side cuts for joists and braces can be taken from them. A study of these two figures in this direction will lead the student up to a correct knowledge of tapered framing.

CHAPTER II

COVERING SOLIDS, CIRCULAR WORK, DOVETAILING AND STAIRS

There are several ways to cover a circular tower roof. Some are covered by bending the boarding around

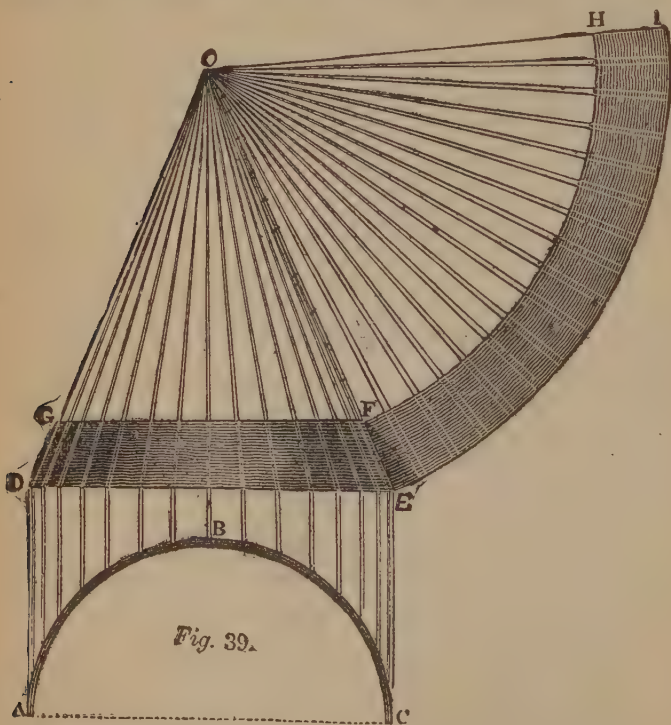


Fig. 39.

them, while others have the joints of the covering vertical, or inclined. In either case, the boarding has to be cut to shape. In the first instance, where the joints

are horizontal, the covering must be curved on both edges.

At Fig. 39 I show a part plan, elevation, and development of a conical tower roof. ABC shows half the plan; DO and EO show the inclination and height of the tower, while EH and EI show the development of the lower course of covering. This is obtained by using O as a center, with OE as radius, and striking the curve EI, which is the lower edge of the board, and corresponds to DE in the elevation. From the same center O, with radius OF, describe the curve FH, which is the joint GF on the elevation. The board, EFHI, may be any convenient width, as may also the other boards used for covering, but whatever the width decided upon, that same width must be continued throughout that course. The remaining tiers of covering must be obtained in the same way. The joints are radial lines from the center O. Any convenient length of stuff over the distance of three ribs, or rafters, will answer. This solution is applicable to many kinds of work. The

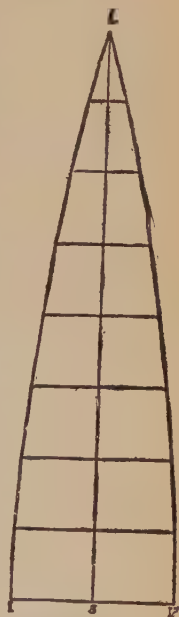
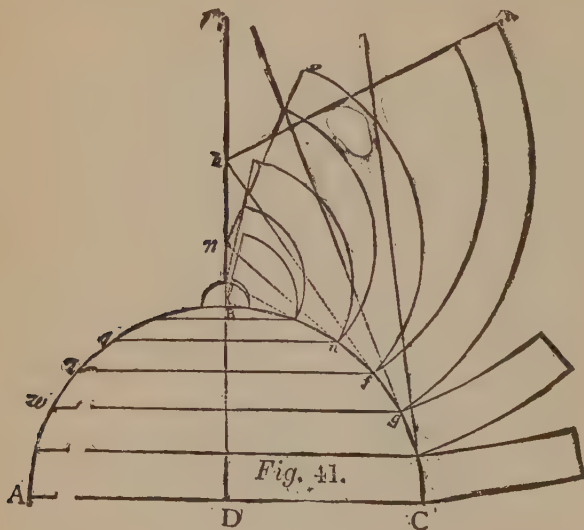


Fig. 40.

rafters in this case are simply straight scantlings; the bevels for feet and points may be obtained from the diagram. The shape of a "gore," when such is required, is shown at Fig. 40, IJK showing the base, and L the top or apex. The method of getting it out will be easily understood by examining the diagram. When "gores" are used for covering it will be necessary

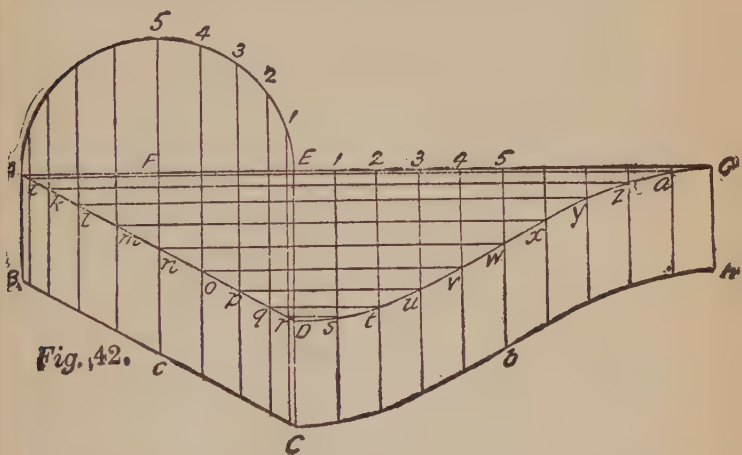
to have cross-ribs nailed in between the rafters, and these must be cut to the sweep of the circle, where they are nailed in, so that a rib placed in half way up will require only to be half the diameter of the base, and the other ribs must be cut accordingly.

To cover a domical roof with horizontal boarding we proceed in the manner shown in Fig. 41, where ABC



is a vertical section through the axis of a circular dome, and it is required to cover this dome horizontally. Bisect the base in the point D, and draw DBE perpendicular to AC, cutting the circumference in B. Now divide the arc, BC, into equal parts, so that each part will be rather less than the width of a board, and join the points of division by straight lines, which will form an inscribed polygon of so many sides; and through these points draw lines parallel to

the base AC, meeting the opposite sides of the circumference. The trapezoids formed by the sides of the polygon and the horizontal lines may then be regarded as the sections of so many frustrums of cones; whence results the following mode of procedure: Produce, until they meet the line DE, the lines FG, etc., forming the sides of the polygon. Then to describe a board which corresponds to the surface of one of the zones, as FG, of which the trapezoid is a section from

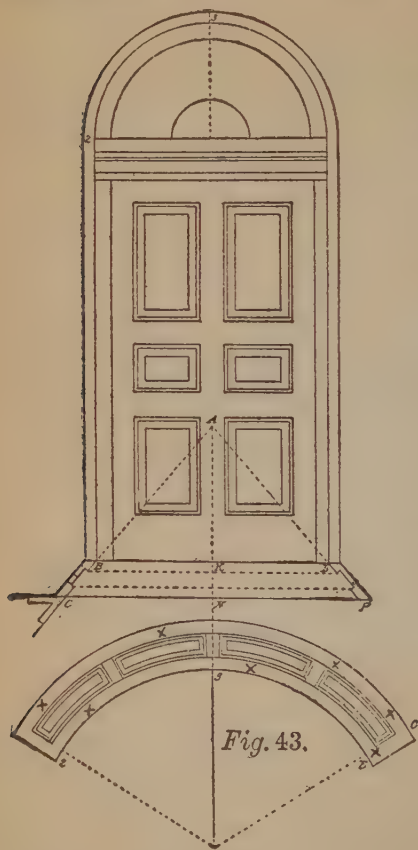


the point E, where the line FG produced meets DE, with the radii EF, EG describe two arcs and cut off the end of the board K on the line of a radius EK. The other boards are described in the same manner.

There are many other solids, some of which it is possible the workman may be called upon to cover, but as space will not admit of us discussing them all, we will illustrate one example, which includes within itself the principles by which almost any other solid

may be dealt with. Let us suppose a tower, having a domical roof, rising from another roof having an inclination as shown at BC, Fig. 42, and we wish to board

it with the joints of the boards on the same inclination as that of the roof through which the tower rises. To accomplish this, let A, B, C, D, Fig. 42, be the seat of the generating section; from A draw AG perpendicular to AB, and produce CD to meet it in E; on A, E describe the semi-circle, and transfer its perimeter to E, G by dividing it into equal parts, and setting off corresponding divisions on E, G. Through the divisions of the semi-circle draw lines at right angles to AE, producing them to meet the

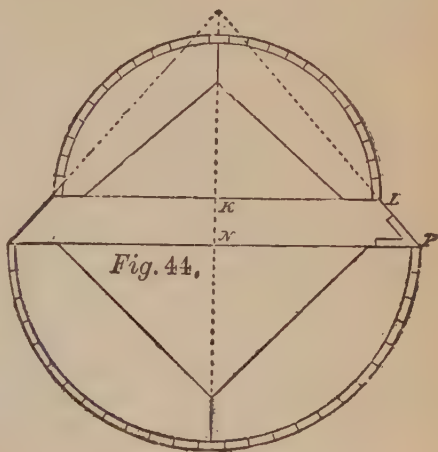


lines A, D and B, C in *i, k, l, m*, etc. Through the divisions on E, G, draw lines perpendicular to them, then through the intersections of the ordinates of the

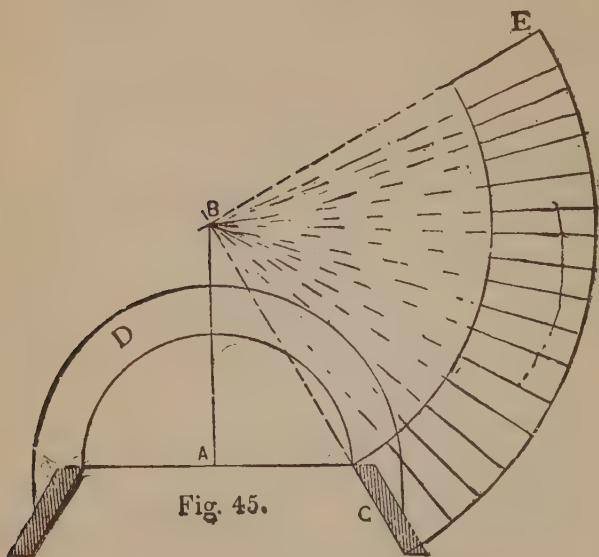
semi-circle, with the line AD draw the lines *i, a, k, z, l, y*, etc., parallel to AG, and where these intersect the perpendiculars from EG, in points *a, z, y, x, w, v, u*, etc., trace a curved line, GD, and draw parallel to it the curved line HC; then will DC, HG be the development of the covering required.

Almost any description of dome, cone, ogee or other solid may be developed, or so dealt with under the principle as shown in the foregoing, that the workman, it is hoped, will experience but little difficulty in laying out lines for cutting material to cover any form of curved roof he may be confronted with.

Another class of covering is that of making soffits for splayed doors or windows having circular or segmental heads, such as shown in Fig. 43, which exhibits a door with a circular head and splayed jambs. The head or soffit is also splayed and is paneled as shown. In order to obtain the curved soffit, to show the same splay or angle, from the vertical lines of the door, proceed as follows: Lay out the width of the doorway, showing the splay of the jambs, as at C, B and L, P; extend the angle lines, as shown by the dotted lines, to A, which gives A, B as the radius of the



inside curve, and A, C as radius of the outside curve. These radii correspond to the radii A, B and A, C in Fig. 43; the figure showing the flat plan of the paneled soffit complete. To find the development, Fig. 43, get the stretch-out of the quarter circle 2 and 3, shown in the elevation at the top of the doorway, and

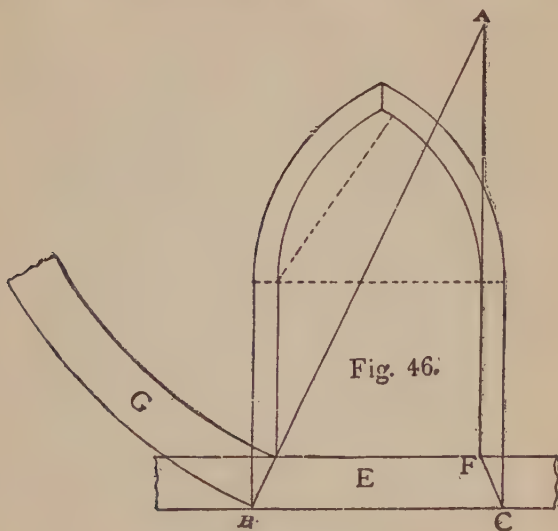


make 2, 3 and 3B, Fig. 43, equal to it, and the rest of the work is very simple.

If the soffit is to be laid off into panels, as shown at Fig. 44, it is best to prepare a veneer, having its edges curved similar to those of Fig. 43, making the veneer of some flexible wood, such as basswood, elm or the like, that will easily bend over a form, such as is shown at Fig. 44. The shape of this form is a portion of a cone, the circle L being less in diameter than the

circle P. The whole is covered with staves, which, of course, will be tapered to meet the situation. The veneer, x, x, etc., Fig. 43, may then be bent over the form and finished to suit the conditions. If the mouldings used in the panel work are bolection mouldings, they cannot be planted in place until after the veneer is taken off the form.

This method of dealing with splayed work is applicable to windows as well as doors, to circular pews in



churches and many other places where splayed work is required.

A simple method of finding the veneer for a soffit of the form shown in Fig. 43 is shown at Fig. 45. The splay is seen at C, from which a line is drawn on the angle of the splay to B through which the vertical line A passes. B forms the center from which the veneer

is described. A is the center of the circular head, for both inside and outside curves, as shown at D. The radial lines centering at B show how to kerf the stuff when necessary for bending. The line E is at right angles with the line CB, and the veneer CE is the proper length to run half way around the soffit. The joints are radial lines just as shown.

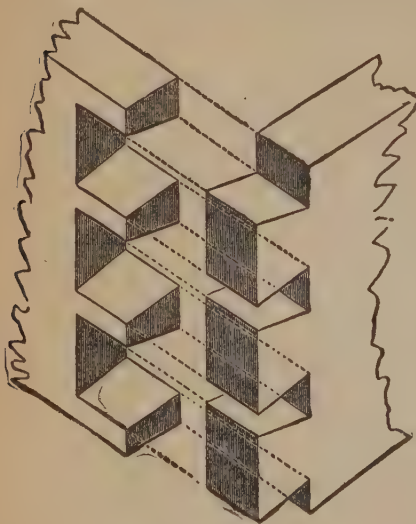


Fig. 47.

A method for obtaining the correct shape of a veneer for a gothic splayed window or door-head, is shown at Fig. 46; E shows the sill, and line BA the angle of splay. BC shows the outside of the splay; erect the inside line F to A, and this point will form the center from which to describe the curve or veneer G. This

veneer will be the proper shape to bend in the soffit on either side of the window head.

The art of dovetailing is almost obsolete among carpenters, as most of this kind of work is now done by cabinet-makers, or by a few special workmen in the factories. It will be well, however, to preserve the art, and every young workman should not rest until he can do a good job of work in dovetailing; he will not find it a difficult operation.

There are three kinds of dovetailing, i.e., the common dovetail, Fig. 47; the lapped dovetail, Fig. 48, and the secret, or mitered dovetail, Fig. 49. These may be subdivided into other kinds of dovetailing, but there will be but little difference.

The common dovetail is the strongest, but shows the ends of the dovetails on both faces of the angles,

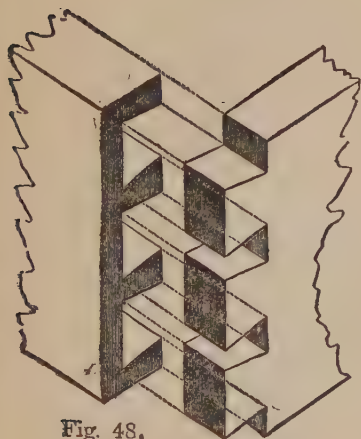


Fig. 48.

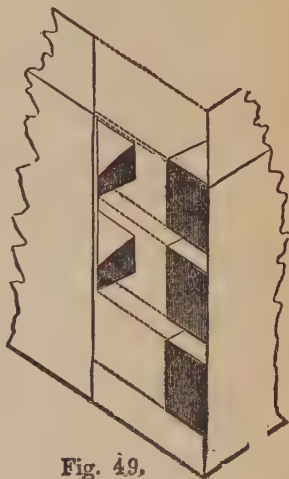


Fig. 49.

and is, therefore, only used in such places as that of a drawer, where the external angle is not seen.

The lapped dovetail, where the ends of the dovetails show on one side of the angle only, is used in such places as the front of a drawer, the side being only seen when opened.

In the miter or secret dovetail, the dovetails are not seen at all. It is the weakest of the three kinds.

At Figs. 50 and 51 I show two methods of dovetailing hoppers, trays and other splayed work. The reference letters A and B show that when the work is together A will stand directly over B. Care must be

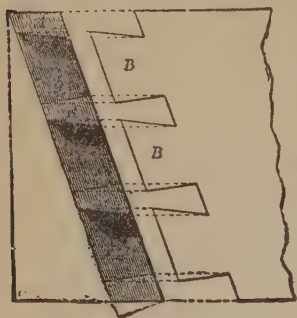
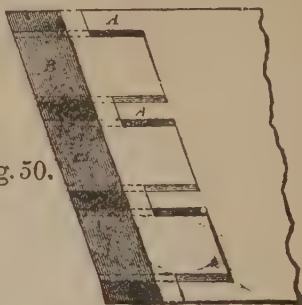


Fig. 50.



taken when preparing the ends of stuff for dovetailing for hoppers, trays, etc., that the right bevels and angles are obtained, according to the rules explained

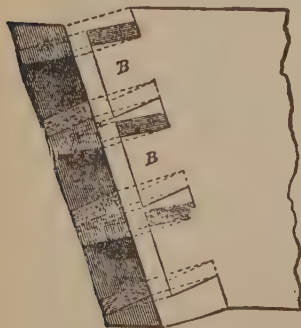
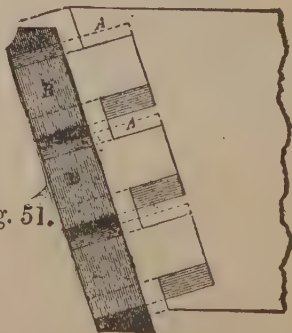


Fig. 51.



for finding the cuts and bevels for hoppers and work of a similar kind, in the examples given previously. All stuff for hopper work intending to be dovetailed

must be prepared with butt joints before the dovetails are laid out. Joints of this kind may be made common, lapped or mitered. In making the latter much skill and labor will be required.

Stair building and handrailing combined is a science in itself, and one that taxes the best skill in the market, and it will be impossible for me to do more than touch the subject, and that in such a manner as to enable the workman to lay out an ordinary straight flight of stairs. For further instructions in stair building I would refer my readers to some one or two of the many works on the subject that can be obtained from any dealer in mechanical or scientific books.

The first thing the stair builder has to ascertain is the dimension of the space the stairs are to occupy; then he must get the height, or the risers, and the width of the treads, and, as architects generally draw the plan of the stairs, showing the space they are to occupy and the number of treads, the stair builder has only to measure the height from floor to floor and divide by the number of risers and the distance from first to last riser, and divide by the number of treads. (This refers only to straight stairs.) Let us take an example: Say that we have ten feet of height and fifteen feet ten inches of run, and we have nineteen treads; thus fifteen feet ten inches divided by nineteen gives us ten inches for the width of the tread, and we have ten feet rise divided by twenty (observe here that there is always one more riser than tread), which gives us six inches for the height of the riser. The pitch-board must now be made, and as all the work has to be set out from it, care must be taken to make it exactly right. Take a piece of board, same as shown

in Fig. 52, about half an inch thick, dress it and square the side and end, A, B, C; set off the height of the rise from A to B, and the width of the tread from B to C; now cut the line AC, and the pitch-board is complete, as shown in Fig. 53. This may be done by the steel square as shown at Fig. 54. To get the width of string-boards draw the line AB, Fig. 53; add to the length of this line about half an inch more at A, the margin to be allowed, and the total will be the width of string-boards. Thus, say that we allow three inches

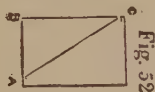


Fig. 52



Fig. 53.

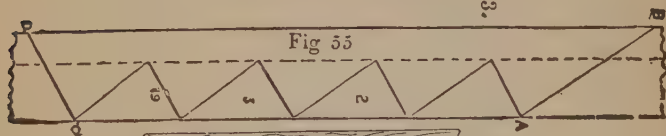


Fig 55

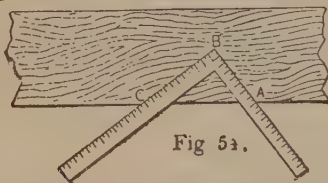


Fig 54.

for margin, one-half inch to be left on the under side of string-board, will make the width of string-boards in this case about nine inches. Now get a plank, say one and a half inches, of any thickness that may be agreed upon, the length may be obtained by multiplying the longest side of the pitch-boards, AC, Fig. 52, by the number of risers; but as this is the only class of stairs that the length of string-boards can be obtained in this way I would recommend the beginner to practice the sure plan of taking the pitch-board and applying it as at 1, 2, 3, 19, Fig. 55. Drawing all the steps

this way will prevent a mistake that sometimes occurs, viz. the string-boards being cut too short. Cut the foot at the line AB, and the top, as at CD. This will give about one and a half inches more than the extreme length. Now cut out the treads and risers; the width of stair is, say, three feet, and we have one and a half inches on each side for string-boards. Allow three-eighths of an inch for housing on each side. This will make the length of tread and risers two and one-fourth inches less than the full width of stairs; and as the treads must project their own thickness over rise, which is, say, one and a half inches, the full size of tread will be two feet by eleven and one-half inches, and of the risers two feet nine and three-fourths inches by six inches; and observe that the first riser will be the thickness of the tread less than the others; it will be only four and one-half inches wide. The reason of this riser being less than the others is because it has a tread thickness extra.

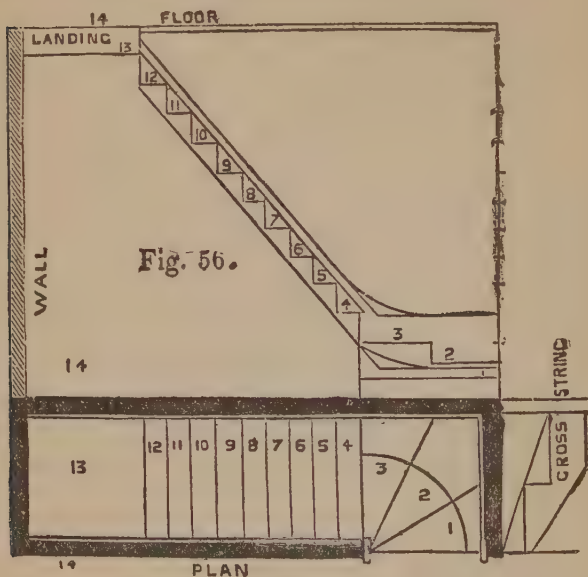
I will now leave the beginner to prepare all his work. Dress the risers on one face and one edge; dress the treads on one face and both edges, making them all of equal width; gauge the ends and the face edge to the required thickness, and round off the nosings; dress the string-boards to one face and edge to match each other.

A plan of a stair having 13 risers and three winders below is shown at Fig. 56. This shows how the whole stair may be laid out. It is inclosed between two walls.

The beginner in stair-work had better resort to the old method of using a story-rod for getting the number of risers. Take a rod and mark on it the exact height from top of lower floor to top of next floor, then

divide up and mark off the number of risers required. There is always one more riser than tread in every flight of stairs. The first riser must be cut the thickness of the tread less than the others.

When there are winders, special treatment will be



required, as shown in Fig. 56, for the treads, but the riser must always be the same width for each separate flight.

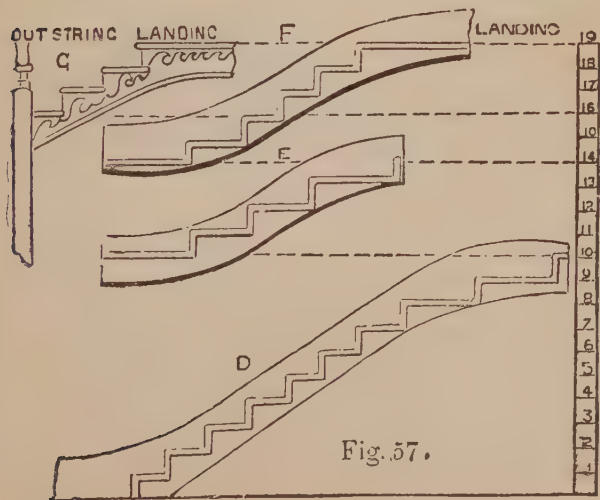
When the stair is straight and without winders, a rod may be used for laying off the steps. The width of the steps, or treads, will be governed somewhat by the space allotted for the run of the stairs.

There is a certain proportion existing between the tread and riser of a stair, that should be kept to as close as possible when laying out the work. Architects

say that the exact measurement for a tread and riser should be sixteen inches, or thereabouts. That is, if a riser is made six inches, the tread should be ten inches wide, and so on. I give a table herewith, showing the rule generally made use of by stair builders for determining the widths of risers and treads:

<i>Treads</i> Inches	<i>Risers</i> Inches	<i>Treads</i> Inches	<i>Risers</i> Inches
5	9	12	5½
6	8½	13	5
7	8	14	4½
8	7½	15	4
9	7	16	3½
10	6½	17	3
11	6	18	2½

It is seldom, however that the proportion of the



riser and step is exactly a matter of choice—the room

allotted to the stairs usually determines this proportion; but the above will be found a useful standard, to which it is desirable to approximate.

In better class buildings the number of steps is considered in the plan, which it is the business of the architect to arrange, and in such cases the height of the story-rod is simply divided to the number required.

An elevation of a stair with winders is shown at Fig. 57, where the story-rod is in evidence with the number of risers figured off.

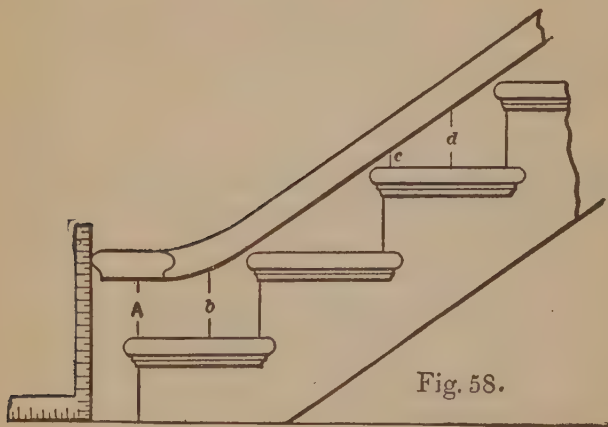


Fig. 58 shows a portion of an open string stair, with a part of the rail laid on it at AB, CD, and the newel cap with the projection at A. This shows how the cap should stand over the lower step.

Fig. 59 shows the manner of constructing the step; S represents the string, R the risers, T the tread, O the nosing and cove moulding, and B is a block glued or otherwise fastened to both riser and tread to render

them strong and firm. It will be seen the riser is let into the tread, and has a shoulder on the inside. The bottom of the riser is nailed to the back of the next lower tread, which binds the whole lower part together. The nosing of the stair is generally re-turned at the open end of the tread, and this covers the end wood of the tread and the joints of the balusters, as shown at Fig. 60.

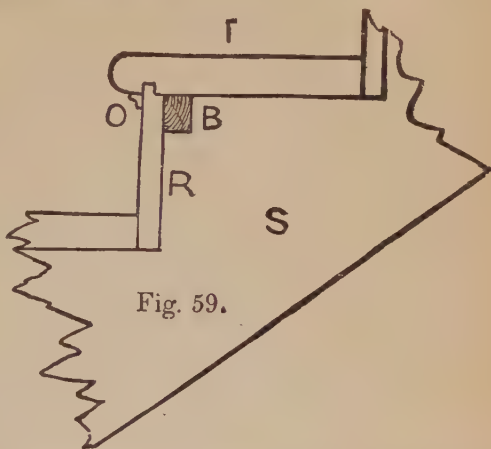


Fig. 59.

When a stair is bracketed, as shown at B, Fig. 60, the point of the riser on its string end should be left

standing past the string the thickness of the bracket, and the end of the bracket miter against it, thus avoiding the necessity of showing end wood or joint. The cove should finish inside the length of the bracket, and the nosing should finish just outside the

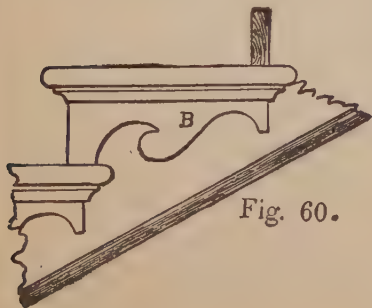


Fig. 60.

length of the bracket. When brackets are employed

they should continue along the cylinder and all around the well-hole trimmers, though they may be varied to suit conditions when continuously running on a straight horizontal fascia.

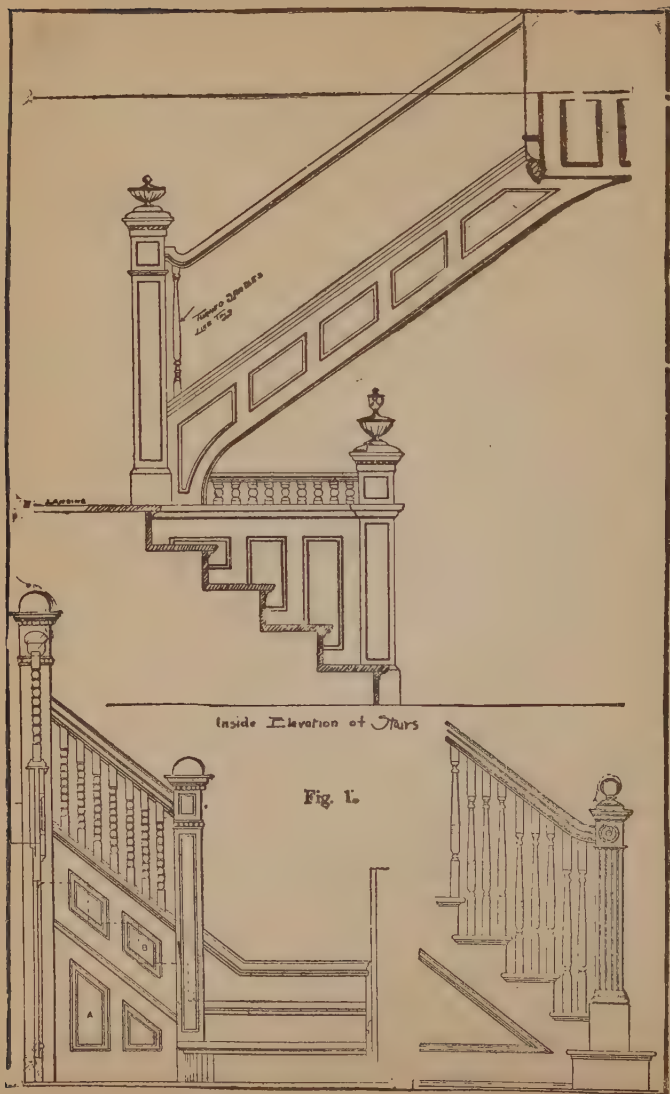
CHAPTER III

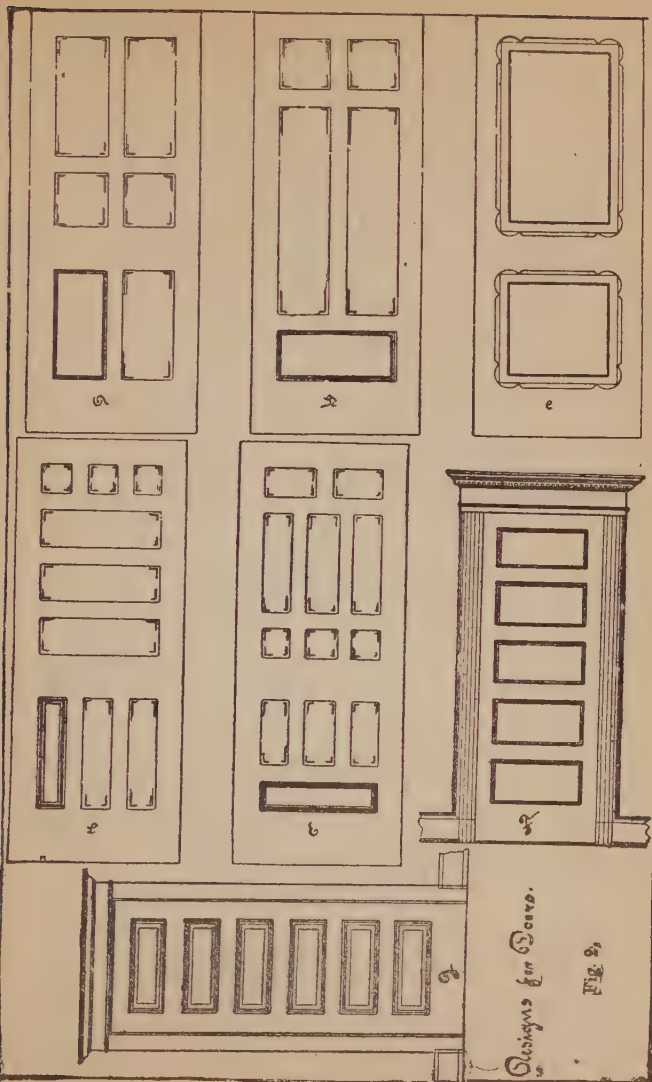
JOINER'S WORK—USEFUL MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES

I am well aware that workmen are always on the lookout for details of work, and welcome everything in this line that is new. While styles and shapes change from year to year, like fashion in women's dress, the principles of construction never change, and styles of finish in woodwork that may be in vogue to-day, may be old-fashioned and discarded next year, therefore it may not be wise to load these pages with many examples of finish as made use of to-day. A few examples, however, may not be out of place, so I close this section by offering a few pages of such details as I feel assured will be found useful for a long time to come.

Fig. 1 is a full page illustration of three examples of stairs and newels in modern styles. The upper one is a colonial stairway with a square newel, as shown at A. A baluster is also shown, so that the whole may be copied if required. The second example shows two newels and balusters, and paneled string and spandril AB, also section of paneled work on end of short flight. The third shows a plain open stair, with baluster and newel, the latter starting from first step.

At Fig. 2, which is also a full page, seven of the latest designs for doors are shown. Those marked





Designs for Doors.

Fig. 2.

ABCD are more particularly employed for inside work, while F and G may be used on outside work; the five-paneled door being the more popular.

There are ten different illustrations, shown at Fig. 3, of various details. The five upper ones show the general method of constructing and finishing a window frame for weighted sash. The section A shows a part of a wall intended for brick veneering, the upper story being shingled or clapboarded.

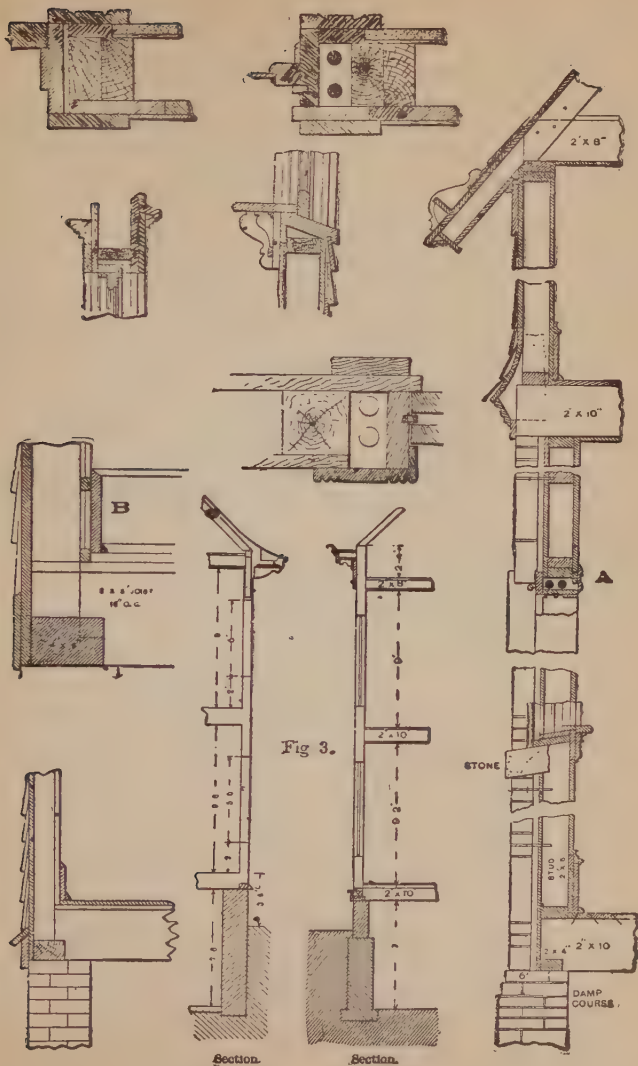
The position of windows and method of finishing bottom of frame, both inside and out, are shown in this section, also manner of cutting joists for sill. The same method—on a larger scale—is shown at C, only the latter is intended for a balloon frame, which is to be boarded and sided on the outside.

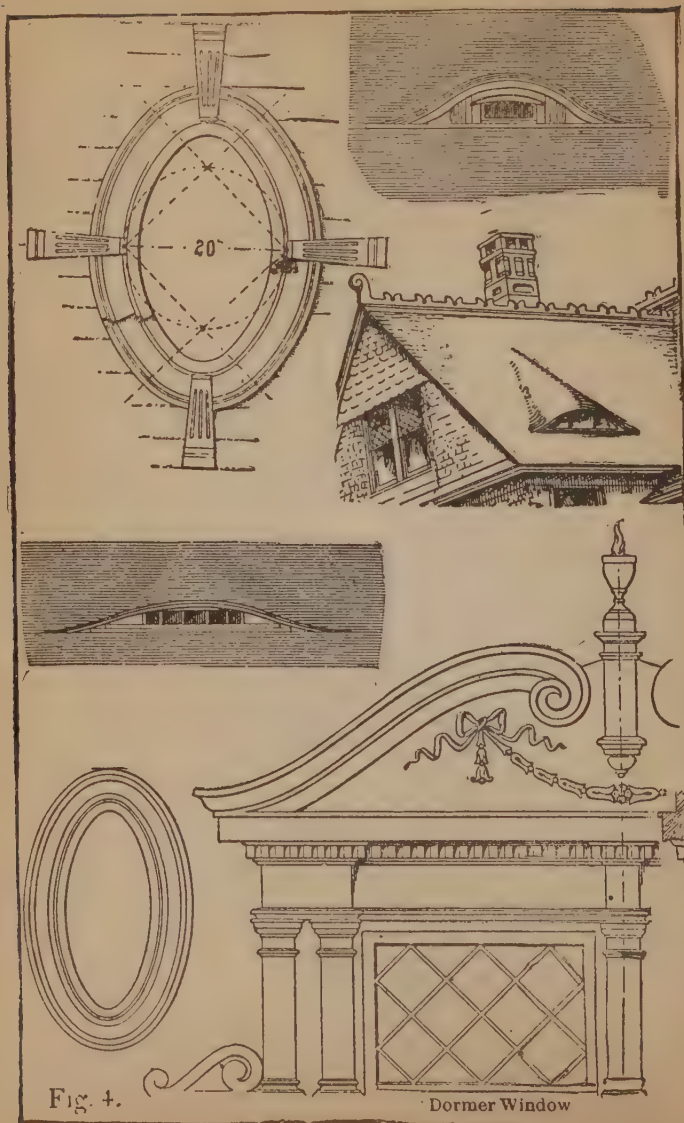
At B another method for cutting joists for sill is shown, where the frame is a balloon one. This frame is supposed to be boarded inside and out, and grounds are planted on for finish, as shown at the base. There is also shown a carpet strip, or quarter-round. The outside is finished with siding.

The two smaller sections show foundation walls, heights of stories, position of windows, cornices and gutters, and methods of connecting sills to joists.

A number of examples are shown in Fig. 4 that will prove useful. One is an oval window with keys. This is often employed to light vestibules, back stairs or narrow hallways. Another one, without keys, is shown on the lower part of the page. There are three examples of eyebrow dormers shown. These are different in style, and will, of course, require different construction.

The dormer window, shown at the foot of the page,





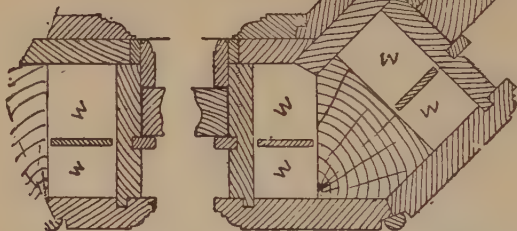
is designed for a house built in colonial style, but may be adapted to other styles.

The four first examples in Fig. 5 show the sections of various parts of a bay window for a balloon frame. The manner of constructing the angle is shown, also the sill and head of window, the various parts and manner of working them being given. A part of the section of the top of the window is shown at E, the inside finish being purposely left off. At F is shown an angle of greater length, which is sometimes the case in bay windows. The manner of construction is quite simple. The lower portion of the page shows some fine examples of turned and carved work. These will often be found useful in giving ideas for turned work for a variety of purposes.

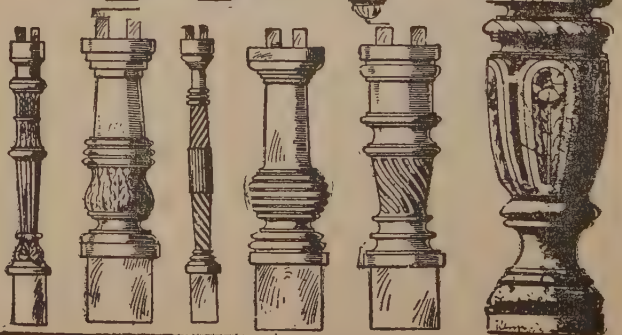
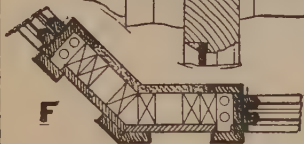
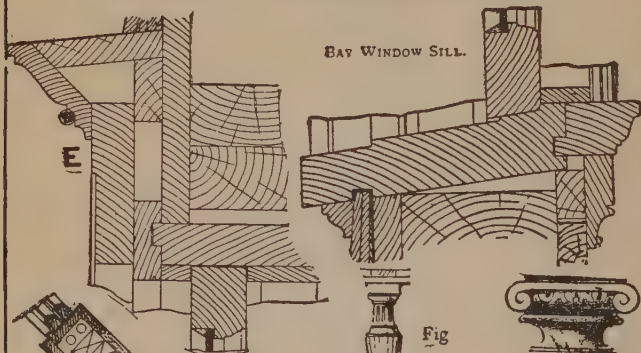
Six examples of shingling are shown in Fig. 6. The first sketch, A, is intended for a hip, and is a fairly good example, and if well done will insure a water-tight roof at that point. In laying out the shingles for this plan the courses are managed as follows: No. 1 is laid all the way out to the line of the hip, the edge of the shingle being planed off, so that course No. 2, on the adjacent side will line perfectly tight down upon it. Next No. 3 is laid and is dressed down in the same manner as the first, after which No. 4 is brought along the same as No. 2. The work proceeds in this manner, first right and then left.

In the second sketch, B, the shingles are laid on the hip in a way to bring the grain of the shingles more nearly parallel with the line of the hip. This method overcomes the projection of cross-grained points. Another method of shingling hips is shown at C and D. In putting on shingles by this method a line is snapped four inches from angle of hip on both sides

BAY WINDOW ANGLE.



BAY WINDOW SILL.

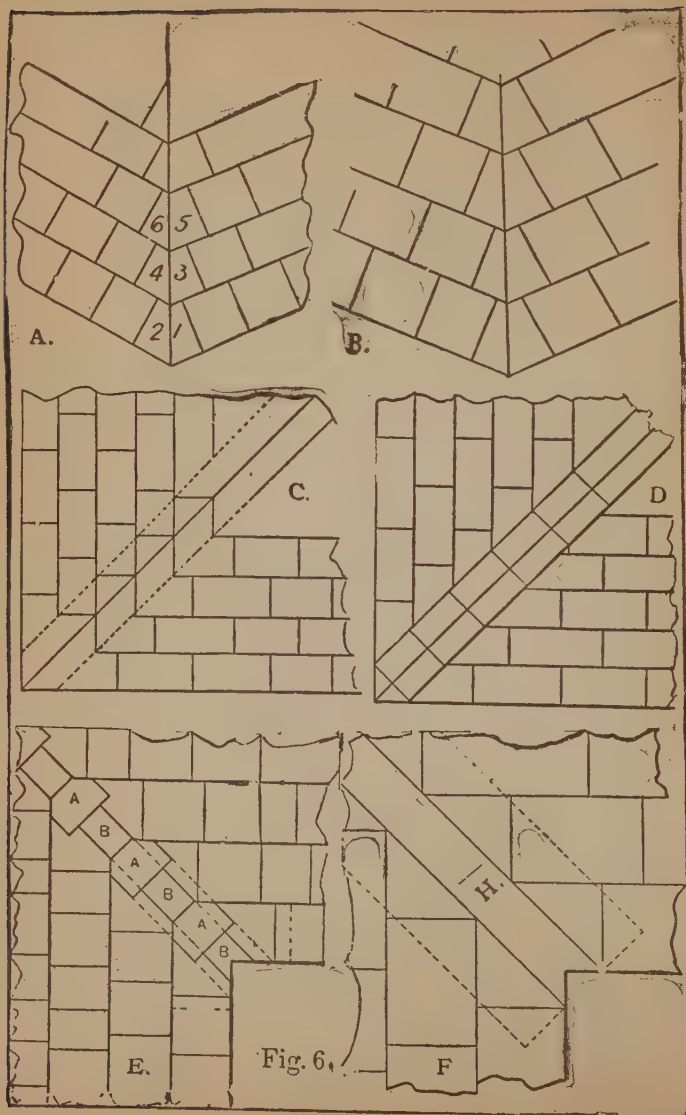


of the ridge, as indicated by the dotted lines in C, then bring the corner of the shingles of each course to the line as shown. When all through with the plain shingling, make a pattern to suit, and only cut the top to shape, as the bottoms or butts will break joints every time, and the hip line will lay square with the hip line, as shown at D; thus making a first-class water-tight job, and one on which the shingles will not curl up, and it will have a good appearance as well.

At E a method is shown for shingling a valley, where no tin or metal is employed. The manner of doing this work is as follows: First take a strip 4 inches wide and chamfer it on the edges on the outside, so that it will lay down smooth to the sheeting, and nail it into the valley. Take a shingle about 4 inches wide to start with and lay lengthwise of the valley, fitting the shingle on each side. The first course, which is always double, would then start with the narrow shingle, marked B, and carried up the valley, as shown in the sketch. Half way between each course lay a shingle, A, about 4 or 5 inches wide, as the case requires, chamfering underneath on each side, so that the next course will lie smooth over it.

If tin or zinc can be obtained, it is better it should be laid in the valley, whether this method be adopted or not.

The sketch shown at F is intended to illustrate the manner in which a valley should be laid with tin, zinc or galvanized iron. The dotted lines show the width of the metal, which should never be less than fourteen inches to insure a tight roof. The shingles should lap over as shown, and not less than four inches of the valley, H, should be clear of shingles



in order to insure plenty of space for the water to flow during a heavy rain storm. A great deal of care should be taken in shingling and finishing a valley, as it is always a weak spot in the roof.

PART IV

USEFUL TABLES AND MEMORANDA FOR BUILDERS

Table showing quantity of material in every four lineal feet of exterior wall in a balloon frame building, height of wall being given:

Length of Studs.	Size of Sills.	Size of Studs, Braces, etc.	Quantity of Rough Lumber	Quantity of Inch Boarding.	Siding in sup. feet.	Tar Paper in sup. feet.
8	6x 6	2x4 studs.	42	36	40	74
10	6x 8	4x4 braces.	52	44	50	80
12	6x10	4x4 plates.	62	53	60	96
14	6x10	1x6 ribbons.	69	62	70	112
16	8x10		82	71	80	128
18	8x10	studs.	87	80	90	144
20	8x12	16 inches from	98	88	100	160
22	9x12	centers.	109	97	110	176
24	10x12		119	106	120	192
18	10x10	2x6 studs.	122	80	90	144
20	10x12	6x6 braces.	137	88	100	160
22	10x12	4x6 plates.	145	97	110	176
24	12x12	1x6 ribbons.	162	106	120	192
26	10x14		169	114	130	208
28	10x14	studs 16 inch centers.	176	123	140	224
30	12x14		198	132	150	240

Table showing amount of lumber in rafters, collar-piece and boarding, and number of shingles to four lineal feet of roof, measured from eave to eave over ridge. Rafters 16-inch centers:

Width of House, Feet.	Size of Rafters.	Size of Collar-piece.	Quantity of Lumber in Rafter and Collar-piece.	Quantity of Boarding, Feet.	No. of Shingles.
14	2x4	2x4	39	61	560
16	2x4	2x4	45	70	640
18	2x4	2x4	50	79	720
20	2x4	2x4	56	88	800
22	2x4	2x4	62	97	880
24	2x4	2x4	67	106	960
26	2x6	2x6	84	88	800
28	2x6	2x6	92	97	880
30	2x6	2x6	101	106	960
			109	115	1040
			117	124	1120
			126	133	1200

A proper allowance for waste is included in the above. Roof, one-fourth pitch.

Table showing the requisite sizes of girders and joists for warehouses, the span and distances apart being given:

Distance apart.	SPAN OF GIRDERS.				Joists.	Remarks.
	6 Feet.	8 Feet.	10 Feet.	12 Feet.		
Feet.	Inches.	Inches.	Inches.	Inches.	Inches.	
10	8x12	12x13	12x16	14x18	2½x10	Girders to have a bearing at each end and joists 6 in.
12	9x12	12x14	12x18	16x18	3 x10	
14	10x12	12x15	14x18	.....	3 x12	

Table as before, adapted for churches, public halls, etc.

Distance Apart.	SPAN OF GIRDERS.				Joists.	Remarks.
	6 Feet.	8 Feet.	10 Feet.	12 Feet.		
Feet.	Inches.	Inches.	Inches.	Inches.	Inches.	
12	6x10	8x12	12x14	12x16	2 x 8	Bearings of girders and joists as above.
13	9x11	9x12	11x15	12x17	2 x 9	
14	6x12	10x12	12x15	11x18	2 x 9	
15	7x12	11x12	11x16	12x16	2 x 10	
16	8x12	12x12	12x16	13x18	2 x 10	
17	8x12	9x14	12x17	14x18	2 x 12	
18	9x12	10x14	11x18	.....	2 x 12	
19	9x12	11x14	12x18		2½ x 12	Both tables are calculated for yellow pine.
20	10x12	12x14	13x18	.....	2½ x 12	
21	10x12	11x15	14x18	.....	2½ x 12	
22	11x12	12x15	.....	.....	3 x 12	
23	11x12	11x16	.....	.....	3 x 12	
24	10x13	12x16	.....	.....	3 x 13	
25	10x13	12x17	.....	.....	3 x 13	
26	10x14	12x18	.....	.....	3 x 14	
27	10x14	12x18	.....	.....	3 x 14	

Table showing quantity of lumber in every four lineal feet of partition, studs being placed 16 centers, waste included:

Height of Partition, Feet.	Quantity of Studs 2x4 Feet.	If 2x6 Feet.
8	20	30
9	23	34
10	26	38
11	29	42
12	32	46
13	35	51
14	38	55
15	41	59
16	44	64

Lumber Measurement Table

Length.		Length.		Length.		Length.		Length.		Length.	
2x4		2x6		2x8		2x10		3x6		3x8	
12	8	12	12	12	16	12	20	12	18	12	24
14	9	14	14	14	19	14	23	14	21	14	28
16	11	16	16	16	21	16	27	16	24	16	32
18	12	18	18	18	24	18	30	18	27	18	36
20	13	20	20	20	27	20	33	20	30	20	40
22	15	22	22	22	29	22	37	22	33	22	44
24	16	24	24	24	32	24	40	24	36	24	48
26	17	26	26	26	35	26	43	26	39	26	52
3x10		3x12		4x4		4x6		4x8		6x6	
12	30	12	36	12	16	12	24	12	32	12	36
14	35	14	42	14	19	14	28	14	37	14	42
16	40	16	48	16	21	16	32	16	43	16	48
18	45	18	54	18	24	18	36	18	48	18	54
20	50	20	60	20	27	20	40	20	53	20	60
22	55	22	66	22	29	22	44	22	59	22	66
24	60	24	72	24	32	24	48	24	64	24	72
26	65	26	78	26	35	26	52	26	69	26	78
6x8		8x8		8x10		10x10		10x12		12x12	
12	48	12	64	12	80	12	100	12	120	12	144
14	56	14	75	14	93	14	117	14	140	14	168
16	64	16	85	16	107	16	133	16	160	16	192
18	72	18	96	18	120	18	150	18	180	18	216
20	80	20	107	20	133	20	167	20	200	20	240
22	88	22	117	22	147	22	183	22	220	22	264
24	96	24	128	24	160	24	200	24	240	24	288
26	104	26	139	26	173	26	217	26	260	26	312

Strength of Materials

Resistance to extension and compression, in pounds per square inch section of some materials.

Name of the Material.	Resistance to Extension.	Resistance to Compression	Tensile Strength in Practice.	Comp. Strength in Practice.
White pine...	10,000	6,000	2,000	1,200
White oak....	15,000	7,500	3,000	1,500
Rock elm.....	16,000	8,000	3,200	1,600
Wrought iron	60,000	50,000	12,000	10,000
Cast iron.....	20,000	100,000	4,000	20,000

In practice, from one-fifth to one-sixth of the strength is all that should be depended upon

Table of Superficial or Flat Measure

By which the contents in *Superficial Feet*, of Boards, Plank, Paving, etc., of any *Length* and *Breadth*, can be obtained, by multiplying the decimal expressed in the table by the length of the board, etc.

Breadth inches.	Area of a lin- eal foot.	Breadth inches.	Area of a lin- eal foot.	Breadth inches.	Area of a lin- eal foot.	Breadth inches.	Area of a lin- eal foot.
$\frac{1}{4}$	.0208	$3\frac{1}{4}$	.2708	$6\frac{1}{4}$	.5208	$9\frac{1}{4}$	.7708
$\frac{1}{2}$	.0417	$3\frac{1}{2}$	.2916	$6\frac{1}{2}$	.5416	$9\frac{1}{2}$	.7917
$\frac{3}{4}$	.0625	$3\frac{3}{4}$	.3125	$6\frac{3}{4}$	.5625	$9\frac{3}{4}$	.8125
1	.0834	4	.3334	7	.5833	10	.8334
$1\frac{1}{4}$	.1042	$4\frac{1}{4}$	.3542	$7\frac{1}{4}$	.6042	$10\frac{1}{4}$	.8542
$1\frac{1}{2}$	.125	$4\frac{1}{2}$	.375	$7\frac{1}{2}$	.625	$10\frac{1}{2}$	.875
$1\frac{3}{4}$	.1459	$4\frac{3}{4}$	.3958	$7\frac{3}{4}$	.6458	$10\frac{3}{4}$	.8959
2	.1667	5	.4167	8	.6667	11	.9167
$2\frac{1}{4}$	.1875	$5\frac{1}{4}$	.4375	$8\frac{1}{4}$	.6875	$11\frac{1}{4}$	.9375
$2\frac{1}{2}$	.2084	$5\frac{1}{2}$	.4583	$8\frac{1}{2}$	.7084	$11\frac{1}{2}$	.9583
$2\frac{3}{4}$	.2292	$5\frac{3}{4}$	.4792	$8\frac{3}{4}$	.7292	$11\frac{3}{4}$	.9792
3	.25	6	.5	9	.75	12	1.0000

Round and Equal-Sided Timber Measure

Table for ascertaining the number of Cubical Feet, or solid contents, in a Stick of Round or Equal-Sided Timber, Tree, etc.

$\frac{1}{4}$ girt in in.	Area in feet.	$\frac{1}{4}$ girt in in.	Area in feet.	$\frac{1}{4}$ girt in in.	Area in feet.	$\frac{1}{4}$ girt in in.	Area in feet.	$\frac{1}{4}$ girt in in.	Area in feet.
6	.25	$10\frac{3}{4}$	.803	$15\frac{1}{2}$	1.668	$20\frac{1}{4}$	2.898	25	4.34
$6\frac{1}{4}$	.272	11	.84	$15\frac{3}{4}$	1.722	$20\frac{1}{2}$	2.917	$25\frac{1}{4}$	4.428
$6\frac{1}{2}$	.294	$11\frac{1}{4}$	.878	16	1.777	$20\frac{3}{4}$	2.99	$25\frac{1}{2}$	4.516
$6\frac{3}{4}$	.317	$11\frac{1}{2}$	.918	$16\frac{1}{4}$	1.833	21	3.062	$25\frac{3}{4}$	4.605
7	.34	$11\frac{3}{4}$	.959	$16\frac{1}{2}$	1.89	$21\frac{1}{4}$	3.136	26	4.694
$7\frac{1}{4}$	.364	12	1.	$16\frac{3}{4}$	1.948	$21\frac{1}{2}$	3.209	$26\frac{1}{4}$	4.785
$7\frac{1}{2}$	.39	$12\frac{1}{4}$	1.042	17	2.006	$21\frac{3}{4}$	3.285	$26\frac{1}{2}$	4.876
$7\frac{3}{4}$	.417	$12\frac{1}{2}$	1.085	$17\frac{1}{4}$	2.066	22	3.362	$26\frac{3}{4}$	4.969
8	.444	$12\frac{3}{4}$	1.129	$17\frac{1}{2}$	2.126	$22\frac{1}{4}$	3.438	27	5.062
$8\frac{1}{4}$	.472	13	1.174	$17\frac{3}{4}$	2.187	$22\frac{1}{2}$	3.516	$27\frac{1}{4}$	5.158
$8\frac{1}{2}$	.501	$13\frac{1}{4}$	1.219	18	2.25	$22\frac{3}{4}$	3.598	$27\frac{1}{2}$	5.252
$8\frac{3}{4}$	.531	$13\frac{1}{2}$	1.265	$18\frac{1}{4}$	2.313	23	3.673	$27\frac{3}{4}$	5.348
9	.562	$13\frac{3}{4}$	1.313	$18\frac{1}{2}$	2.376	$23\frac{1}{4}$	3.754	28	5.444
$9\frac{1}{4}$	.594	14	1.361	$18\frac{3}{4}$	2.442	$23\frac{1}{2}$	3.835	$28\frac{1}{4}$	5.542
$9\frac{1}{2}$	.626	$14\frac{1}{4}$	1.41	19	2.506	$23\frac{3}{4}$	3.917	$28\frac{1}{2}$	5.64
$9\frac{3}{4}$	.659	$14\frac{1}{2}$	1.46	$19\frac{1}{4}$	2.574	24	4.	$28\frac{3}{4}$	5.74
10	.694	$14\frac{3}{4}$	1.511	$19\frac{1}{2}$	2.64	$24\frac{1}{4}$	4.084	29	5.84
$10\frac{1}{4}$	.73	15	1.562	$19\frac{3}{4}$	2.709	$24\frac{1}{2}$	4.168	$29\frac{1}{4}$	5.941
$10\frac{1}{2}$	.766	$15\frac{1}{4}$	1.615	20	2.777	$24\frac{3}{4}$	4.254	$29\frac{1}{2}$	6.044

Shingling

To find the number of shingles required to cover 100 square feet deduct 3 inches from the length, divide the remainder by 3, the result will be the exposed length of a shingle; multiplying this with the average width of a shingle, the product will be the exposed area. Dividing 14,400, the number of square inches in a square, by the exposed area of a shingle will give the number required to cover 100 square feet of roof.

In estimating the number of shingles required, an allowance should always be made for waste.

Estimates on cost of shingle roofs are usually given per 1,000 shingles.

Table for Estimating Shingles

Length of Shingles.	Exposure to Weather, Inches.	No. of Sq. Ft. of Roof Covered by 1000 Shingles.		No. of Shingles Required for 100 Sq. Ft. of Roof.	
		4 In. Wide.	6 In. Wide.	4 In. Wide.	6 In. Wide.
15 in.	4	111	167	900	600
18	5	139	208	720	480
21	6	167	250	600	400
24	7	194	291	514	343
27	8	222	333	450	300

Siding, Flooring, and Laths

One-fifth more siding and flooring is needed than the number of square feet of surface to be covered, because of the lap in the siding matching.

1,000 laths will cover 70 yards of surface, and 11 pounds of lath nails will nail them on. Eight bushels of good lime, 16 bushels of sand, and 1 bushel of hair will make enough good mortar to plaster 100 square yards.

Excavations

Excavations are measured by the yard (27 cubic feet) and irregular depths or surfaces are generally averaged in practice.

Number of Nails Required in Carpentry Work

To case and hang one door, 1 pound.

To case and hang one window, $\frac{3}{4}$ pound.

Base, 100 lineal feet, 1 pound.

To put on rafters, joists, etc., 3 pounds to 1,000 feet.

To put up studding, same.

To lay a 6-inch pine floor, 15 pounds to 1,000 feet.

Sizes of Boxes for Different Measures

A box 24 inches long by 16 inches wide, and 28 inches deep will contain a barrel, or 3 bushels.

A box 24 inches long by 16 inches wide, and 14 inches deep will contain half a barrel.

A box 16 inches square and $8\frac{2}{3}$ inches deep, will contain 1 bushel.

A box 16 inches by $8\frac{2}{3}$ inches wide and 8 inches deep, will contain half a bushel.

A box 8 inches by $8\frac{2}{3}$ inches square and 8 inches deep, will contain 1 peck.

A box 8 inches by 8 inches square and $4\frac{1}{2}$ inches deep, will contain 1 gallon.

A box 8 inches by 4 inches square and $4\frac{4}{5}$ inches deep, will contain half a gallon.

A box 4 inches by 4 inches square and $4\frac{1}{5}$ inches deep, will contain 1 quart.

A box 4 feet long, 3 feet 5 inches wide, and 2 feet 8 inches deep, will contain 1 ton of coal.

Masonry

Stone masonry is measured by two systems, quarryman's and mason's measurements.

By the quarryman's measurements the actual contents are measured—that is, all openings are taken out and all corners are measured single.

By the mason's measurements, corners and piers are doubled, and no allowance made for openings less than 3' 0" x 5' 0" and only half the amount of openings larger than 3' 0" x 5' 0".

Range work and cut work is measured superficially and in addition to wall measurement.

An average of six bushels of sand and cement per perch of rubble masonry.

Stone walls are measured by the perch ($24\frac{3}{4}$ cubic feet, or by the cord of 128 feet). Openings less than 3 feet wide are counted solid; over 3 feet deducted, but 18 inches are added to the running measure for each jamb built.

Arches are counted solid from their spring. Corners of buildings are measured twice. Pillars less than 3 feet are counted on 3 sides as lineal, multiplied by fourth side and depth.

It is customary to measure all foundation and dimension stone by the cubic foot. Water tables and base courses by lineal feet. All sills and lintels or ashlar by superficial feet, and no wall less than 18 inches thick.

The height of brick or stone piers should not exceed 12 times their thickness at the base.

Masonry is usually measured by the perch (containing 24.75 cubic feet), but in practice 25 cubic feet are considered a perch of masonry.

Concreting is usually measured by the cubic yard (27 cubic feet).

A cord of stone, 3 bushels of lime and a cubic yard of sand, will lay 100 cubic feet of wall.

Cement, 1 bushel, and sand, 2 bushels, will cover $3\frac{1}{2}$ square yards 1 inch thick, $4\frac{1}{2}$ square yards $\frac{3}{4}$ inch thick, and $6\frac{3}{4}$ square yards $\frac{1}{2}$ inch thick; 1 bushel of cement and 1 of sand will cover $2\frac{1}{4}$ square yards 1 inch thick, 3 square yards $\frac{3}{4}$ inch thick and $4\frac{1}{2}$ square yards $\frac{1}{2}$ inch thick.

Brick Work

Brick work is generally measured by 1,000 bricks laid in the wall. In consequence of variations in size of bricks, no rule for volume of laid brick can be exact. The following scale is, however, a fair average:

7 com. bricks to a super. ft.					4 in. wall.		
14	"	"	"	"	9	"	"
21	"	"	"	"	13	"	"
28	"	"	"	"	18	"	"
35	"	"	"	"	22	"	"

Corners are not measured twice, as in stone work. Openings over 2 feet square are deducted. Arches are counted from the spring. Fancy work counted $1\frac{1}{2}$ bricks for 1. Pillars are measured on their face only.

A cubic yard of mortar requires 1 cubic yard of sand and 9 bushels of lime, and will fill 30 hods.

One thousand bricks closely stacked occupy about 56 cubic feet.

One thousand old bricks, cleaned and loosely stacked, occupy about 72 cubic feet.

One superficial foot of gauged arches requires 10 bricks.

Pavements, according to size of bricks, take 38 brick on flat and 60 brick on edge per square yard, on an average.

Five courses of brick will lay 1 foot in height on a chimney, 6 bricks in a course will make a flue 4 inches wide and 12 inches long, and 8 bricks in a course will make a flue 8 inches wide and 16 inches long.

Slating

A square of slate or slating is 100 superficial feet.

In measuring, the width of eaves is allowed at the widest part. Hips, valleys and cuttings are to be measured lineal, and 6 inches extra is allowed.

The thickness of slates required is from $\frac{3}{16}$ to $\frac{5}{16}$ of an inch, and their weight varies when lapped from $\frac{4}{5}$ to $6\frac{3}{4}$ pounds per square foot.

The "laps" of slates vary from 2 to 4 inches, the standard assumed to be 3 inches.

To Compute the Number of Slates of a Given Size Required per Square

Subtract 3 inches from the length of the slate, multiply the remainder by the width and divide by 2. Divide 14,400 by the number so found and the result will be the number of slates required.

Table showing number of slates and pounds of nails required to cover 100 square feet of roof.

Sizes of Slate.	Length of Exposure.	No. Required.	Nails Required.
14 in. x 28 in.	12 $\frac{1}{2}$ in.	83	.6 lbs.
12 x 24	10 $\frac{1}{2}$	114	.833
11 x 22	9 $\frac{1}{2}$	138	1.
10 x 20	8 $\frac{1}{2}$	165	1.33
9 x 18	7 $\frac{1}{2}$	214	1.5
8 x 16	6 $\frac{1}{2}$	277	2.
7 x 14	5 $\frac{1}{2}$	377	2.66
6 x 12	4 $\frac{1}{2}$	533	3.8

Approximate Weight of Materials for Roofs

Material.	Average Weight, Lb. per Sq. Ft.
Corrugated galvanized iron, No. 20, unboarded.....	2 $\frac{1}{4}$
Copper, 16 oz. standing seam.....	1 $\frac{1}{4}$
Felt and asphalt, without sheathing.....	2
Glass, $\frac{1}{8}$ in. thick.....	1 $\frac{3}{4}$
Hemlock sheathing, 1 in. thick.....	2
Lead, about $\frac{1}{8}$ in. thick.....	6 to 8
Lath-and-plaster ceiling (ordinary).....	6 to 8
Mackite, 1 in. thick, with plaster.....	10
Neponset roofing felt, 2 layers.....	$\frac{1}{2}$
Spruce sheathing, 1 in. thick.....	2 $\frac{1}{2}$
Slate, $\frac{3}{8}$ in. thick, 3 in. double lap.....	6 $\frac{3}{4}$
Slate, $\frac{1}{8}$ in. thick, 3 in. double lap.....	4 $\frac{1}{2}$
Shingles, 6 in. x 18 in., $\frac{1}{8}$ to weather.....	2
Skylight of glass, $\frac{3}{8}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$ in., including frame.....	4 to 10
Slag roof, 4-ply.....	4
Terne Plate, IC, without sheathing.....	$\frac{1}{2}$
Terne Plate, IX, without sheathing.....	$\frac{5}{8}$
Tiles (plain), 10 $\frac{1}{2}$ in. x 6 $\frac{1}{4}$ x $\frac{5}{8}$ in.—5 $\frac{1}{4}$ in. to weather..	18
Tiles (Spanish) 14 $\frac{1}{2}$ in. x 10 $\frac{1}{2}$ in.—7 $\frac{1}{4}$ in. to weather..	8 $\frac{1}{2}$
White-pine sheathing, 1 in. thick.....	2 $\frac{1}{2}$
Yellow-pine sheathing, 1 in. thick.....	4

Snow and Wind Loads

Data in regard to snow and wind loads are necessary in connection with the design of roof trusses.

Snow Load.—When the slope of a roof is over 12 inches rise per foot of horizontal run, a snow and accidental load of 8 pounds per square foot is ample. When the slope is under 12 inches rise per foot of run, a snow and accidental load of 12 pounds per square foot should be used. The snow load acts vertically, and therefore should be added to the dead load in designing roof trusses. The snow load may be neglected when a high wind pressure has been considered, as a great wind storm would very likely remove all the snow from the roof.

Wind Load.—The wind is considered as blowing in a horizontal direction, but the resulting pressure upon the roof is always taken normal (at right angles) to the slope. The wind pressure against a vertical plane depends on the velocity of the wind, and, as ascertained by the United States Signal Service at Mount Washington, N. H., is as follows:

<i>Velocity.</i> (Mi. per Hr.)	<i>Pressure.</i> (Lb. per Sq. Ft.)	
10.....	0.4.....	Fresh breeze.
20.....	1.6.....	Stiff breeze.
30.....	3.6.....	Strong wind.
40.....	6.4.....	High wind.
50.....	10.0.....	Storm.
60.....	14.4.....	Violent storm.
80.....	25.6.....	Hurricane.
100.....	40.0.....	Violent hurricane.

The wind pressure upon a cylindrical surface is one-half that upon a flat surface of the same height and width.

Since the wind is considered as traveling in a horizontal direction, it is evident that the more nearly vertical the slope of the roof, the greater will be the pressure, and the more nearly horizontal the slope, the less will be the pressure. The following table gives the pressure exerted upon roofs of different slopes, by a wind pressure of 40 pounds per square foot on a vertical plane, which is equivalent in intensity to a violent hurricane.

UNITED STATES WEIGHTS AND MEASURES

Land Measure

1 sq. acre = 10 sq. chains = 100,000 sq. links = 6,272,640 sq. in.
 1 " " = 100 sq. rods = 4,840 sq. yds. = 43,560 sq. ft.

Note.—208.7103 feet square, or 69.5701 yards square, or 220 feet by 198 feet square=1 acre.

Cubic or Solid Measure

- 1** cubic yard = 27 cubic feet.
1 cubic foot = 1,728 cubic inches.
1 cubic foot = 2,200 cylindrical inches.
1 cubic foot = 3,300 spherical inches.
1 cubic foot = 6,600 conical inches.

Linear Measure

- 12** inches (in.)..... = 1 foot ft.
3 feet..... = 1 yard yd.
5.5 yards..... = 1 rod.....rd.
40 rods..... = 1 furlong fur.
8 furlongs..... = 1 mile.....mi.

in.	ft.	yd.	rd.	fur.	mi.
36 =	3 =	1			
198 =	16.5 =	5.5 =	1		
7,920 =	660 =	220 =	40 =	1	
63,360 =	5,280 =	1,760 =	320 =	8 =	1

Square Measure

- 144** square inches (sq. in.) = 1 square foot sq. ft.
9 square feet..... = 1 square yard sq. yd.
30¹/₄ square yards..... = 1 square rod.....sq. rd.
160 square rods..... = 1 acre A.
640 acres..... = 1 square mile.....sq. mi.

Sq. mi.	A.	Sq. rd.	Sq. yd.	Sq. ft.	Sq. in.
1 =	640 =	102,400 =	3,097,600 =	27,878,400 =	4,014,489,600

Miscellaneous Measures and Weights

- 1** perch of stone = 1 ft. × 1 ft. 6 in. × 16 ft. 6 in. = 24.75 ft. cubic.
1 cord of wood, clay, etc., = 4 ft. × 4 ft. × 8 ft. = 128 ft. cubic.
1 chaldron = 36 bushels or 57.25 ft. cubic.
1 cubic foot of sand, solid, weighs 112¹/₂ lbs.
1 cubic foot of sand, loose, weighs 95 lbs.
1 cubic foot of earth, loose, weighs 93³/₄ lbs.
1 cubic foot of common soil weighs 124 lbs.
1 cubic foot of strong soil weighs 127 lbs.
1 cubic foot of clay weighs 120 to 135 lbs.
1 cubic foot of clay and stone weighs 160 lbs.
1 cubic foot of common stone weighs 160 lbs.
1 cubic foot of brick weighs 95 to 120 lbs.
1 cubic foot of granite weighs 169 to 180 lbs.
1 cubic foot of marble weighs 166 to 170 lbs.
1 cubic yard of sand weighs 3,037 lbs.
1 cubic yard of common soil weighs 3,429 lbs.

Safe Bearing Loads

Brick and Stone Masonry.		Lb. per Sq. In.
<i>Brick Work.</i>		
Bricks, hard, laid in lime mortar.....		100
Hard, laid in Portland cement mortar.....		200
Hard, laid in Rosendale cement mortar.....		150
<i>Masonry.</i>		
Granite, capstone.....		700
Squared stonework.....		350
Sandstone, capstone.....		350
Squared stonework.....		175
Rubble stonework, laid in lime mortar.....		80
Rubble stonework, laid in cement mortar.....		150
Limestone, capstone.....		500
Squared stonework.....		250
Rubble, laid in lime mortar.....		80
Rubble, laid in cement mortar.....		150
Concrete, 1 Portland, 2 sand, 5 broken stone.....		150
Foundation Soils.		Tons per Sq. Ft.
Rock, hardest in native bed.....		100 —
Equal to best ashlar masonry.....		25-40
Equal to best brick.....		15-20
Clay, dry, in thick beds.....		4- 6
Moderately dry, in thick beds.....		2- 4
Soft.....		1- 2
Gravel and coarse sand, well cemented.....		8-10
Sand, compact and well cemented.....		4- 6
Clean, dry.....		2- 4
Quicksand, alluvial soil, etc.....		.5- 1

Capacity of Cisterns for Each 10 Inches in Depth

Twenty-five feet in diameter holds.....	3059 gallons
Twenty feet in diameter holds.....	1958 gallons
Fifteen feet in diameter holds.....	1101 gallons
Fourteen feet in diameter holds.....	959 gallons
Thirteen feet in diameter holds.....	827 gallons
Twelve feet in diameter holds.....	705 gallons
Eleven feet in diameter holds.....	592 gallons
Ten feet in diameter holds.....	489 gallons
Nine feet in diameter holds.....	396 gallons
Eight feet in diameter holds.....	313 gallons
Seven feet in diameter holds.....	239 gallons
Six and one-half feet in diameter holds.....	206 gallons
Six feet in diameter holds.....	176 gallons
Five feet in diameter holds.....	122 gallons
Four and one-half feet in diameter holds.....	99 gallons

Four feet in diameter holds.....	78 gallons
Three feet in diameter holds.....	44 gallons
Two and one-half feet in diameter holds.....	30 gallons
Two feet in diameter holds.....	19 gallons

Number of Nails and Tacks per Pound

Name.	NAILS. Size.	No. per lb.	Name.	TACKS. Length.	No. per lb.
3 penny, fine	1 $\frac{1}{8}$ inch	760 nails	1 oz.....	$\frac{1}{8}$ inch.....	16,000
3	1 $\frac{1}{4}$ "	480 "	1 $\frac{1}{2}$ "	3-16 "	10,666
4	1 $\frac{1}{2}$ "	300 "	2	 $\frac{1}{4}$ "	8,000
5	1 $\frac{3}{4}$ "	200 "	2 $\frac{1}{2}$ "	5-16 "	6,400
6	2 $\frac{1}{8}$ "	160 "	3	 $\frac{3}{8}$ "	5,333
7	2 $\frac{1}{4}$ "	128 "	4	7-16 "	4,000
8	2 $\frac{1}{2}$ "	92 "	6	9-16 "	2,666
9	2 $\frac{3}{4}$ "	72 "	8	 $\frac{5}{8}$ "	2,000
10	3 "	60 "	10	11-16 "	1,600
12	3 $\frac{1}{4}$ "	44 "	12	 $\frac{3}{4}$ "	1,333
16	3 $\frac{1}{2}$ "	32 "	14	13-16 "	1,143
20	4 "	24 "	16	 $\frac{7}{8}$ "	1,000
30	4 $\frac{1}{4}$ "	18 "	18	15-16 "	888
40	5 "	14 "	20	1 "	800
50	5 $\frac{1}{2}$ "	12 "	22	1 1-16 "	727
6	fence 2 "	80 "	24	1 $\frac{1}{8}$ "	666
8	" " 2 $\frac{1}{2}$ "	50 "			
10	" " 3 "	34 "			
12	" " 3 $\frac{1}{4}$ "	29 "			

Wind Pressures on Roofs

(Pounds per Square Foot.)

Rise, Inches per Foot of Run.	Angle with Horizontal.	Pitch. Proportion of Rise to Span	Wind Pressure, Normal to Slope.
4	18° 25'	$\frac{1}{6}$	16.8
6	26° 33'	$\frac{1}{4}$	23.7
8	33° 41'	$\frac{1}{3}$	29.1
12	45° 0'	$\frac{1}{2}$	36.1
16	53° 7'	$\frac{2}{3}$	38.7
18	56° 20'	$\frac{3}{4}$	39.3
24	63° 27'	1	40.0

In addition to wind and snow loads upon roofs, the weight of the principals or roof trusses, including the other features of the construction, should be figured in the estimate. For light roofs, having a span of not over 50 feet, and not required to support any ceiling, the weight of the steel construction may be taken at 5 pounds per square foot; for greater spans, 1 pound per square foot should be added for each 10 feet increase in the span.

SUPPLEMENT TO

MODERN CARPENTRY AND JOINERY.

The aim in preparing this has been to supply necessary information for enabling a practical joiner to become a competent airtight-case maker, without the tedium of waiting, perhaps for years, until chance brings him into contact with one who has made a specialty of this class of work. I have endeavored, by means of illustrations, to elucidate as clearly as possible the points which are so frequently the cause of failure to those who, while having a good knowledge of wood-working, have not had the advantages of direct practical tuition in the intricacies of airtight-case making.

Before proceeding with the explanations, I would point out that the first and most important rule in joinery is to have the stuff planed up true, and gauged accurately to size.

I. AIRTIGHT WALL CASE WITH GLASS OR WOOD ENDS.

The general drawings of the airtight wall-case with glazed ends are given in Figs. 1 to 5 and the details in Figs. 6 to 9.

Framework. Figs. 6 and 7 give the width of the top and bottom rails for the front frame of the case, and, by adding the width of the top and bottom door-rails to each we determine the width of the rails required for the ends of the case, as shown in Fig. 5. The angle-stile must be $\frac{1}{4}$ inch more in thickness than the thick-

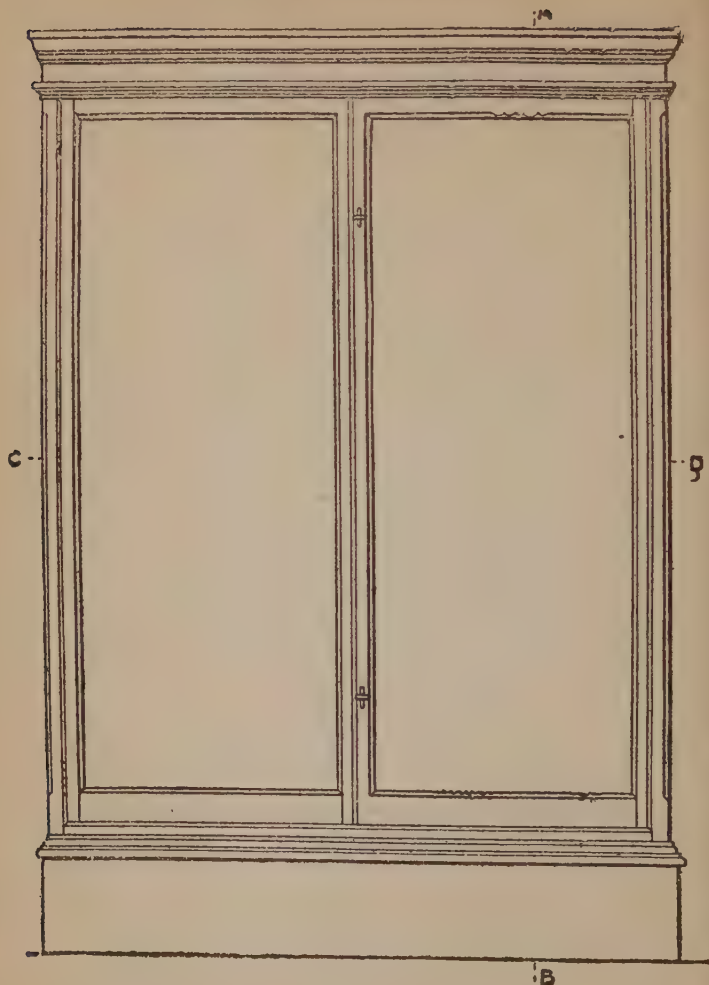


Fig. 1.

ness of the doors, in order to allow of a rebate being formed to receive the glass at the ends of the case. (See M Fig. 8.)

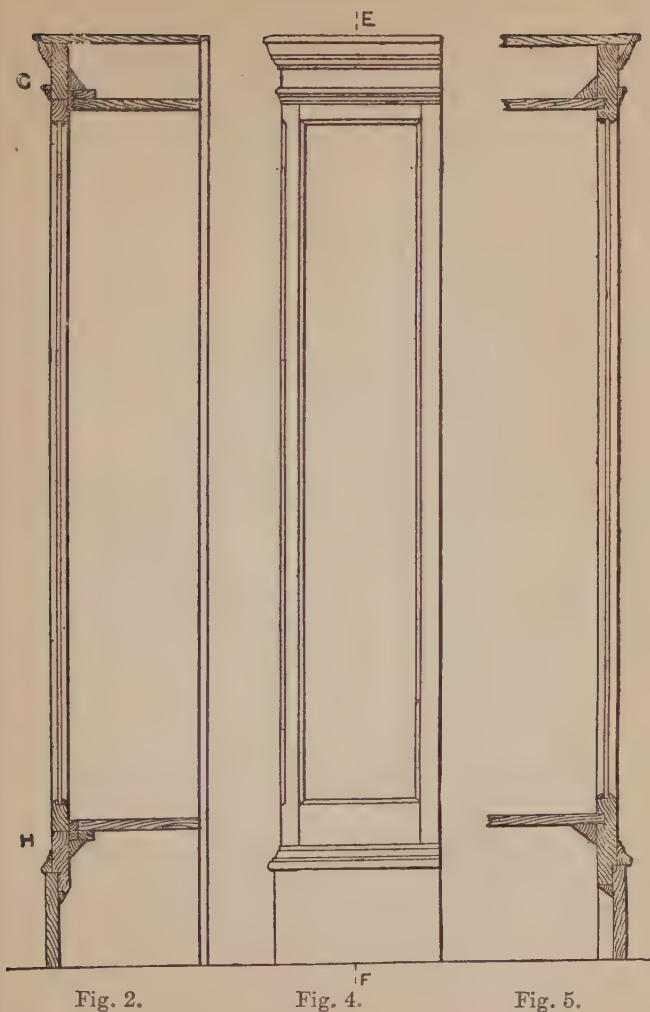


Fig. 2.

Fig. 4.

Fig. 5.

In setting out the framework (which is mortised and tenoned together in the ordinary way) the face shoulders of the front rails should be $\frac{1}{8}$ inch longer than the

back shoulders. An eighth inch bead—for which the allowance has been made—is worked on the angle-stiles and bottom rail only, the edge of the top rail being left square. The moulding which is planted round the case, as shown in Fig. 6, serves to break the joint of the doors. The shoulders on the end rails are square with each other, the rebate being the same depth as the moulding.

Airtight joints. To make successfully the airtight joint between the angle-stile of the case and the hanging stile of the door (see Fig. 8) three planes are required. The first plane is used on the angle-stile for forming at the same time the two grooves, each $\frac{3}{16}$ inch wide;



Fig. 3.

the second is used for working the two fillets together and the third for working the two hollows in the door stiles.

The front part of the frame must now be fitted together and the joints at the back of the frame cleared off, to allow the airtight planes to be worked from the back of the frame, that is, from the inside of the case, as the doors would not close accurately if they were worked from the face or outside.

After the front frame has been fitted together as described, it must be taken apart, and the angle-stiles worked with plane No. 1. When this has been done,

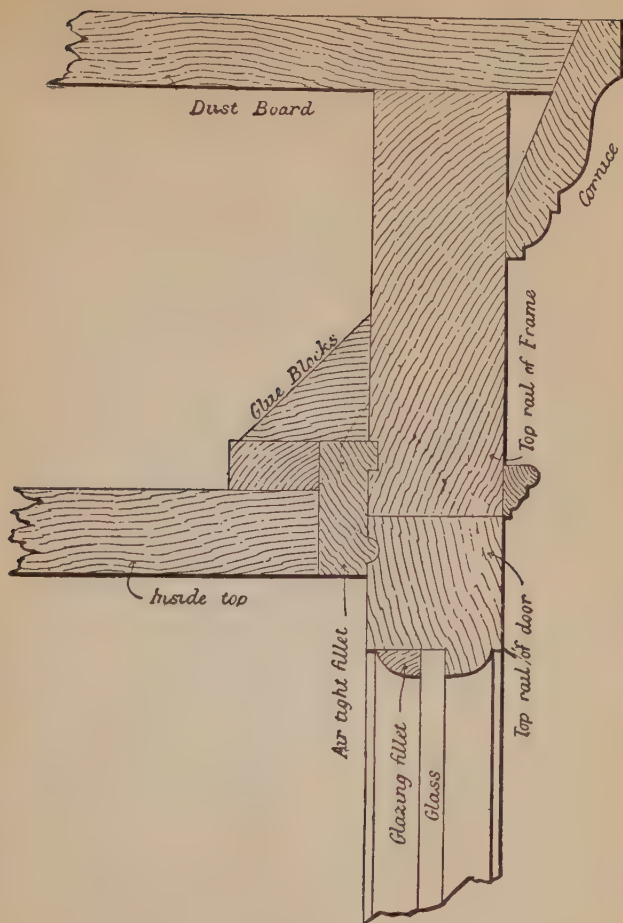


Fig. 6.

the fillets must be glued in the grooves, and, when set, rounded over with plane No. 2. The fillets will not require to be taken to the exact width before rounding over, as plane No. 2 works all surplus stuff away.

For the joint between the top and bottom rails of doors and the airtight fillets respectively, two planes are re-

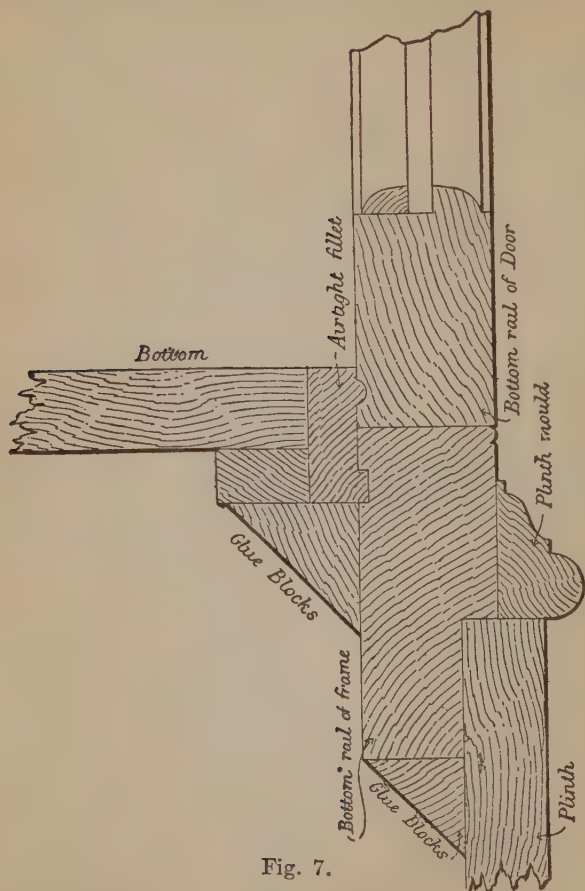


Fig. 7.

quired; the first for sticking the airtight fillet, and the second for working the small hollow on the door rails to match the fillet.

Continuing with the framework. After rounding the fillets in the angle-stiles, groove the top and bottom

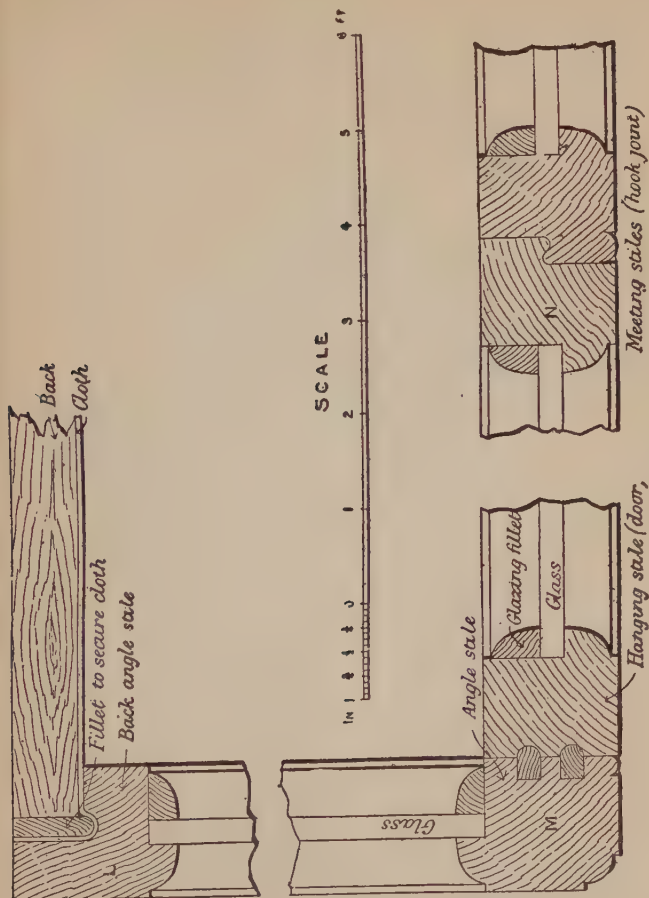


Fig. 8.

rails to receive the tongue on the airtight fillets as shown in Figs. 6 and 7 and rebate the bottom rails to rest on the plinth, Fig. 7. The top and bottom rails at each end

of the case are trenched to receive respectively the ends of the inside top and inside bottom, Fig. 5. Care must be taken to make these trenches in such a way as to keep the inside top and the inside bottom in the positions shown in the Figs. 6 and 7. Rebate the back angle-stile

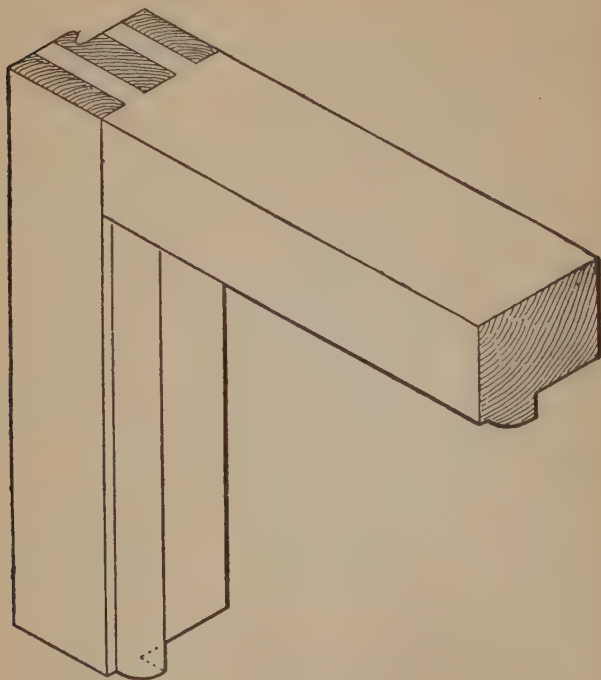


Fig. 9.

of each end frame to receive the back, as in Fig. 8, and run a small hollow in the angle of the rebate. Glue and pin the airtight fillet on the front edges of the inside top and bottom respectively; also glue the fillet on the back of each in order to strengthen the airtight fillet, and

make out the thickness to receive the glue-blocks as shown. An ovolo or other moulding is now worked on the external angles of the two front angle-stiles as shown in Fig. 8, the moulding being stopped in a line with the top and bottom rails respectively of the doors, Fig. 1.

The body of the case must now be put together, care being taken to glue-block the front frame and ends securely to the bottom and top, as well as behind the plinth, which is screwed to the bottom rails from the back.

Match-boards are used for the back, the boards being run to the floor, as shown in Fig. 2. Mitre the cornice round the front and ends, screwing it from the back of the top rails; cut the dust-board to fit on the top edges of the rails and bevel against the cornice; having previously rebated it to receive the back of the case. Before the back is fastened, the cloth, Fig. 8, should be placed in the rebate of the stile, the fillet placed on top of the cloth and pressed into the hollow, and then fastened to the stile with screws, the cloth thus being securely held between the fillet and the stile. The cloth can now be stretched taut and fixed at the other end in the same way, and the boards fastened in.

Doors. In planing up the stuff for the doors, the same gauge must be used as that for the frame of the case. When setting out for the doors, take the width and height accurately, and allow $1/16$ inch on the height for fitting in. The width is set out as for ordinary folding doors, viz.: allowing half the hook-joint on each door, and $1/8$ inch for jointing and fitting in. The best way to allow for fitting is to have each stile $1/16$ inch greater in width than the finished size required.

The rails abutting against each angle-stile are single-mortised and tenoned together as in ordinary work,

but double mortises and tenons must be used at the top and bottom of each meeting stile, as shown in Fig. 9. The reason for using the double tenon is, that if a single tenon were used, the ends of the tenon would slip off after the hook-joint had been made.

Presuming the doors to be wedged up, level off the joints at the shoulders, when the doors will be ready for jointing together and fitting to the case.

Hook-Joint. The following is the best method of making a well fitting joint. First rebate the stiles (the rebate being $\frac{1}{8}$ inch less in width than the thickness of the doors, and $\frac{5}{16}$ inch deep), and next bevel the edges of the doors, bringing the rebate to a depth of $\frac{1}{4}$ inch, Fig. 8. The doors must now be worked with a hollow and round on the edge of the rebate to form the hook-joint. For this purpose a hook-joint plane is required. There is an adjustable depth-gauge on the side of the plane, which can be easily set for working different thicknesses of stuff. Before working the doors with the plane, it is advisable to work a piece of stuff of the same thickness as the doors. Cut the piece thus worked into two, and put the joint together. This will test the accuracy of the setting of the plane. If the faces do not come flush with each other, the gauge on the plane must be raised or lowered accordingly.

Having fitted the meeting stiles, place the doors together across the bench, as they can thus be more easily taken to the exact width and height of the frame of the case. After the doors have been fitted in the opening, work with the airtight planes as previously instructed, always remembering to hold the fence of plane No. 3 on the back side of the door while forming the hollows on the hanging stiles. With plane No. 2 the small hollow

on the top and bottom rails to match the airtight fillet is worked.

After working the doors as described, clean off the back side, place the doors in position, and clean off the face to the level of the frame. Take the doors out and



Fig. 10.

work the bead on the joint between the doors, Fig. 8. This bead is flatter than usual and has a very small quirk.

The doors are hung to the frame, each by three hinges. The top and bottom hinges are usually kept their own

Depth from the top and bottom edges of the doors respectively, e. g., a $2\frac{1}{2}$ inch hinge will be $2\frac{1}{2}$ inches from the edge. The handles on the meeting stiles are respectively about 9 inches from the upper and lower edges of door.

All glass in the doors must be carefully packed with small slips of wood between the edges of the glass and the frame of the door, in order to keep the frame rigid. The woodwork being so slight, the doors would sag when hung if the glass were not packed tightly, as all the weight of the glass would fall on the bottom rail.

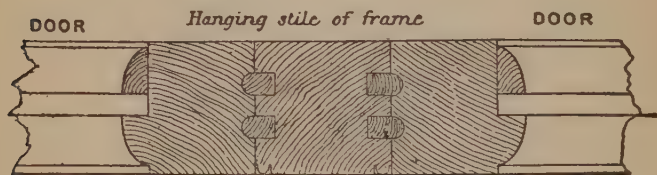


Fig. 11.

Shelves. The following is the best method to adopt for fitting the case with shelves, as, when fitted in this way, the shelves can be moved to any required height. To the back of the case screw two pieces of iron, one at each side, extending from the top to the bottom of the case. These must previously have been drilled and tapped their whole length, the space between each hole being $\frac{1}{2}$ inch from centre to centre, and each hole being large enough to receive a $\frac{3}{16}$ inch screw. A malleable-iron bracket about 3 inches long on the back edge—the length of the top edge being the width of the shelf—is now required, having a small piece projecting above the top edge in which is drilled a plain hole, and having a pin near the bottom edge. The pin at the bottom edge

's placed in one of the holes in the tapped bar, and a $\frac{3}{16}$ inch screw is passed through the hole at the top edge and screwed into the bar, thus securing the bracket firmly. Care must be taken to have the same distance between the centres of any two holes in the bar.

Fig. 10 shows a horizontal section through a showcase having solid ends.

Fig. 11 shows a horizontal section through the centre hanging stile in the front frame of a wide showcase, when two pairs of doors are required. It is worked in the same manner as previously described for hanging stiles.

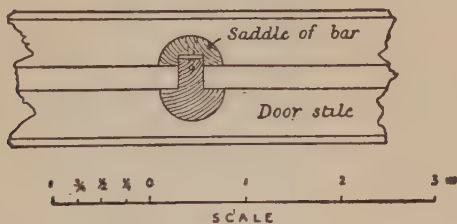


Fig. 12.

Fig. 12 shows a section of a cross bar in doors. This is only required where sheet glass is used. Each end of the bar is sunk into the moulding of the door-stiles. The saddle is cut between the rebates, and secured to the bar.

Plinths separate from the case. If the showcase is over 6 feet 6 inches in height, or the plinth is of a greater depth than 12 inches, it is advisable to make the plinth separate from the case. Instead of the bottom rail being rebated behind the plinth, as shown in Fig. 7, a frame must be made out of $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch by 3 inch stuff dovetailed together at the angles; and two or three bearers should

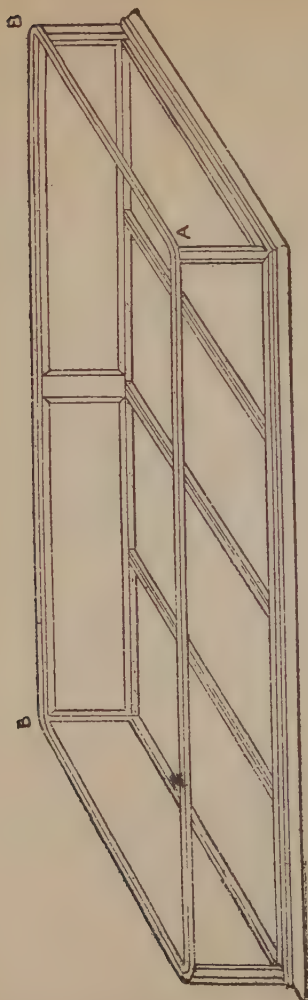


Fig. 13.

be mortised and tenoned between the front and back rails (as the length of the case may require). At each angle, and under each end of the bearers, a leg is stump-

tenoned into the under side of the rails to support the case. When this is done, the plinth should be mitred round the frame. It should be screwed from the back, and glue-blocks used in all the angles.

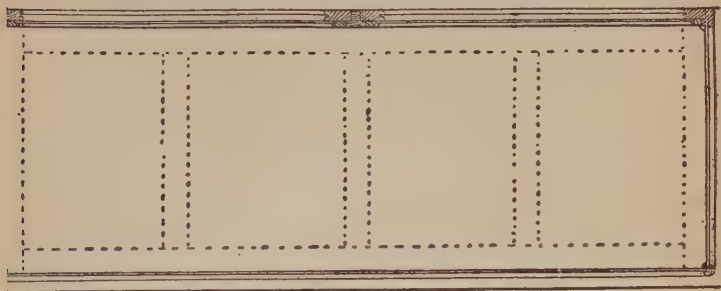


Fig. 14.

An isometrical projection of a counter-case is shown in Fig. 3. The top, sides, and front are of plate-glass. Mirrors are placed on the inside of the doors at the back of the case. The divisions on the bottom show the position of the trays.



Fig. 15.

Before commencing work, it is absolutely necessary to draw Figs. 14 and 15 full size, to enable the taking off and working to an exact size of the various parts required to be done.

Bottom of case. Commence with the frame, which should be made out of well-seasoned pine. The width of the bottom frame will be the extreme width of the case less the thickness of the moulding on the front edge and $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch for a hardwood slip on the back edge of the frame, Fig. 17. The length will be the extreme length of the case *minus* two thicknesses of moulding.

Mortise and tenon the frame together, and rebate it to receive $\frac{5}{8}$ inch panels flush on the inside; then glue up and take to size. The hardwood slip can now be jointed and glued on, a tongued and grooved joint being used for the purpose. After this has been done, the air-

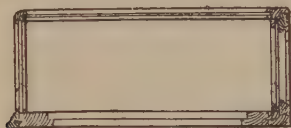


Fig. 16.

tight rebate to receive the doors should be worked on the hardwood slip. In order to make a good job of the rebate, it will be necessary to have a special plane for working both the rebate and the small half-round tongue at one time.

To complete the bottom, groove the front edge and both ends for the tongue, then mitre and fix the moulding to the frame. The moulding must be specially noted. It must project above the bottom $\frac{3}{16}$ inch to form a rebate for the glass; and the first member, i. e. the part projecting, must be rounded to intersect with the upright angle-bars, Figs. 17 and 18, with mitre into the mouldings.

The panels in the bottom are to be screwed to the frame. Before putting the whole case together, they

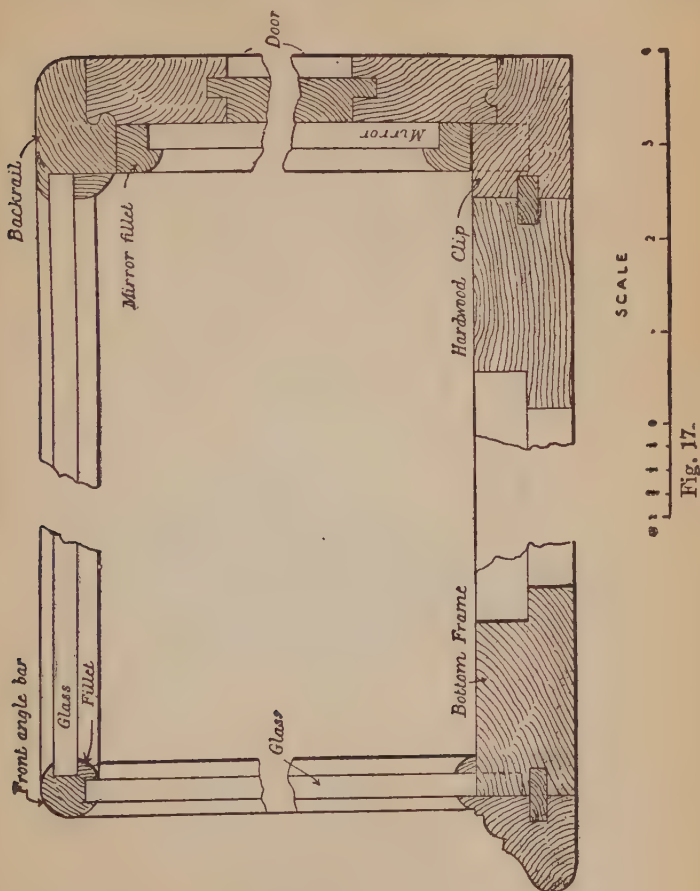


Fig. 17.

must be taken out for enabling the small fillets which secure the glass to be easily screwed into their respective positions.

Framework for glass. Plane up the stuff for the round angle-bars, gauging it to $\frac{9}{16}$ inch square, and rebate $\frac{1}{8}$ inch deep and $\frac{1}{8}$ inch from the face edges. The angle bars will then appear as seen in Fig. 2. For the back part of the frame, square up the stuff to $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch by $\frac{3}{4}$ inch and rebate $\frac{1}{4}$ inch deep and $\frac{1}{8}$ inch from the face for the glass. For the doors, take out

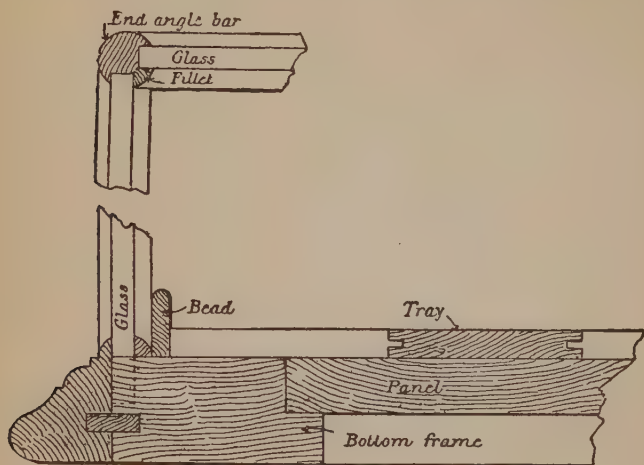


Fig. 18.

the rebate $\frac{1}{4}$ inch deep by $\frac{5}{8}$ inch wide; bevel the rebate to $\frac{5}{16}$ inch deep on the outside edge (as shown in Fig. 21), and work the hook-joint plane on the edge of the rebate. It is best to make the mitred joints first, as they require careful fitting together, and the bottom ends can be afterwards easily taken to the required length and cut.

Fig. 23 contains isometrical projections showing the

joints at the intersection of the front and the end angle-bars with the upright angle-bar. The position of the point is shown at A, Fig. 23.

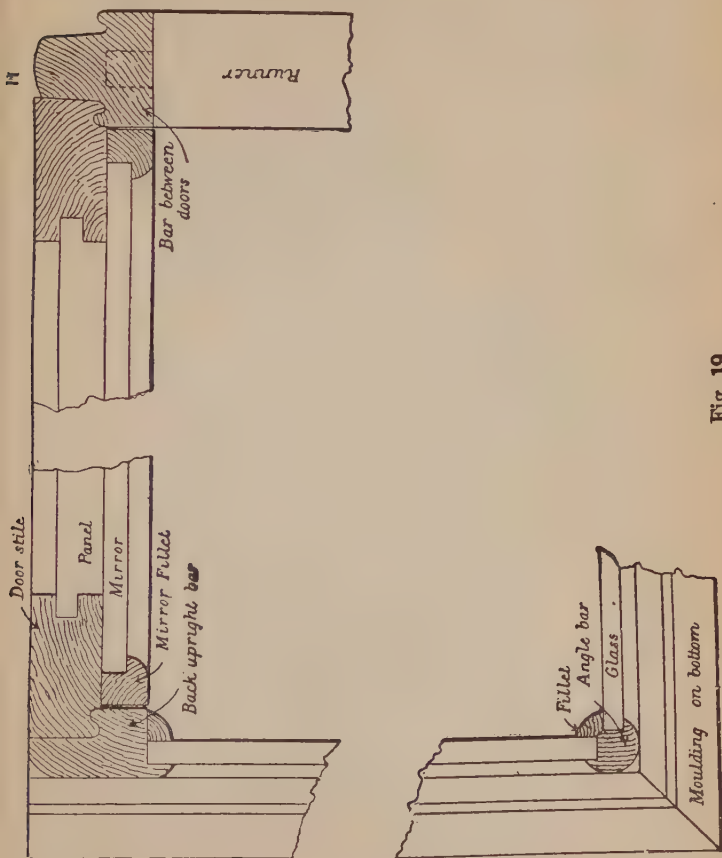


Fig. 19.

Three pieces of the required section, Fig. 20, should be got out, and the joint worked as follows:

Commence with the front and end angle-bars, cutting

a square mitre, 45 degrees on each outside face of both bars, bringing the external angle to a point, as shown in the sketch. Cut the mitre down to the rebate line and cut the surplus away, leaving the core of the bar projecting, which will be the part C. The internal part of the mitre E is the sight line. Square down and across

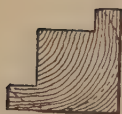


Fig. 20.

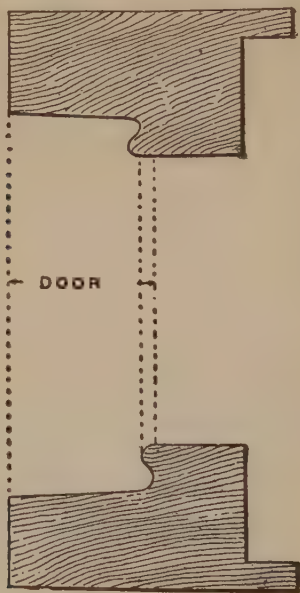


Fig. 21.

Fig. 22.

the core; then, from the sight-line, measure distances of $\frac{1}{8}$ inch and $\frac{7}{16}$ inch; the resulting lines will be the shoulder and end of the dovetail respectively. Cut the core off at the longest line and form the dovetail as shown in the sketch, when the two bars can be fitted together.

Proceed with the upright angle-bar. Cut the square

mitre as before, but instead of cutting to the depth of the rebate, it must be cut $\frac{1}{32}$ inch less. From the

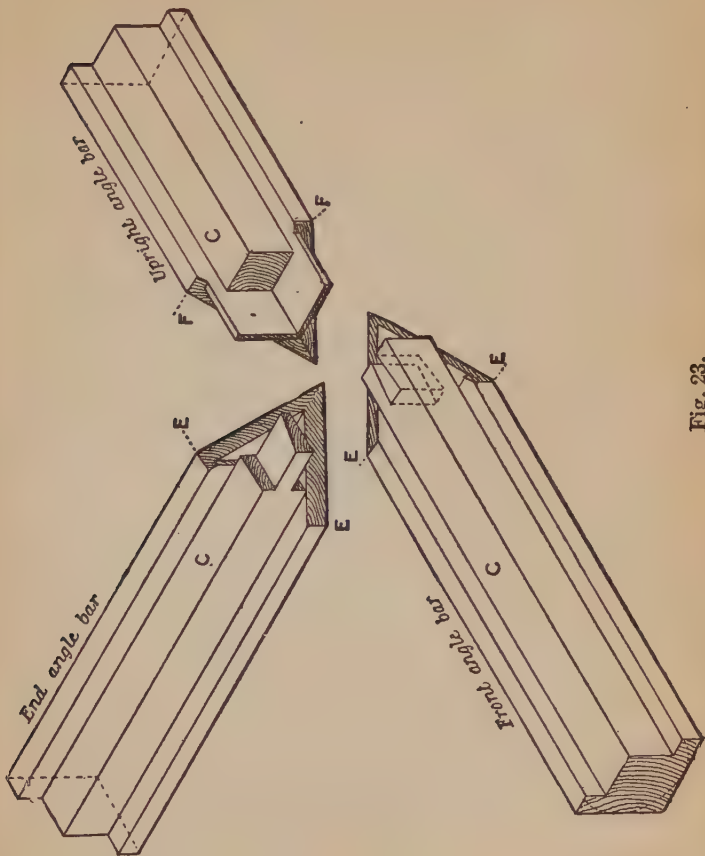


Fig. 23.

sightline F measure the same distances as before, viz., $\frac{1}{8}$ inch and $\frac{7}{16}$ inch. Cut off at the longest line, taking care not to cut through the projecting point of the

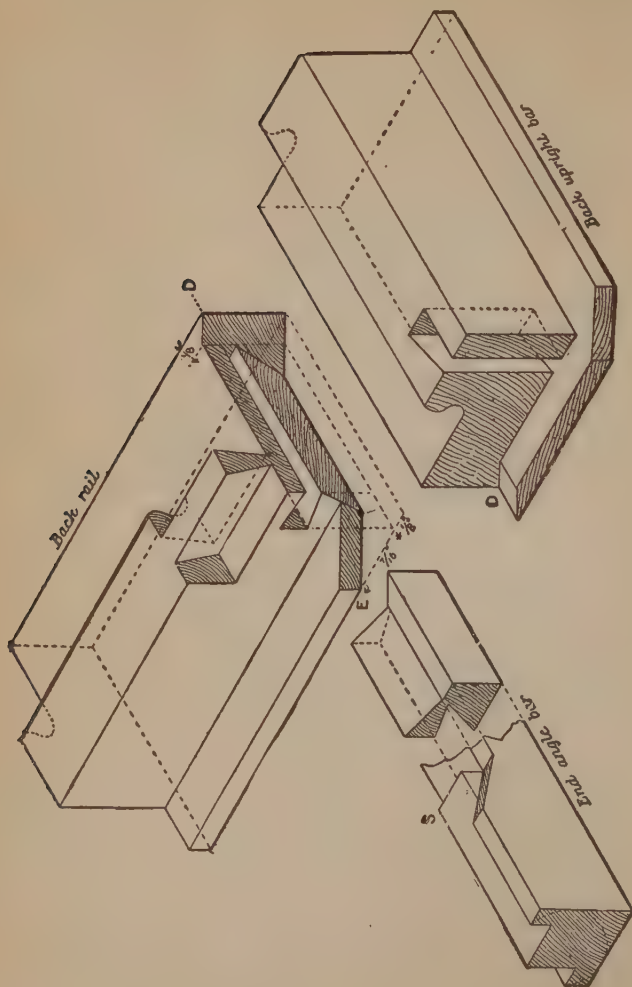


Fig. 24.

mitre, then take out the core C back to the shoulder line, thus leaving a thin tenon as seen in the sketch. Cut the tenon back $1/16$ inch on each edge and continue the mitre through.

It will now be necessary to mortise the front and end bars to receive the tenon on the upright angle-bar. For the mortises, square a line across the mitre $1/16$ inch from the sight line E. Gauge a line down the mitre $3/32$ inch from the face of the bar, leaving $1/32$ inch (the width of the mortise) between the core of the bar and the gauge line. The depth of the mortise will be to within $1/8$ inch from the other face.

The work must be done very carefully, and great care taken to have the tenon on the upright angle-bar of the thickness stated, viz., $1/32$ inch, as the result of having it of greater thickness would be that, when the bars were rounded, it would work through to the face.

The front angle-bar will have the same joint on both ends. The joint at the back of the case on the end angle-bar is cut as shown at Fig. 24. The joint at the bottom end of each upright angle-bar is simply a square shoulder cut to the depth of the rebate, leaving the core of the bar projecting to form a stump tenon. The bars are afterwards mitred with the moulding on both the front and the end, the projecting round of the moulding being cut away between the mitres in order to allow the shoulder to butt on the first square member, which will be flush with the bottom.

Fig. 24 contains isometrical projections showing the joints used to unite the back rail with the back upright angle-bar for forming the door opening; and also the end angle-bar. The position of the joint will be clearly understood by referring to B, Fig. 13.

It will be well to follow the same system as in the last group of joints, i. e., to prepare a piece of the required section of back rail, Fig. 21, which, when cut into two parts, can be used for both the back rail and back angle-bar; the only difference in the section of the two being that the back rail is rebated $1/16$ inch less than the thickness of the doors instead of $1/8$ inch less as in the back upright bar, Fig. 22. The reason for this is to allow the

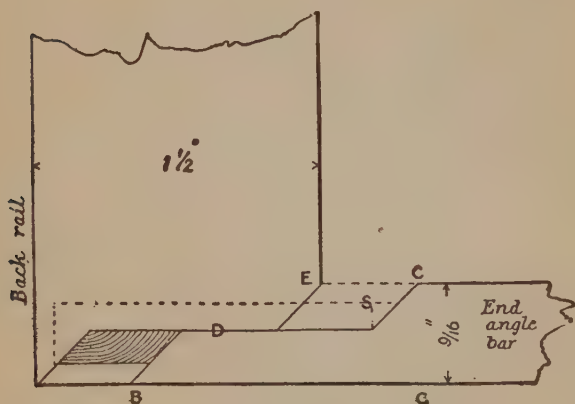


Fig. 25.

round of the hook-joint on the back upright bar to project over the hook-joint on the back rail which butts against it. It also allows a continuous hollow on the edges of the doors, which would not be the case if the rebates were kept flush with each other.

The end angle-bar is dovetailed into the back rail and is also mitred both at the extreme end and at the rebate. Fig. 25 shows the plan of this joint. It will be observed

that the joint has been left open to show the bevel from the shoulder line to the dovetail on the back rail, as at A, Fig. 31.

The back rail is also dovetailed to receive the upright bar. If the reader will look at Fig. 24 and imagine the upright placed into position on the back rail, he will notice that D D meet and form the remaining part of the

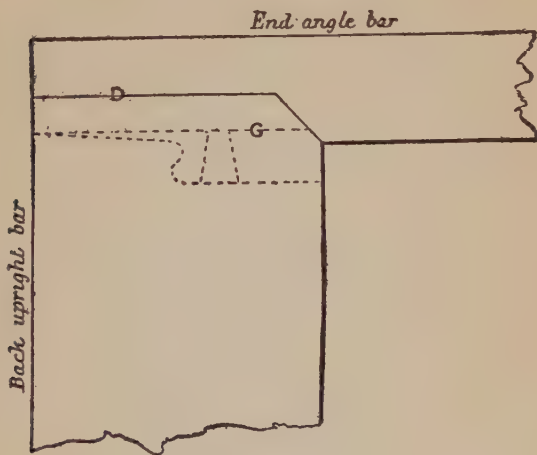


Fig. 26.

mitre, leaving a shoulder and mitre to join the end angle bar when in position. The exact position of the latter is seen in Fig. 26, the dotted lines showing the position of the dovetail on the back rail.

We will now proceed to set out the work.

Commencing with the end angle bar, square off a line for the extreme end of the mitre at B, Fig. 25, and measure back the width of the back rail (namely $1\frac{1}{2}$

inch) to C, which will be the sight line. From the sight line set off $\frac{5}{16}$ inch for the shoulder of the dovetail as at S, Figs. 24 and 25; then set off $1\frac{3}{8}$ inch from the sight-line to the end of the dovetail. Set a gauge to the centre of the angle-bar for the shoulders, as at D, Figs. 25 and 26. The shoulder at D, Fig. 25, is cut under on the bevel as shown in the section through the joint at A, and in the sketch of the end angle-bar, Fig. 24, where the drawing is broken. It is necessary to bevel it in this way in order to obtain the requisite strength in the dovetail. The shoulder on the side, Fig. 26, is cut square, as shown in the sketch. Mark the mitres, cutting from the sight-line to the shoulder line. The mitre on the extreme end is cut through as shown in Fig. 25.

To set out the back rail as shown in Fig. 24, square a line for the extreme end of the mitre, and from this line measure back for the sight-line, namely, $\frac{9}{16}$ inch, the width of the angle-bar, as at E, Fig. 25. Square a line between the two lines obtained, at an equal distance from each for the shoulder D. From E measure $\frac{7}{16}$ inch toward the end of the bar, and cut off square to within $\frac{1}{8}$ inch of the outside edge; this is clearly shown in Fig. 24.

To mark the dovetail of the end angle-bar, make a thin hardwood or zinc pattern to fit the dovetail on the angle-bar and apply it to the rebate of the back rail, cutting the dovetail out very carefully to within $\frac{1}{8}$ inch of the outside edge. On the top side of the rail mark the external mitre from the extreme point to the shoulder-line, and cut as shown in Figs. 24 and 25. Before the mitre can be completed, the bevel must be cut along the shoulder-line and edge of dovetail, and must work

out against the mitre. The internal mitre is cut from the sight-line.

There now only remains the cutting of the dovetail to receive the upright bar. Referring to Fig. 24, it will be seen that it is necessary to obtain the shoulder-line only, which is accomplished by measuring from the extreme point of the mitre, D, Fig. 24, $\frac{3}{4}$ inch, the thickness of the upright bar. The position of the dovetail-joint between the back rail and the back upright bar is shown by the dotted line in Fig. 26.

Exact lines for setting out the back upright bar, Fig. 26, are found as follows: Square the shoulder-line D and set off for the back shoulder $\frac{1}{4}$ inch as shown by the dotted line G. The back shoulder is then cut off to within $\frac{1}{8}$ inch of the face, as in the sketch, Fig. 24. Make a pattern to fit the dovetail on the back rail, and apply it to the back of the bar. Mitre the $\frac{1}{4}$ inch projection on the outside edge, and also mitre the inside as shown.

It is absolutely necessary that the whole of this work should be executed very carefully and very neatly. When the above mentioned joints have been fitted, make the bars to the required length.

To set out the bottom end of the back upright bar, cut the face shoulder square and mitre with the moulding as previously described for the front angle-bar. Allow the back-shoulder to be $\frac{1}{4}$ inch longer, so as to fit the rebate for the doors, the tenon being in the position shown by the dotted lines in Fig. 17.

After all the joints have been made, round the angle-bars and the back rail. The external angles of all upright angle-bars must have the rounding turned out about $\frac{1}{2}$ inch above the bottom shoulder, leaving the

bottom part of the bar square to follow the line of the moulding. The joints can now be glued together and cleaned off.

The double-rebated upright bar between the doors, as at H, Fig. 19, is cut to give both the top and bottom rebate, a small dovetail being cut at both ends in the positions shown by the dotted lines. The front edge of the bar is slightly rounded to break the joint between the doors. From the inside of the bar a runner of the same thickness as the bar is screwed to the bottom of the case to keep the trays in position.

Doors. There is nothing special to note in framing up the doors; they may be either tenoned or dowelled together. The panel is prepared flush on the inside.

Carefully fit the doors to the opening and work the hook-joint on the top edge and both ends. It will be remembered that the hook-joint must be worked through on each end; and also that it is deeper than the hook-joint on the top rail. In working the small hollow to fit over the fillet on the bottom edge, work the plane from the back side of the door.

Hinge the doors on the bottom edge, fixing the butts against the outside edge of the half-round fillet. When fixed thus the airtight joint will remain intact. The doors are fastened by a spring catch or lock let into the top rail.

When the doors are hung, the position of the mirror fillet can be marked by lining down the back of the doors round the frame. The fillets should be fixed $1/32$ of an inch inside the lines to allow for clearing.

Trays. A cross section of the tray is shown in Fig. 18. The bottom is prepared for three pieces of $1/4$ -inch pine. The grain of the centre piece runs from back to

front of the case, the grain of the side pieces being at right angles to it, and the three pieces are tongued and grooved together as shown. Glue the pieces together, and, when set, mitre the bead round the bottom.

Another method of ensuring the bottom against warping is to have the bottom in three thicknesses, the grain of the centre lying across the two outside pieces, and the pieces being glued together.

The inside of the tray and over the bead are covered with velvet or some other material, which must be glued to the tray. Glue should be used sparingly so as to prevent it penetrating the material.

CIRCULAR-FRONTED COUNTER-CASE WITH GLASS ENDS.

Fig. 28 shows a cross section through a circular-fronted case with glass ends. The only difference in the construction of this case from that of the square case is the bent angle-bar, and, of course, the omission of the front angle-bar.

In making this case, it is first necessary to have the glass bent to the shape required. For this purpose a pattern of the curve should be sent to a glass manufacturer. When the glass has been received make a mould of the same shape, on which to bend the angle-bar, as shown in Fig. 29. The convex side of the glass will give the rebate line from which to work the mould.

Use birch for the angle-bar, as it bends easily; it can be stained to match the other part of the case. Have the bar long enough to bend from the bottom of the case to the back rail.

To bend the bar successfully, cut the top side of the bar away down to the rebate line on the end required

to be bent. The length of the part cut away will be from the bottom of the case to a little beyond the springing line. Care must be taken to cut the two bars for

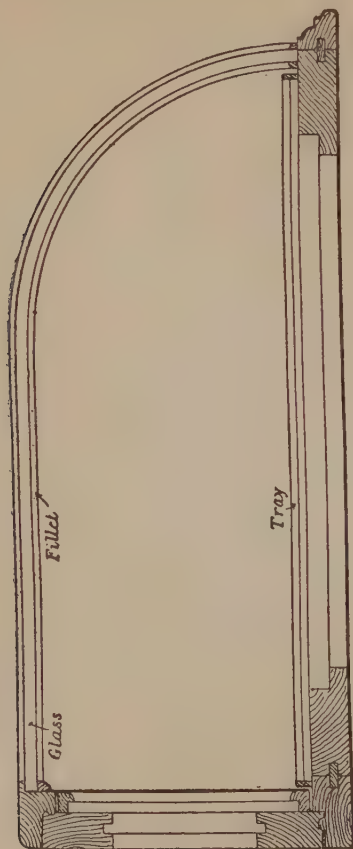


Fig. 28.

the case in pairs. Steam the bars for several hours and then bend them round the mould (Fig. 29) by securing the extreme end first with a cleat, as shown at A. Draw

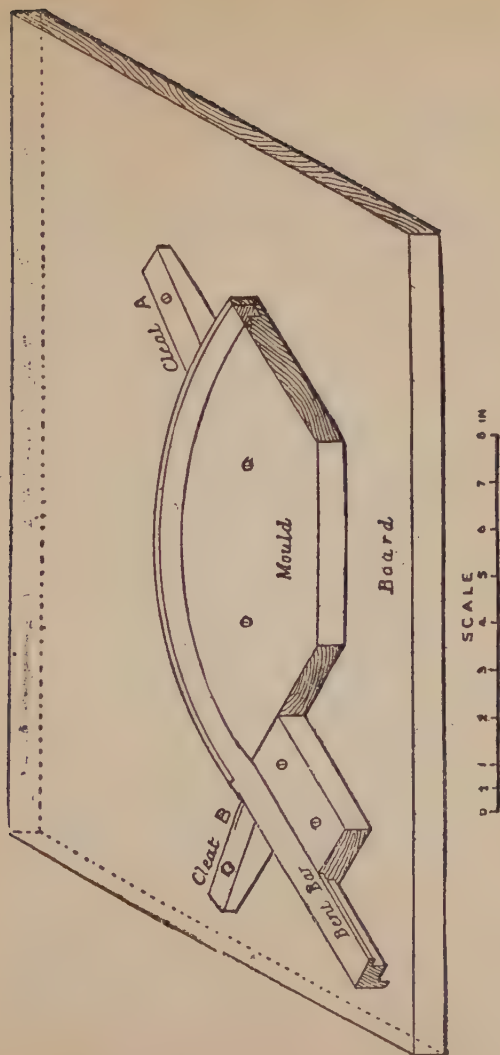


Fig. 29.

the bar gradually to the mould, secure it in position by the cleat B, and leave it to cool for several hours. It is better to leave it on the mould until the following day, when the strip to form the rebate—which replaces the part cut away—can be fitted and glued in position.

After the bar has been bent and the strip cleaned off, place it on the drawing-board and set out the position of the joints at the bottom of the case and on the back rail, as already described.

CIRCULAR-FRONTED CASE WITH SOLID ENDS.

It will only be necessary, after the preceding explanations, to notice the joint of the back rail, and the section

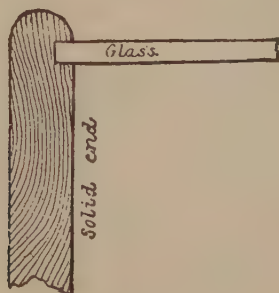


Fig. 30.

of the solid end. Fig. 30 shows a section through the solid end of the case, grooved to receive the glass. Fig. 31 is a plan of the angle formed by the end of the case and the back rail. The clamp A is tongued and grooved to the end, the tongue being stopped $\frac{1}{2}$ inch below the top edge. The clamp is prepared with a hook-joint as shown by the dotted lines. The width of the clamp is the width of the back rail less the rebate for the glass.

Fig. 32 shows in isometrical projection the joint at the junction of the back rail with the solid end. Imagine

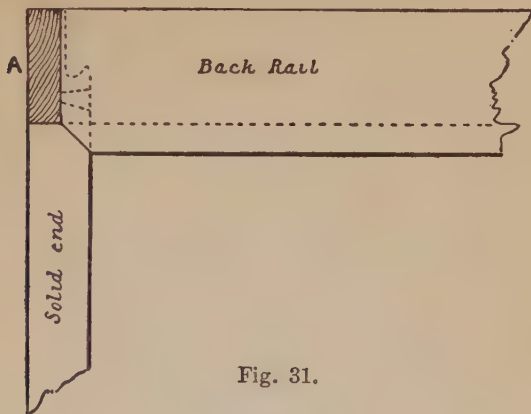


Fig. 31.

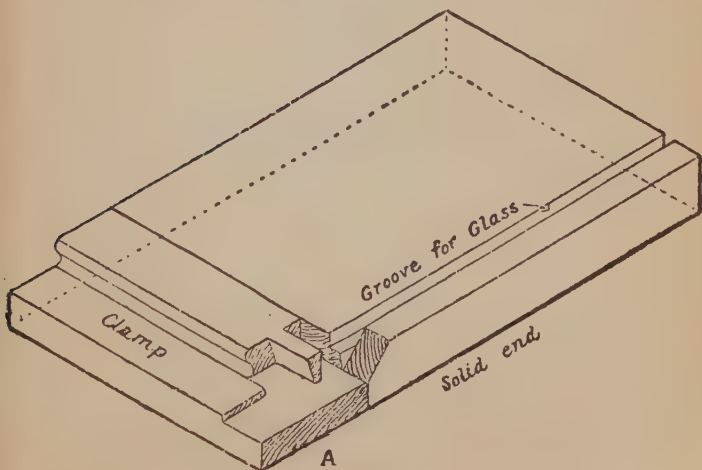


Fig. 32.

that A A are brought together. It will then be seen that they slide into position and present the appearance

shown in the plan in Fig 31, and give the extra lines for setting work.

The solid ends are $\frac{5}{8}$ inch thick, finished size. They must be left wide enough to screw to the bottom frame of the case. Fix the moulding round the bottom and mitre it at each inside round of the ends, as before described for upright angle-bars, turning the round on

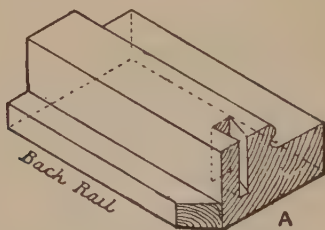


Fig. 33.

the outside of each end out $\frac{1}{2}$ inch above the moulding. The moulding mitred round the ends of the case must be reduced by the thickness of the quarter-round member which forms the rebate for glass at the front of the case.

These cases are often fitted with several trays, the bearers to carry them being screwed to the ends.

SOME FORMS OF PANELS.

We conclude this Volume by giving some illustrations of panels. In Fig. 1 we give a "flush" panel for a front or entrance door, in which in front elevation a, b, are the two rails, d d, e e, the stiles, c c, g g, the panel with

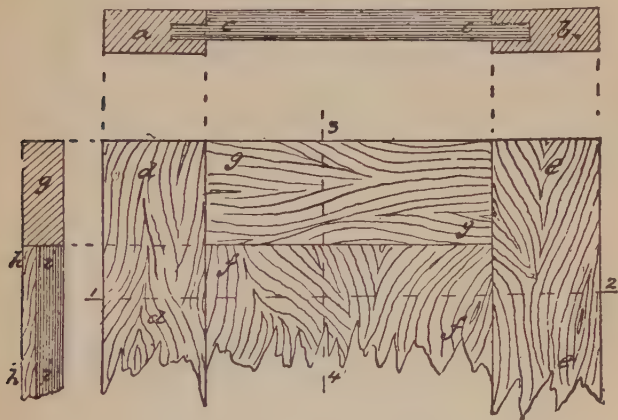


Fig. 1.

stuck-on mouldings all round and mitring at corners; g h is a vertical section in line 3 4. In this the recess between the stile and panel is one side only. Where there are recesses on both sides of the panel b b, Fig. 2, and the stiles a a; the panel is known as a "square" panel. In this figure the lower diagram is front elevation; that on the left is a section on line 3 4. In Fig. 3 we illustrate different forms of panels. In the upper diagram, a a, the stiles carry one "square panel,"

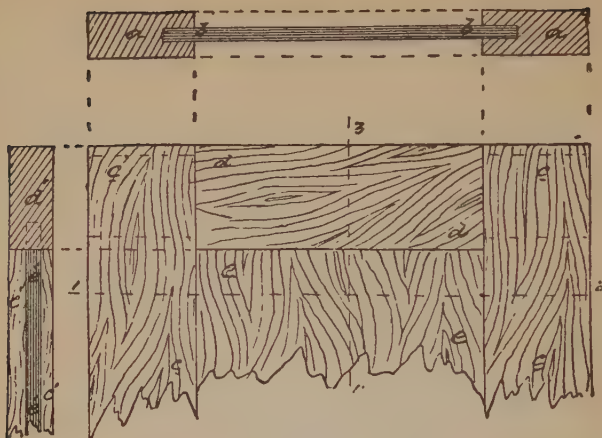


Fig. 2.

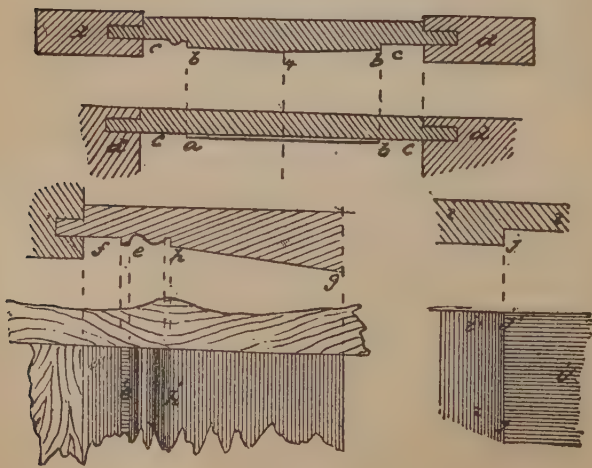


Fig. 3.

which is not flat, as in Fig. 2, on the inner side, but tapers to the centre, which is thickest, to the sides,

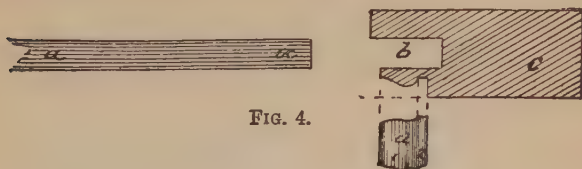


FIG. 4.

where it may be either square, as at the right hand, or finished with a moulding, as on the left.

Resuming our description of the drawing named, the second diagram shows a "flush panel," with stiles d d,

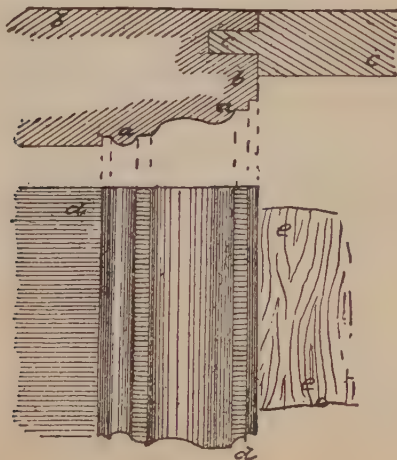


Fig. 5.

the panel having a raised position in the centre, as shown at a b, with flat spaces as at c c, all round. The

lower diagram to the right is an enlarged view in section and elevation of the part of the panel of upper diagram to the right. The lower diagram to the left is an enlarged view of the left hand side of the panel, which is technically called a "raised panel." Figs. 12 and 13 are other views of raised panels, and diagram

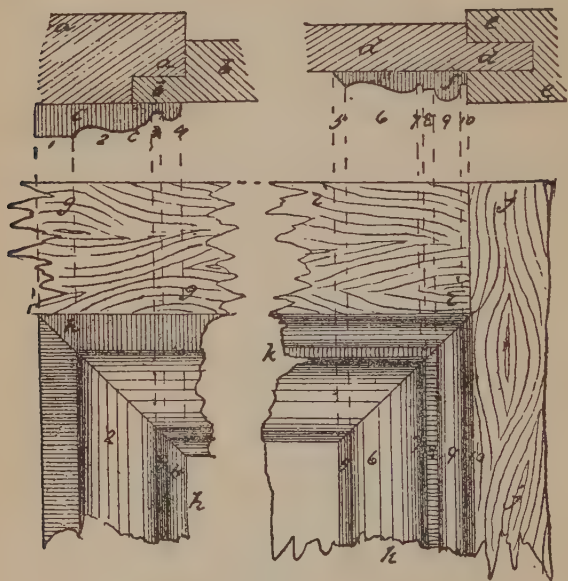


Fig. 6.

B in next figure shows a form of panel in the Gothic. Other forms are illustrated in Figs. 8, 9, 10, and 11. In Fig. 3 the flat part of the panel surrounding the raised central part is called the "margin." (See also Fig. 12 at b.) The panel, as in Fig. 3, is called a "moulded raised panel" when there is a moulding at

the margin, as f e h. There are other distinctions in panel work, yet to be noticed. In "flush panels," as in Fig. 1, the "moulding" or "bead" is worked only on the two sides (vertical) of the panel, as at d d, Fig. 5, and these terminate at the rails, as at f f, no moulding being at the ends of the panel. This is called "bead butt" panel. When the panel has mouldings all round,

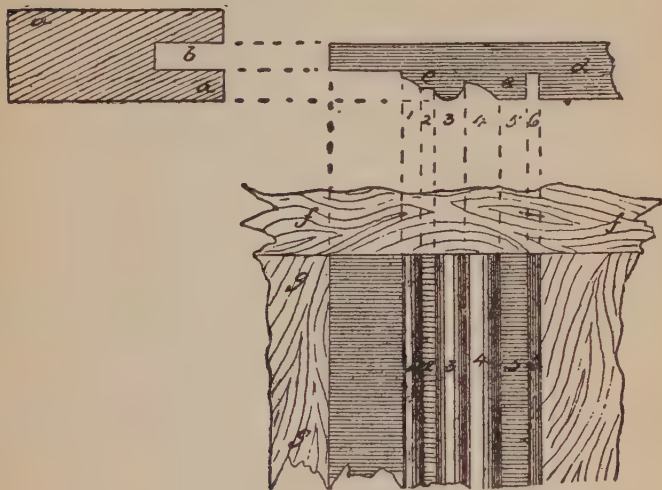


Fig. 7.

that is at top and bottom as well as at the sides, the mouldings meet at the corners and are mitred, as shown in the lower part of the diagram in Fig. 6, this is known as a "bead flush panel." In panel work where a moulding is worked out of the solid, as at b in Fig. 4, or at a a in Fig. 5 of the style, as c c or b b, the term "stuck on" (a corruption of "struck on," which

is the true term) is applied. This is only applicable to "bead and butt" panel work vertically, as the mouldings would not mitre if struck horizontally on the rails.

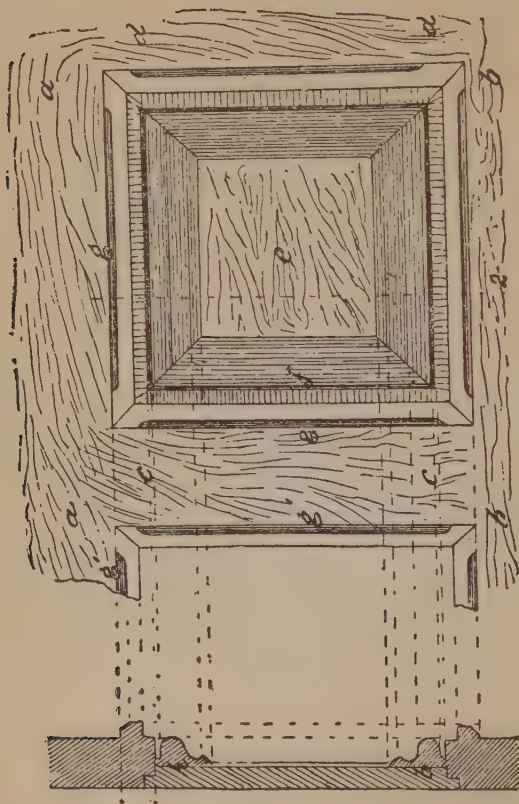


Fig. 8.

When the mouldings are made separately and nailed onto the stiles *j j*, and rails *i i*, Fig. 6, they are called "laid on" mouldings. They may be nailed on either to

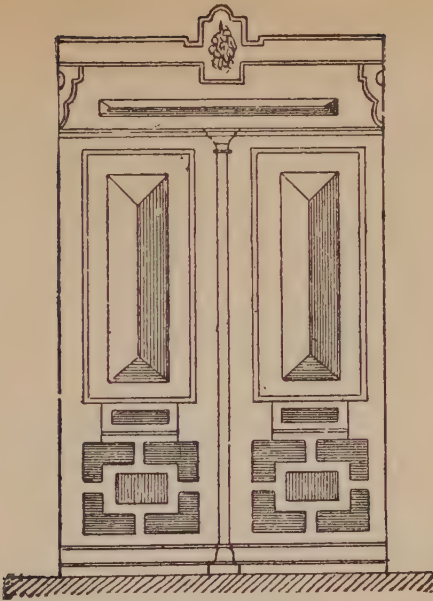


Fig. 9.



Fig. 10.

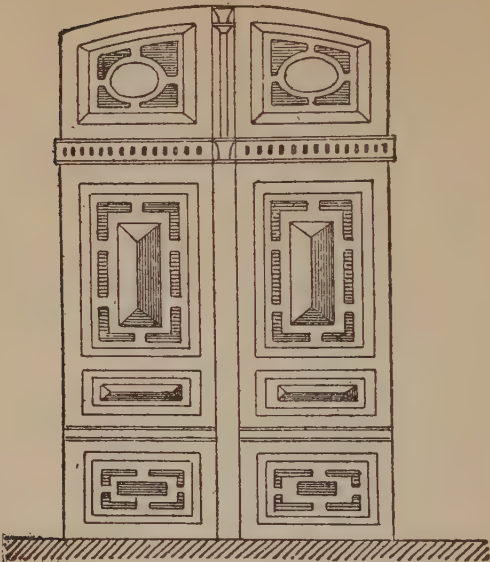


Fig. 11.

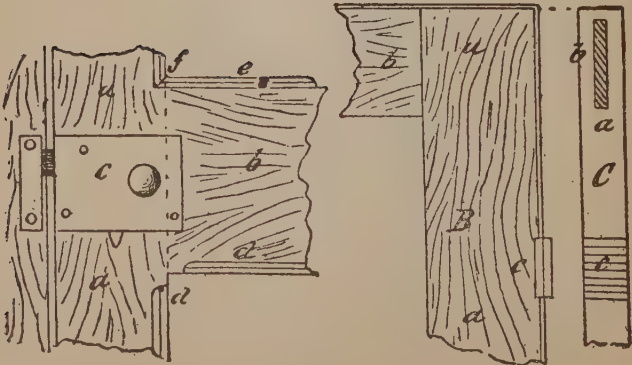


Fig. 13.

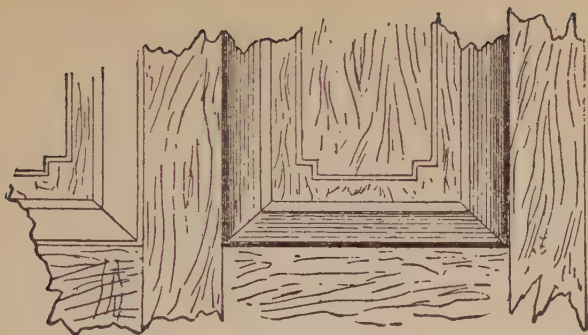


Fig. 13.



Fig. 14.

the stiles and rails or to the panels in "flush" work, or all around the panels in "square" panels. In Fig. 14 in diagram A, we give a panel at upper part of

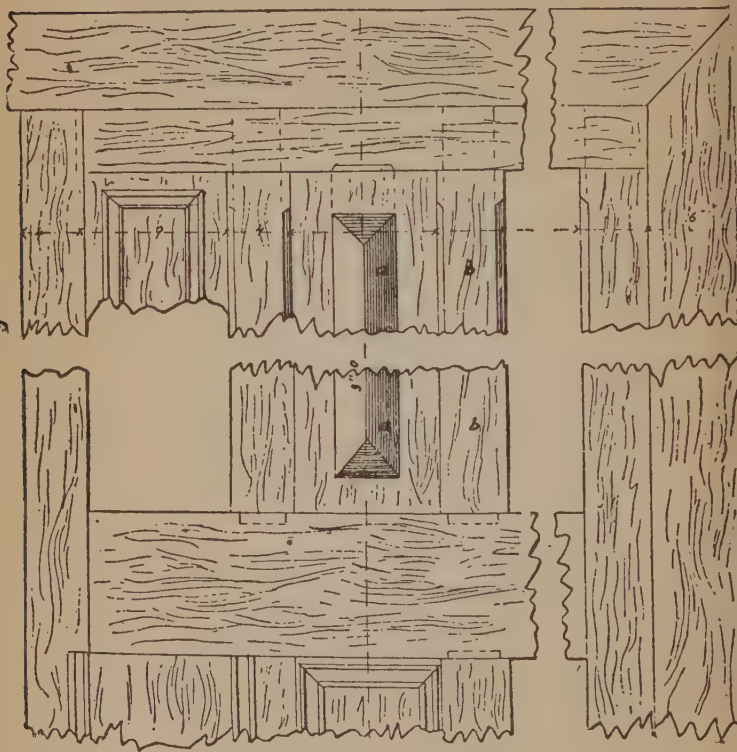


Fig. 15.

door, in which the upper rail a a is curved at top, b b b the stiles, separated in the centre by a moulding a a d the upper panel, with stuck-on mouldings c e e. Diagram B is front elevation of lower panel. In Fig. 13

we give a section of middle stile and panel; the middle stile b b being provided down the centre with a stuck-on moulding, as at b a, corresponding to the vertical moulding a a in Fig. 15. A moulding as at c c is worked in the margin of the stile corresponding to c c in Fig. 14. E shows the moulding in section stuck on the square panel f g, the margin f being in this way wide. In Fig. 15, and in Figs. 8, 9, 10, 11 and 12 we give illustrations of panel work, and in Fig. 9 section and elevation of mouldings for a panel.

JOINERS' WORK IN THE CONSTRUCTION OF DOORS—DIFFERENT KINDS OF DOORS.

We now come to illustrate the different forms of doors, and various details of their construction. Doors are either external or internal and both may be con-

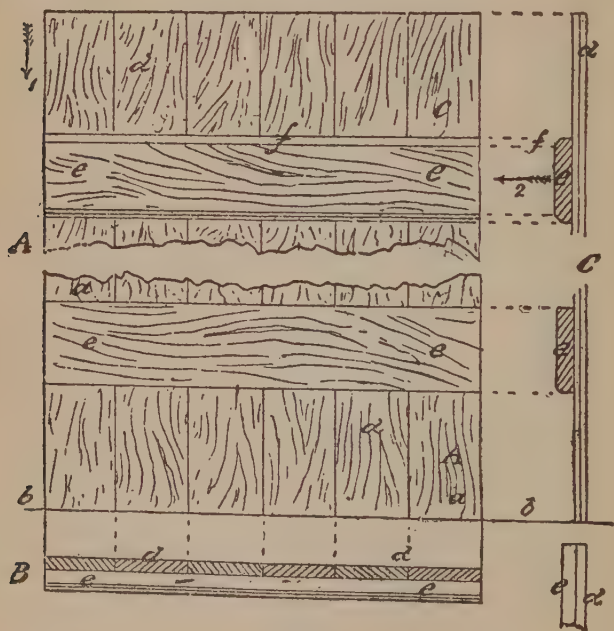


Fig. 16.

structed much in the same way. The chief difference between them, if difference may be made at all, is that external doors are heavier in their timbers—that is,

thicker and broader—and are not quite so much ornamented with mouldings, or so highly and carefully finished, as internal or private room doors. Doors are of different classes, beginning with those adapted either for houses, of a simple character or for out-buildings, etc., where economy is carefully studied, and going up to the more elaborate forms, used in houses of the higher class.

The simplest form of doors is shown in part elevation at A, Fig. 16, in plan at B, looking down in direction of arrow 1, in C side elevation or edge view looking in direction of arrow 2. This form is what is called a "batten door." In elevation in diagram A, the lower part is a a, next to floor or ground line b b. The door is made up of flat planks, a a c d d, running vertically from foot or floor, or ground line b b up to head. These are either laid as in plan B in the cheapest class of work, edge to edge, and held together by cross pieces, or bars, e e. In better work, these and the vertical parts, d d, are secured by joints of different kinds. In the section C the cross bars e are simply laid flat and nailed to the upright planks, d d. The edges of the cross-bars, d d, may either be left square, or have the lines or corners planed off and "chamfered" or beveled off as at f f.

BATTEN AND BRACED AND BATTEN, BRACED AND FRAMED DOOR.

Fig. 17 is an elevation in diagram A of a "batten and braced" door. To the vertical and cross bars of the simple form in Fig. 16 the diagonal "brace" a a a a,

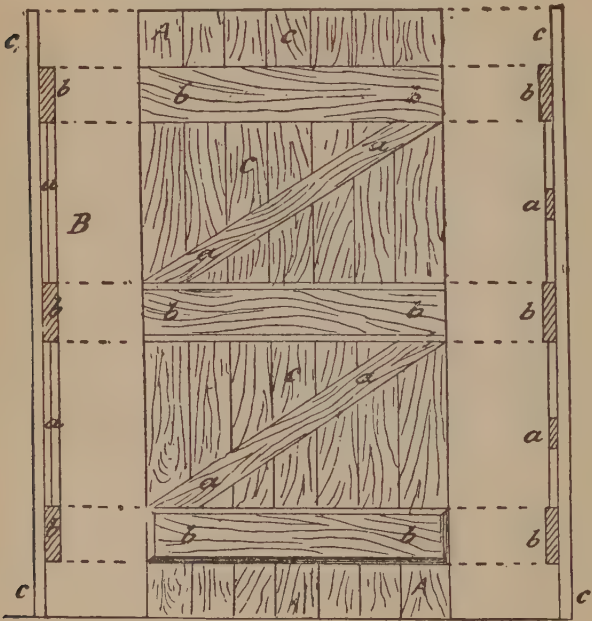


Fig. 17.

corresponding to the struts of a roof truss, are introduced; these butt against the cross bars or battens b b b b, while behind are the vertical boards c c c c,

Diagram B is side elevation or edge view and C vertical section. A still higher class of door is the "framed

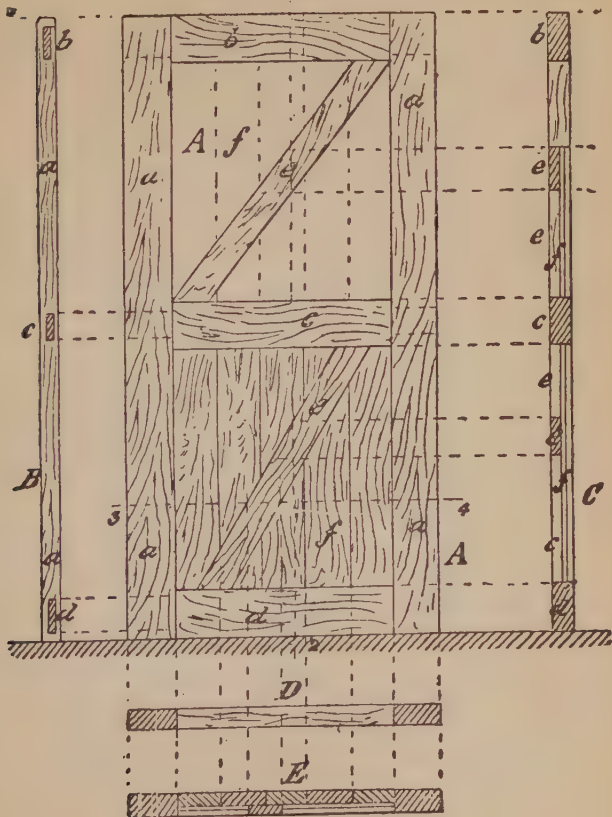


Fig. 18.

braced and battened" door, in Fig. 18, here as in elevation in diagram A, we have an outer frame vertical

pieces, held together and secured by the cross-bars b, c, d, the ends of these being tenoned into the stiles a a. The central spaces are filled with braces e e, and the vertical boards f f. Diagram B is vertical section on line 2 and C is side view showing ends of tenons of cross bars b, c, d; D is plan of top edge, looking down; E is cross or horizontal section on line 3 4 in A.

PANELLED DOORS—NAMES AND OFFICES OF DIFFERENT PARTS—STILES—RAILS— MORTISES.

The transition from this form of door to the highest class, the “panelled door,” is easy and natural. We have

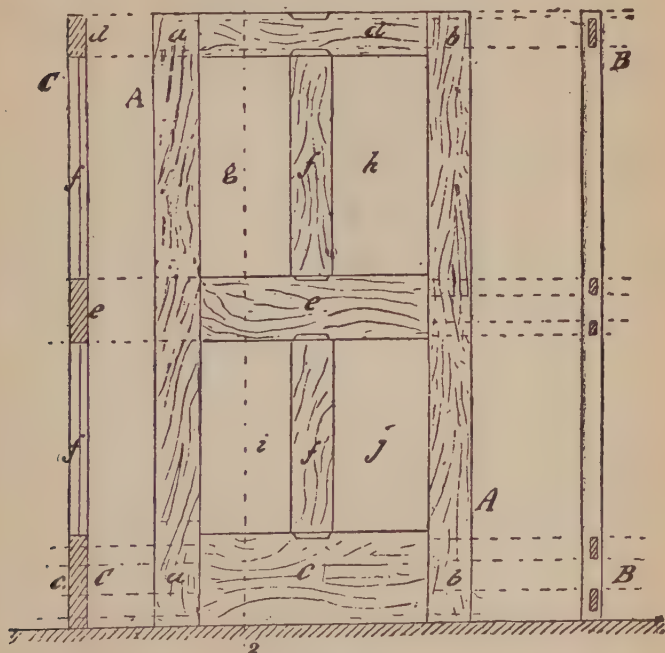


Fig. 19.

seen in the simplest timbers, which is the element of the “truss,” and which gives the strongest form attainable.

In this view the panelled door, as in elevation in A, Fig. 19, is not so strong as the form in Fig. 18, from the absence of the diagonal braces, as e e, but those, if required in a door such as an external one, where strength is an object can be dispensed with in interior doors, which are always panelled in good houses.

Elegance or neatness of arrangement, with such ornamentation as mouldings, etc., can give, are what are looked for. In Fig. 19, the external framework enclosing the panels is made up of two side vertical boards, a a, b b varying in thickness from $1\frac{1}{2}$ to $2\frac{1}{2}$ inches, and in very superior work even 3 inches. These boards are called "stiles"; that by which door is hung to the casing, secured by hinges is called the "hanging stile," as a a; that to which the lock is secured the "lock stile," as b b. These stiles are held together by cross-bars called "rails" of which c is the "bottom rail," d the "top rail" and e the "middle or lock rail." The central vertical bars, as f f are called "muntins" (a corruption of mouldings). The assemblage of boards thus arranged leaves spaces as g, h, i, j, these are filled with panels, as a, b, c and d, in Fig. 20, which is the elevation of a *four*-panelled door. There are also six-panelled doors. Generally the panels are nearly equal in length, but in some the lower panels are short, the upper being longer. Figs. 2 and 4 illustrate outside doors in Continental style. The panels are secured to the framing by grooves, as shown in preceding figures and as further hereafter illustrated, and are ornamented with mouldings, as explained. In Fig. 19 diagram C is the vertical section, edge view of stile b b. In Fig. 20 B is plan of top edge of door. The rails are secured to the styles by tenons, sometimes single, but more frequently in good work

by double tenons, as in Fig. 21, in which is front elevation of rail, a a, b c two tenons. Diagram B is part of stile a cut vertically in two to show the seats of the mortises b and c, diagram C and view of rail. In left-hand dia-

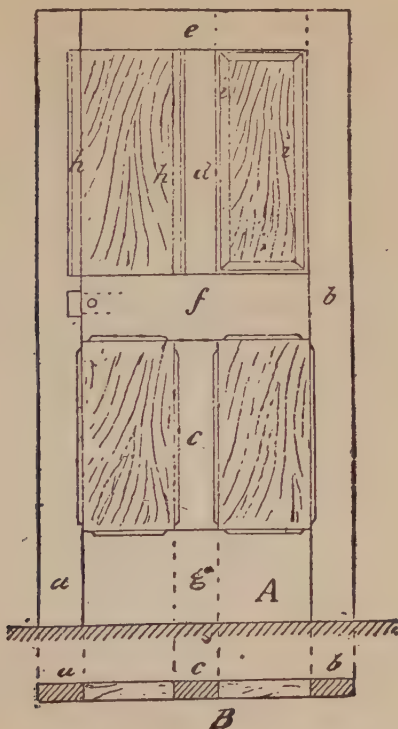


Fig. 20.

gram in Fig. 12 is elevation of part of "lock stile," a a and "lock rail," b of a bedroom door, with simple lock, c, known as a "rim lock." In diagram B, part of the "hanging stile," a a, of this door is given in elevation, b

part of "top rail," a portion of upper "hinge" is shown at c. Diagram C is edge view. The inner edges of stiles, rails, and mortises are generally, in good work, "stop chamfered" as at d d, or beveled off from end to end, as at e f, the two edges meeting in a mitre, as shown. The "top chamfer," d d, is the neatest, stopping, as it does, short of the end. A rim lock is screwed onto the outside of the lock stile; what is called a "mortise lock" is employed in superior doors, where the lock is concealed, nothing but the handle and keyhole being visible, the lock being inserted in a mortise or vacant part cut out in the stile to receive it. Fig. 29 contrasts the two locks. c d is the rim lock. In the mortise lock nothing but the handle at g is seen, and the escutcheon h, i is the bolt of the lock, a a, b b, a' a', b' b', are the chamfered stiles and rails.

DOOR CASINGS.

Doors are secured to "casings." These are of timber, and built into the walls, and are secured to wood, bricks or grounds. Fig. 23 illustrates in part elevation an outer "door casing." The sides b b, c c, are called "jambs," f f, the "head," into which the jambs are tenoned, the feet being also tenoned, at d, into the upper part of stone step a a. Fig. 22 is sectional plan showing arrangement and relative positions of various parts of a door and its casings. The door, l l, is hinged to the "jamb" b, this being secured to the "ground" or "wood brick" a a, bulit into the wall b b, c and j are the "architraves." The opposite "jamb," f f, is rebated as at m to allow of a space into which the "door lock stile" falls, as shown by the dotted lines, which represent the lines of the door. The outer edge of the jamb may be left plain, but is often finished off with a "quirked head," as at j; k, k, the hinge. The inner and outer architraves are at c and j; a a, the wood brick; b b, the wall; e, i, are the elevations of the architraves, d and h. The elevations of these two parts of sectional plan of door fittings are given in the under part of the drawing in Fig. 23. The edge of the door a, as looking at it from the inner side, is shown at p p, q q, being the ends of tenons of top rail, r r, the hinge, n n, from a view of architrave, o o the wall in the void of which the door is hung. In the under drawing to the right, part of front surface of door is shown, s s, the architrave, t t the wall.

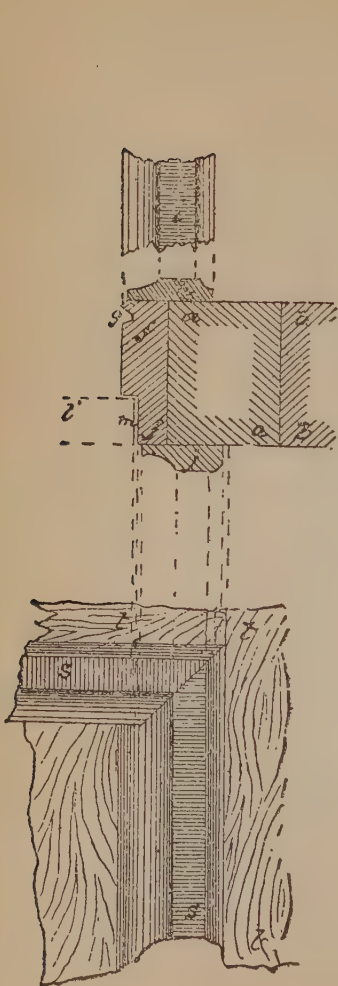


Fig. 22.

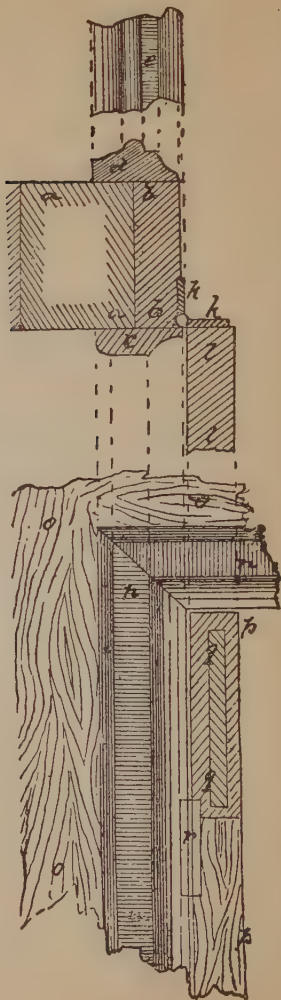


Fig. 23.

JOINTS OF STILES AND RAILS IN PANELLED DOORS.

Figs. 24 and 25 give illustrations of methods of joining rails and stiles, or rails and mortises. Let a b c d, Fig. 24, be the stile, with moulding stuck on edge; f g h is part of the rail, with tenon f, shown by dotted lines

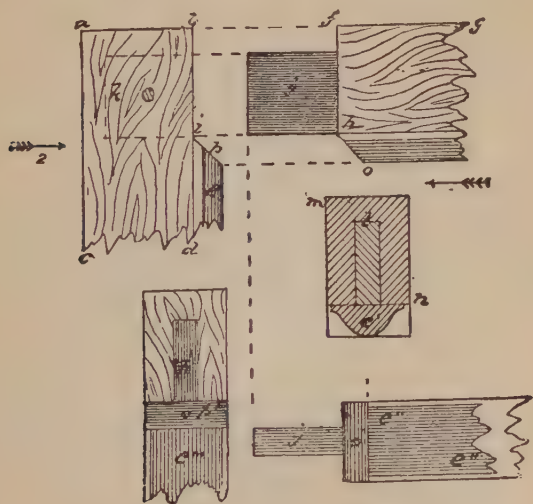


Fig. 24.

in stile a b c d. Front view of tenon are face of mitre of chamfer at p, looking at a b c d in the direction of arrow 1, is shown in the lower diagram at k', p' and e". The section of part f g looking at its end, in direction of arrow 2, is shown at l m n; the section of a moulding

is in this at e'. In lower diagram to the right is given a view of under side of rail f g. In Fig. 25, a a, is

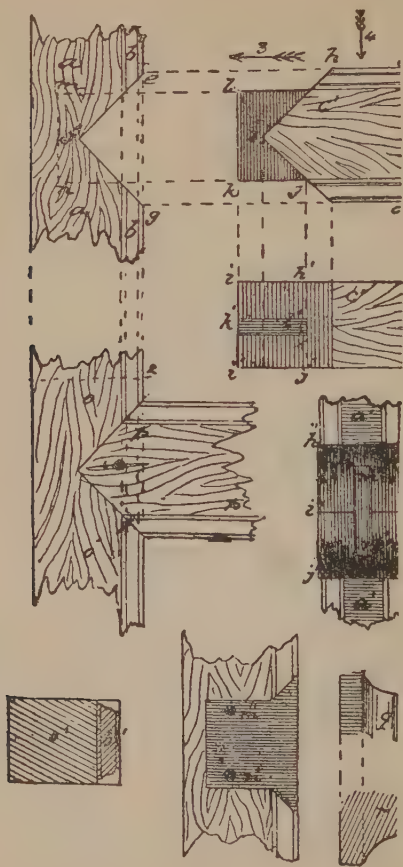


Fig. 25.

front view of part of stile with moulding worked on edge, at b b; part of rail is at c' c' d. The angular

face of part cut out in stile e f, fg corresponds with angular end h i j of rail, but a tenon i l k is left on, or is inserted in end of piece c' c' d. The end view of the stile a a, looking at it in the direction opposite to that

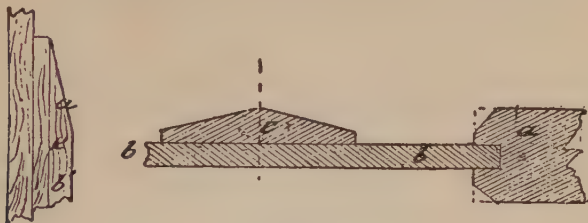


Fig. 26.

of the arrow 3, is shown in the middle diagram to the right with corresponding letters accented, showing corresponding parts. The line i'' i'' corresponds to the line at point in rail c' c' d d. The plan of under side of rail c' c' d is shown in diagram immediately below k', l being edge view of tenon k l. The finished joint is shown at o o, p p; the diagram below to the left being cross

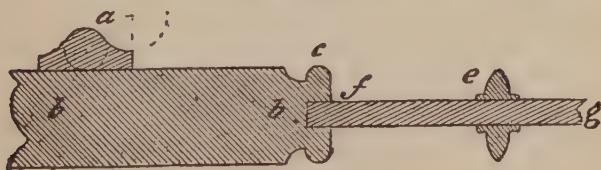


Fig. 27.

section to the line 1 2. Enlarged elevation q, and section r of moulding b b, or b'', is given at the two diagrams to the right at bottom of drawing. Another method of forming the junction is shown in the middle diagram at the foot of Fig. 25, the shaded part showing form of tenon with the ends of moulding united.

A FOUR-PANELLED DOOR.

In Fig. 28 I give a drawing—to a scale of $\frac{1}{8}$, or $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch to the foot—of a four-panelled interior or room

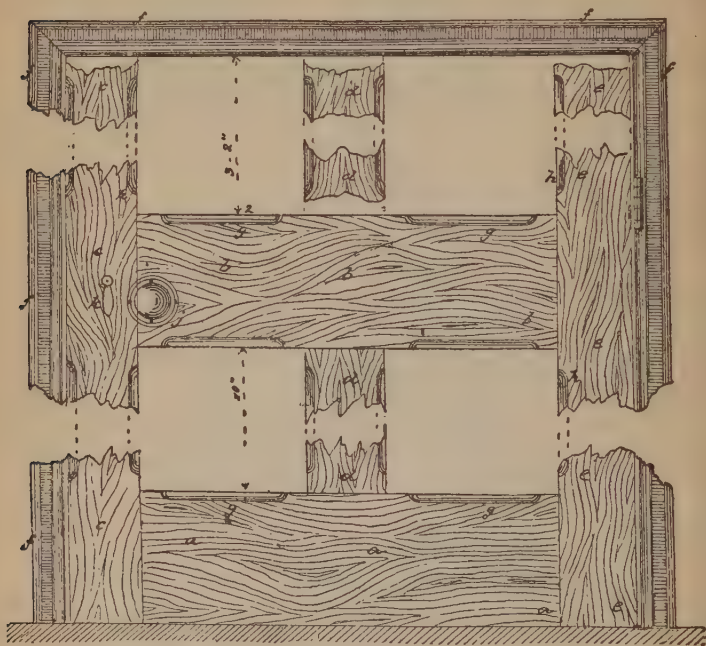


Fig. 28.

door, showing all the leading parts of the framework, with the exception of top rail, which is usually about half the breadth or depth of the middle of lock rail, marked b b in the drawing. The panels are not shown,

but the dimensions of the spaces they occupy are given. The panels are plan "square," the only ornamentation in this example being a "stop chamfer" worked on the margin of stiles, and rails, as shown at g g and h h. In the drawing a a is the "bottom rail," b b the middle, or usually "lock rail," as it carries the "mortise lock," the handle of which is shown at j. The "key hole" is covered by a movable part, hung or jointed at upper end, called the "escutcheon," or more frequently in technical talk, the "scutcheon," or "skutcheon," shown at k. The stiles are at c c, e e—the stiles c c, termed the "lock stile," being that in which the lock is mortised. The stile e e is called the "hanging stile," being that on which the door is "hinged" or "hung" to the door casing. The vertical pieces, or "muntins," which divide the panels from each other, placing them in pairs on each side of the door, are shown at d d. The door framing thus constructed is surrounded on both sides and at top by the architraves f f f.

ARCHITRAVES OF A FOUR-PANELLED DOOR.

The section of architrave in relation to the door casing or check is in upper diagram to the left in Fig. 29, a a being part of the door casing, b b the section of architrave, of which part elevation is shown at c c, 1, 2, 3, and 4 showing similar parts in section correspondingly lettered. The edge view of the "lock stile" as a a f in the figure preceding, is shown at d d; e e shows the brass plate let into the edge and secured by screw nails as shown. This is part of the lock furniture of the door, f indicating position and section of the shooting or locking bolt of the lock, which passes into the aperture of a brass plate secured to the inner side or edge of the door casing. The bolt, which secures the door, being closed—not locked—f being the locking bolt, is shown at g, this being worked by the handle j of the lock. The part of the lock furniture attached to the door casing opposite to the edge, as d d d, of the door stile, is shown in the lower diagram to the right. The part 3 3 in this corresponds to the face of the recessed or rebated part p in drawing above, cut in the face of the door casing n n n, the door passing into and resting against the face of recess or rebate p. In the upper diagram to the right, o o o is the outer architrave secured to the door casing n n n, r part of the inner architrave. The part of the lock furniture secured to the door casing is shown at t t; it is a brass plate let into the face g, or 3 3 of recess or rebate p. The aperture in this into which the bolt f of the lock passes is shown at p; that into which the bolt

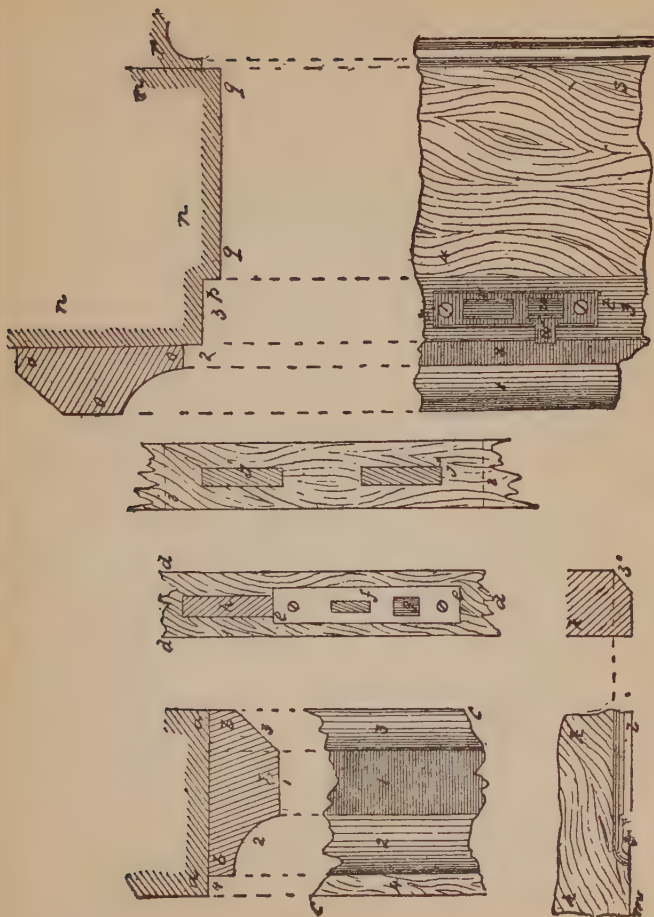


Fig. 29.

moved by the hand passes is at *u*, a spring *w*, cast onto the plate *t t*, being shown at *w*. A small projecting part

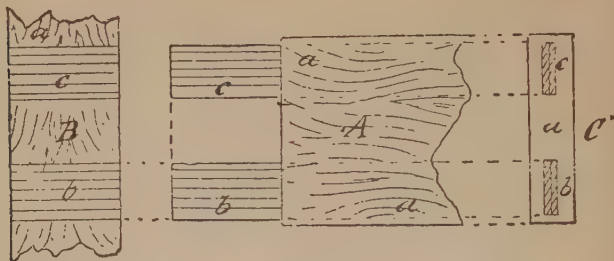


Fig. 30.

as *w'*, to make the opening and closing of the door more easy. The two diagrams to the left at lower part of

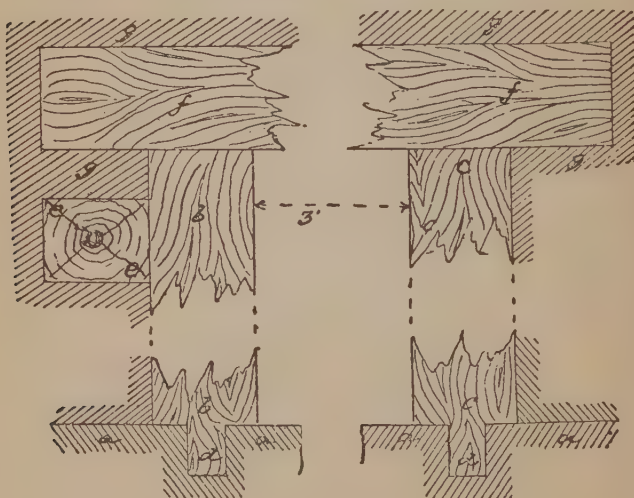


Fig. 31.

drawing show the elevation *k l m*, the chamfered part of framing with section at *k' k'*.

SOME EXAMPLES OF ORNAMENTAL WOOD- WORK.

The following examples are introduced in order to

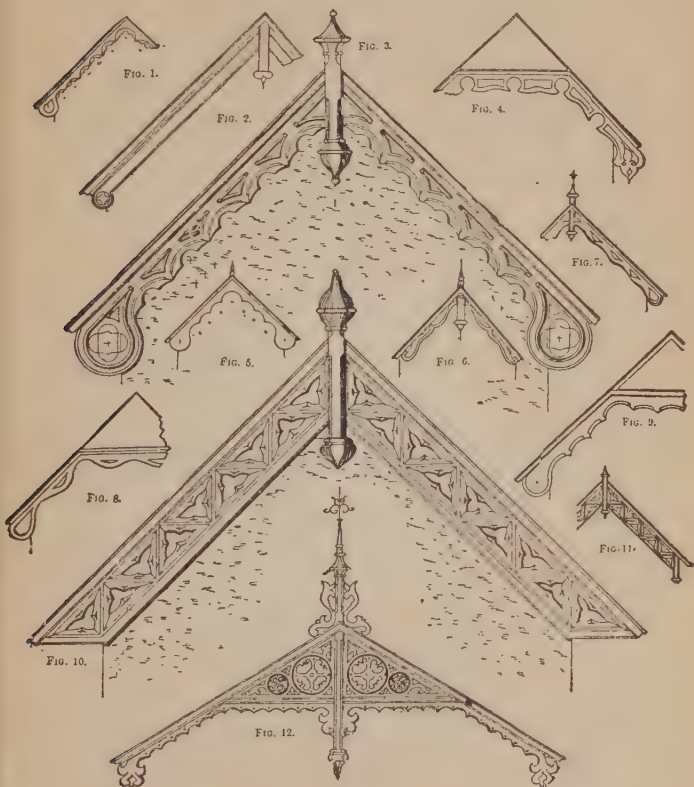


PLATE 1.

give the workman an idea of the shape and construction of low-cost ornamental wood-work. The figures



PANELING



RAISED PANEL



PATERA



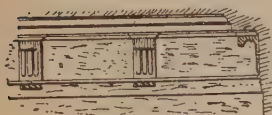
PATERA



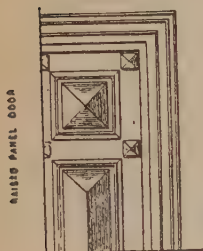
PILASTER-CORNICE



MAIN CORNICE



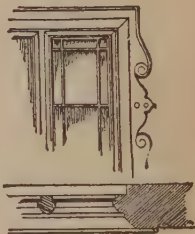
DRAWING ROOM CORNICE



RAISED PANEL DOOR



BALUSTERS



PLAN AND ELEVATION

WINDOW



KEY-STONE TRUSS



MULLIONS

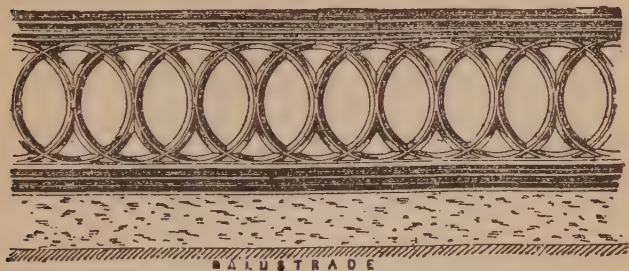


SCROLL TRUSS

PLATE 2.

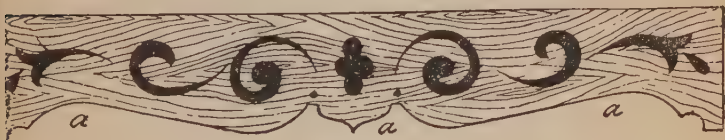
shown from No. 1 to No. 12, inclusive, exhibit a number of large boards, chiefly in Gothic style. Plate No. 2 is a style which was in vogue very much a few years ago

and was generally known among carpenters as Ginger-Bread work. It is well adapted for sea-side cottages or



No. 13.

summer residences; it consists mostly of cutwork. Nos. 2, 5, 8 and 9 are well adapted for ordinary cottage



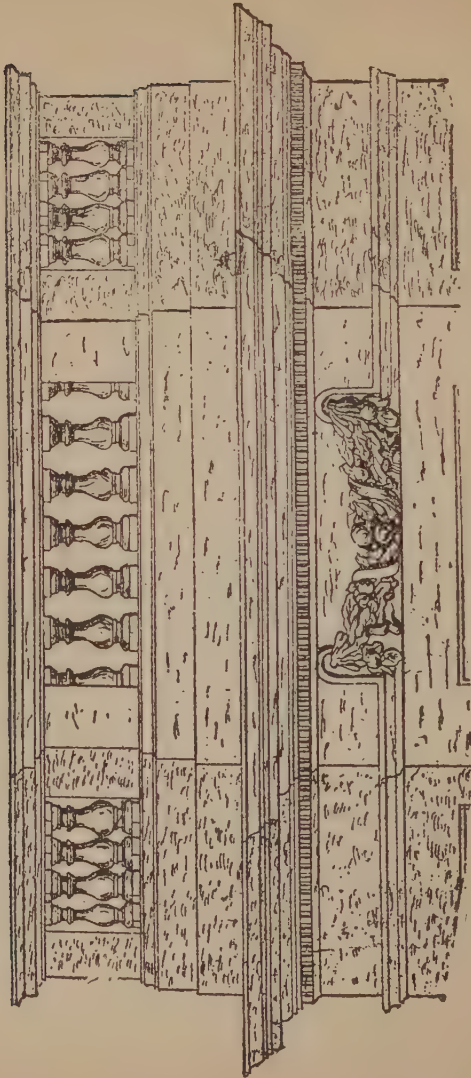
No. 14.

work. Nos. 13, 16 and 21 are well suited for balustrades, No. 16 being especially adapted for heavy balus-



No. 15.

trades on verandas or over bay windows. Nos. 14, 15 and 17 require no explanation, as they may be adapted



No. 16.

to a thousand different purposes. Nos. 18 and 19 make very handsome drops for verandas and other similar



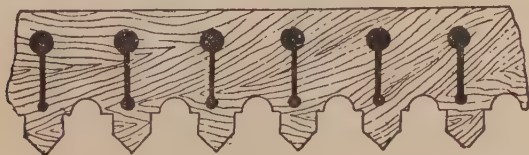
No. 17.

work. No. 29 shows a single drop with the grain of the wood running vertically. A number of these placed



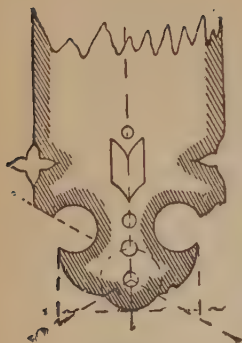
No. 18.

together edge to edge make a very nice trimming for verandas. No. 22 shows a cut bracket which will often

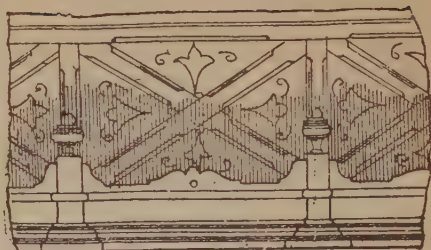


No. 19.

be found useful. No. 23 shows an elaborate railing suitable for a veranda or balcony. No. 24 exhibits a



No 20.



No. 21.



No. 22.



No. 23.



No. 24.



No. 25.

perforated panel suitable for many places. No. 26 shows a portion of a circular panel which may be perforated or the ornaments may be planted on, according to exigencies. See Plates. The balance of the examples shown speak for themselves. They offer a number of excellent suggestions to the progressive workman. These examples will doubtless prove of great value to the workman.

QUESTIONS ON MODERN CARPENTRY

VOL. I.

QUESTIONS.

1. Give definition of a "circle."
2. What term is given to a line that is drawn through center to circumference of a circle?
3. What term is given to a line drawn from center to circumference of a circle?
4. What term is given to a line (less than the diameter) that cuts the circumference of a circle at two points?
5. Give definition of a "tangent."
6. Give definition of a "segment of a circle."
7. Give sketch of a circle showing the "diameter," "radius," "chord," "segment" and "tangent."

8. Give sketch and describe how to find the center of a circle.

9. Into how many equal parts is the measurement of the circumference of a circle divided?

10. Give the three terms used in measurement of the circumference of a circle, and show how they are written.

11. What is a quadrant of a circle?

12. How many degrees are in a quadrant of a circle?

13. How many degrees are in a semi-circle?

14. What term is given to the angle of a circle that is half of a right angle?

15. Give sketch and describe how three right angles may be formed within a semi-circle.

16. Give sketch and describe how a hexagon may be formed within a circle.

17. Give sketch of a hexagon showing how an equilateral triangle may be formed.

18. Give sketch and describe how a right angle or quadrant may be bisected.

19. Give sketch and describe how to get a straight line that shall equal the circumference of a circle or part of a circle or quadrant.

20. Give sketch and show how quadrant may be divided into any number of equal parts, say thirteen.

21. Give sketch and show how equilateral triangle may be employed in forming the trefoil.

22. Give sketch and describe method of finding the "stretch out" or length of circumference of a circle.

23. Give rule by arithmetic of how to find the circumference of a circle.

24. Give sketch and describe how a curve having

any reasonable radius, may be obtained, if but three points in the circumference are available.

25. Give a practical illustration of how to find a place to locate a center, where the diameter is great.

26. What is a "polygon?"

27. Give the names applied to polygons having three sides, four sides, five sides, six sides, seven sides, eight sides, nine sides, ten side, eleven sides, and twelve sides respectively.

28. Give the two names under which polygons are classified.

29. Give sketch showing how a trigon may be constructed and how the miter joint may be obtained.

30. Give sketch and describe how a square may be formed.

31. Give sketch and describe how to construct a pentagon.

32. Give sketch and describe how a hexagon may be formed.

33. Give sketch and describe how a heptagon may be formed.

34. Give sketch and describe how an octagon may be formed.

35. Show practically how all regular octagons may be constructed.

36. Give a practical illustration of how a perpendicular line may be made on any given straight line.

37. Give a practical illustration of how to bisect an angle by the aid of the steel square alone.

38. Give a practical illustration of how to bisect an acute angle by same method—steel square.

39. Show practically how to get a correct miter cut, or angle of 45° on a board.

40. Show how to construct a figure showing an angle of 30° on one side, and on the other an angle of 60° .

41. Show how the diameter of a circle may be obtained through the aid of the steel square.

42. Show how an equilateral triangle may be obtained through use of the steel square.

43. Show how to describe an octagon by using the steel square.

44. Show how a near approximation of the circumference of a circle may be obtained by use of the steel square and a straight line.

45. Give illustration how a board may be divided into any given number of equal parts by aid of steel square or pocket rule.

46. Give the definition of an "ellipse."

47. Give an illustration of one of the simplest methods of describing an ellipse.

48. Give an illustration of projecting an ellipse by using a trammel.

49. Give illustration of describing an ellipse by the intersection of lines.

50. Give illustration of describing an ellipse by the intersection of arcs.

51. Show how radial lines may be obtained for arches and elliptical work.

52. Give an illustration how to describe a diamond or lozenge-shaped figure.

53. Give illustration how to describe a spiral or scroll by a simple method.

54. Give illustration of how a spiral may be described in a scientific manner, and which can be formed to dimension.

55. Give illustration of the method of obtaining a spiral by arcs of circles.

56. Give illustration and method of forming a "parabola."

57. Give illustration and method of forming an "hyperbola."

58. Give the names of the different kinds of arches in buildings.

59. Mention the names given to pointed arches.

60. What is the name given to the stones forming an arch?

61. What is the name given to the centre stone in an arch?

62. Give the names applied to the various divisions of an arch, namely, the highest point, the lowest point, and the spaces between respectively.

63. What is the name given to the under or concave surface of an arch?

64. What is the name given to the upper or convex surface of an arch?

65. What are the names given to the supports of an arch?

66. Show by illustration and describe how to obtain the curves and radiating lines of a semi-circular arch.

67. Show by illustration and describe how to obtain the curves and radiating lines of a segment arch.

68. Show by illustration and describe two examples of Moorish or Saracenic arches, one of which is pointed.

69. What is a "flatband"?

70. Give illustration and describe how to obtain the curves and radiating lines of the elliptic arch.

71. Give illustration and describe how the centers and curves of an equilateral arch may be obtained.

72. Give illustration and describe how the centers and curves of a lancet arch may be obtained.

73. Give illustration and describe how the center and curves of a low or drop arch may be obtained.

74. Give illustration and describe how the centers and curves of a Gothic arch with a still less height, may be obtained.

75. Give illustration and describe another four-centered arch of less height.

76. Give illustration and describe how to obtain an equilateral Ogee arch.

77. Give illustration and describe method of obtaining the lines for an Ogee arch, having a height equal to half the span.

78. Give some instances in carpenter work where half of the Ogee curve is employed.

79. Give a description of the steel square and its several divisions.

80. Give a practical illustration of how a board or scantling may be measured by use of steel square.

81. Give rule how to find hypotenuse of a right-angled triangle.

82. Give an illustration of how length of braces may be obtained by use of the square.

83. Describe the use of the "octagonal scale" on the tongue of the square.

84. Show method how the pitch of a roof may be obtained by use of the square.

85. Show method to obtain bevels and lengths of hip rafters by use of the square.

86. Show method for finding the length and cuts for cross-bridging.

87. Show method for obtaining the "cuts" for octagon and hexagon joints.

88. Show by illustration the method of defining the pitches of roofs, and giving the figures on the square for laying out the rafters for such pitches.

89. Give a short description of what is known as balloon framing, and how the different parts are constructed.

90. Give illustration and describe a "hip-roof."

91. Give illustration and describe a "lean-to-roof."

92. Give illustration and describe a "saddle-roof."

93. Give illustration and describe a "mansard roof."

94. Give illustration and describe a simple hip-roof having a ridge.

95. Give illustration and describe an "octagon roof."

96. Give illustration and describe manner of construction of a "dome roof."

97. Give illustration and rules for construction of an octagonal spire.

98. Give a few illustrations of scarfing timbers.

99. Show a few examples of strengthening and trussing joints, girders and timbers.

100. Explain what is meant by the term "kerfing."

101. Give illustration showing how to determine the number and distances apart of saw kerfs required to bend a board round a corner.

102. Give illustration of how to make a "kerf" for bending round an ellipse.

103. Describe how to bend thick stuff around work that is on a rake.

104. Give illustration and describe how to lay out a hip rafter for a veranda having a curved roof.

105. Give illustration and describe how to obtain

the curve of a hip rafter, when the common rafters have an ogee or concave and convex shape.

106. Give illustration and describe how raking mouldings are used to work in level mouldings.

107. Describe the kind of mouldings called "spring mouldings."

108. Give illustrations showing plan and elevation of cluster column of wood for 4 columns and describe how constructed.

109. Give illustration of a hopper and describe how to be constructed.

110. Give illustration and describe how a conical tower roof may be curved.

111. Give illustration and describe how to cover a dome roof.

112. Give illustration and describe how the semi-circular soffit of a doorway may be made.

113. Describe how a circle soffit may be laid off into panels.

114. Give illustration and describe method for obtaining correct shape of a veneer for a gothic-splayed window or door head.

115. Give illustrations and describe two methods of dovetailing hoppers, trays and other splayed work.

116. Give description of how an ordinary straight flight of stairs may be constructed.

117. Give sketch showing part of a straight stair.

118. Give sketch showing stair with winders and landing.

119. Give sketch and describe a stair with brackets.

120. Give sketch showing stair with two newels and balusters, also paneled string and spandrel.

121. Give sketches of seven of the latest designs for doors.

122. Give five sketches showing methods of constructing and finishing a window frame for weighted sash.

123. Give sketches showing the various parts of a bay window for a balloon frame.

124. Give illustration and describe six examples of shingling roofs.

125. Show by sketch how panels are formed.

126. Describe the various kinds of panels named.

127. Make sketch of a four-panel door.

128. How are air-tight cases made? Describe the method of making.

129. What is meant by the word "stile"?

130. What is a rail in a door? What is a muntin?

131. What is a chamfer? Describe one.

132. Examine examples of sketches of ornamental wood-work, draw and describe a "baye-board."

133. Make a design of perforated insular panel.

INDEX

A

Airtight wall case.....	195
Angle bars at different angles.....	131
Arches, elliptical	63
Flat	62
Four centered	65
Horseshoe	62
Lancet	64
Lintel	63
Ogee	66
Segmental	61
Architrave of door.....	263

B

Balloon framing, description of.....	173
Balusters and turned work.....	68
Bay window frames, sections of.....	174
Bending blocks for splayed heads.....	153
Bevels and cuts for rafters.....	83
Bevels for hips, jack rafters and purlins.....	85
Bisecting angles	28
Bisecting angles with steel square.....	34
Boxes for different measures, sizes of.....	185
Brace rule	73
Braces, table of.....	75
Brick work	187

INDEX

C

Case making	195
Centers, finding	20
Circle, the	9
Circular door entrances.....	152
Cisterns, capacity of.....	192
Cluster columns	133
Cluster columns, bases and capitals of.....	133
Cornices on a rake, inside.....	132
Cutting bridging	78
Cutting raking mouldings in miter box.....	130
Cycloidal curves	57

D

Degrees	14
Dividing lines	79
Door, architrave of.....	263
Architrave of a four paneled.....	256
Casings	249
Doors, batten and braced.....	242
Construction of	240
Description of	170
Four paneled	254
Joints of stiles and rails.....	251
Names of different parts.....	245
Paneled	245
Styles of	169
Dovetailing	156
Blind	159
Common	157
Lapped	158
Splayed	159

INDEX

E

Ellipses, spirals and other curves.....	41
Elliptical curves, description of.....	46
Excavations	184

F

Flashings for valleys.....	177
Flexible radial guide.....	49
Framing corners, etc.....	91
Sills, etc.	87
Triangular	109

H

Hopper cuts, housed.....	137
Hopper lines, compound.....	143
Hoppers, butt cuts for.....	136
Corner blocks for.....	139
Corner blocks for obtuse.....	140
Miter cuts for.....	135
Miters for obtuse.....	142
Miters for square.....	141
Regular	134

J

Jack rafters, lengths of.....	102
Joiner's work generally.....	167

K

Kerfed stuff, bending.....	119
Kerfing for an ellipse.....	120
Kerfing on a rake.....	121
Kerfs, laying out.....	118

INDEX

L

Laying out curved hips.....	123
Curved hips and jack rafters.....	125
Ogee hips and rafters.....	124
Raking mouldings for circular pediments.....	129
Loads, safe-bearing	192
Lumber, measurement table.....	182
Rule	71

M

Masonry	185
Materials for roofs, weight of.....	189
Strength of	182
Miscellaneous illustrations	172
Mitering circular and straight mouldings.....	122
Circular mouldings	121
Curved mouldings in panels.....	122
Mortise and tennon in timber.....	111
Mouldings	67

N

Nails and tacks, number per pound.....	193
Number of required in carpentry work.....	185

O

Octagon rule on steel square.....	76
Octagons	30
Ornamental woodwork	259
Ornamentation	18
Ovals	50

INDEX

P

Panels, forms of.....	229
Parabola and its uses.....	56
Pitch-board and strings.....	160
Pitches, laying off.....	81
Polygons	22

Q

Questions for students.....	267
-----------------------------	-----

R

Rafter rule by steel square.....	76
Raking mouldings	126
Raking mouldings for pediments.....	128
Reinforcing timber	113
Roof, core for conical.....	150
Covering of a conical.....	149
Inclined domical	151
Roofs and roofing generally.....	96
Covering domical	150
Domical	105
Lines for hip.....	98
Octagon hip	99
Sisser	104
Trussed	103

S

Setting rail and newel post.....	164
Shingles, table for estimating.....	184
Shingling	184
Different methods	175
Hip rafters	175

INDEX

Shingling—Continued.

Illustrations of	176
Valleys	175
Siding, flooring and laths.....	184
Slates, number of, required per square yard.....	188
Slating	188
Snow and wind loads.....	189
Soffits, Gothic	155
Splayed	154
Solutions of problems with steel square.....	34
Spirals	52
Spires and spire framing.....	108
Steps bracketed	165
Method of forming	165
Stair building	159
Stairs, dog-legged	162
Open string	164
Various styles of	168
Winding	163
Steel square, description of.....	70
Straight line solutions	32
Strapping timber	112
Superficial or flat measure, table of.....	183

T

Tangents	11
Timber scarfing	110
Timber measure, round and equal-sided.....	183
Treads and risers, table of.....	163
Treads, risers and strings.....	161
Trimming stairs, chimneys, etc.....	89
Trussing and strengthening timber.....	114
Turned mouldings and carved newels.....	174

INDEX

W

Weights and measures, cubic or solid.....	191
Land measure	190
Linear measure	191
Miscellaneous measures	191
Square measure	191
United States measure.....	190
Window frames and sections.....	171
Wind pressure on roofs.....	193

The Up-to-Date Hardwood Finisher

INTRODUCTORY

Wood is, and always has been, one of the most important and useful materials that Dame Nature has vouchsafed to bless humanity with, and the latter's necessities and ingenuity have made the best of the circumstances.

It need hardly be said that Nature seemed to have well understood the wants of her children and provided for them in a most liberal manner, for it is said that nearly one-third of the earth's surface is covered by trees; all of which are, in some form or another, contributory to the wants and pleasures of man.

The introduction of machinery for the rapid working of nearly all kinds of intricate mouldings and shapes of woodwork has, in a great measure, had a tendency to elevate the taste of the whole community, though I must confess that artistic excellence of a high order, in the mechanical arts, is now scarcely found among our younger workmen, machinery having almost done away with the necessity for the fine kinds of hand and brain work. Fashion, which rules despotically in the wardrobe, influences, to a greater or lesser degree, the style and finish of woodwork and, to a certain extent, the kind of wood that must be used for certain purposes. Thirty or forty years ago no other

wood than clean white pine would be permitted to do service in a building. All woodwork had to be pine; floors, doors, windows, even to the bath fittings. Then Dame Fashion sent forth her decree and a mixture of white and Southern pine was used, followed shortly afterward by the abominable mixture of ash, walnut and chestnut. Some architect, who deserves well of his country, introduced all walnut and all mahogany fittings; and at once people of taste who saw this manner of finish noticed its superiority over the medley; and the fashion then of finishing in one kind of wood became the rage. Walnut was found too dark for general purposes and was soon abandoned for the lighter woods; chestnut, sycamore, ash, cherry, birch and oak were then tried, but I believe I voice the opinion of a majority of architects when I say that, with the exception of oak, the light-colored woods were not successful, from an æsthetic point of view, and it is on record that many buildings finished in these woods have since had their woodwork cleaned and stained to imitate darker woods or have been painted. One of the valuable qualities of white oak is, that it grows richer in color as it gets older, and no matter how it is finished, so long as the grain is visible, it mellows and improves with age. This is a quality that no other of our American woods possesses in the same degree. All the oaks have this quality to a certain extent, but the white oak (*Quercus alba*) possesses it more than any other. Mahogany, too, has this quality largely, if true Spanish mahogany is used, but little of this is in the market; though there are many woods that have the appearance of mahogany, and are called mahogany, such as cherry and black birch, and both buyer and

user are oftentimes deceived, and pay for what they do not get.

Americans have often been reproached with willfully or ignorantly ignoring or destroying their own handsome woods, while importing from abroad at excessive cost, and the payment of heavy duties, foreign woods which are much inferior to many of native growth. This folly prevailed at a time when it was fashionable and even popular to believe there was no merit in domestic productions of any sort. This state of things, however, is now at an end, and in the neighborhood of all large towns, and in country places as well, a finish in hardwood is the rule, and a finish in pine the exception, if the building to be finished makes any pretension of being "up to the times."

With regard to the difference in cost between a finish in the best clear pine, and the best selected hardwood, there is really but little, if any, if we take into consideration durability and good taste. As between pine wood and good, well finished hardwood, the disparity in value and merit is so very little as to completely silence any comparison. Between poor pine and poor hardwood the preference should be by all means given to the former; because poor pine as it reveals its defects can be puttied and painted in a manner to disguise them; whereas the defects of poor hardwood are almost incurable. The rationale of the subject seems to resolve itself into the following statement:

Modern taste in expensive dwellings calls for the free use of hardwoods. It is immaterial which are used, but highly essential that the best seasoned woods should be selected; and, further, that they should be skillfully treated and finished.

The principal recommendation of hardwood is that it admits of a treatment which renders it impervious to the effects of atmospheric changes and, therefore, can be made more durable and ultimately less expensive than pine wood. A hardwood that is well seasoned before use, that is treated with proper fillers to close up its pores, and then finished with successive coats of suitable varnish, well rubbed in with pumice-stone, being finally brought to a higher flat finish, presents the most attractive, serviceable and reliable style of woodwork than can be introduced into a house. Well finished hardwood obviates the expense and annoyance of constant renewals, which pine work calls for in patching, puttying and painting. The most brilliant gloss of finished hardwood can be restored by a skilled person without disturbing the furniture or carpets of a house.

Pine work seems peculiarly and incomparably adapted for cheap work. A good article of common pine, suitable for ordinary work, can be procured and worked at considerably less expense than would be involved in using good hardwood. The use of poor hardwood in any work should not be tolerated or thought of under any circumstances, for the simple reason that it is certain to create annoyance and expense, which no house-owner, especially of moderate priced property, should be subjected to.

Pine, however, is not the only soft wood that may be used in house finishing, but it is the most popular, because the most plentiful and doubtless the most satisfactory to deal with. Basswood, poplar, elm, whitewood, spruce and hemlock all make fairly good finishing woods when properly selected and properly treated; but, with the exception of elm, perhaps, all

of them require to be either painted or stained before a good finish can be obtained. Elm, black ash and chestnut have all coarse grain, and are unsuited for tasteful work, though all right for ordinary fitments; and indeed may be used for kitchen or bathroom finish in fairly good houses. Later on I will deal with each one of them, and some other of our native woods at length.

The present methods of hardwood finishing are comparatively new, so far as the manner of operation and materials are concerned; as I can find nothing dating farther back than 1850 in the vast amount of literature at my command that treats in any way intelligently on the subject; true, there are methods of varnishing, lacquering and French polishing given; also treatment on finishing in wax, notably a small pamphlet containing a treatise on "The Shining Up of Woodwork," dating as far back as 1809, and published in London. This little treatise is the first to make mention of a wood-filler being employed. The author says that "the pores of the wood ought to be sealed up with a mixture made of ground chalk or rotten stone coloured like the wood, and mixed with glue water. Cover the work to be shined up with the mixture, then wipe off and when hard and dry, smooth off finely with shark-skin and hair-cloth." He then goes on to show how to finish in wax or with shellac, as the case may be. He says nothing of French polishing, but gives directions for varnishing and rubbing down with rotten stone.

To-day there are quite a number of works published on wood-finishing, which shows how much interest is taken in the subject.

The introduction of the modern methods of polishing

finished woodwork has so reduced the cost of fine furniture and elaborately finished woodwork, that now the poor man may have in his house one or more pieces of finely wrought work, as well as the man of wealth. French polishing was a costly operation, and made more costly because of the secrecy surrounding the process. Experts were bound not to teach others the process unless they were well paid for it, and the pupil was compelled to take a solemn oath that he would not divulge the secret or convey to others the method, unless he was paid a large sum, often as high as \$100. French polish when well done is certainly a fine finish, and while still costly, is often employed in finishing high-class furniture and woodwork in costly buildings, but its general use is rapidly falling off; yet no wood-finisher is completely rounded off unless he has thorough knowledge of the best French polishing, and in the present work I purpose giving a thorough description of this method, with illustrations of the appliances made use of in the process.

While it is not my intention to write a treatise on the useful woods of America, I do not think it will be out of place to describe a few of them, showing their manner of growth, their peculiarities, durability, and the uses they can be put to, with directions for working and finishing them.

In every description of wood the elementary composition of the organic tissue is the same, but the latter is found associated with very variable organic elements, according to the species of the tree.

Pine trees, for example, contain turpentine, and oak trees tannin. The combustible part of wood is this same organic tissue.

The exterior characteristics of woods are very different from one another. Thus certain wood is soft and tender and of a loose tissue, whilst another is hard and of a compact grain. Thence there is quite a natural division into two classes. The first includes all the soft and tender woods, amongst which may be mentioned the pines, white wood or plane tree, bass-wood, poplar, etc. The second includes all the heavy and hard wood, such as the oaks, maples, beech, birch, cherry, walnut, etc.

When wood is first cut down as timber, it contains from 40 to 45 per cent of water, but this quantity gradually lessens until it is said to be thoroughly seasoned, when it only contains from 5 to 7 per cent. Moisture, however, is always present in wood, and as it gets older, if exposed to the air, will take in from 10 to 15 per cent. It then becomes very hydrometrical, and loses or absorbs water according to the state of dryness or humidity of the surrounding air.

The density of wood, like that of all porous bodies, can be considered in two different ways, and can be looked for under its apparent volume. The only method which can then be employed consists in forming a block of the wood, the volume of which can be easily measured, and then taking the weight of it. The ratio of this weight to that of the same bulk of water would be the density sought for. This density for the same wood varies according to the degree of seasoning it has had, and to the form and position of the fibers in the sample. A block six inches square cut from a knot, or burl, or a cross-grained part of a tree, would be considerably more dense, and weigh more, than would a block of a similar size cut from the same tree, if it was straight-grained and uniform.

It is the density of the harder woods that makes them popular with wood-finishers. A hard, close-grained wood requires little or no filler, and offers better opportunities to the polisher than do the woods of lesser density.

The use of nearly all kinds of hardwood in the general finish of good houses, has completely taken the place of using pine or other soft woods in wainscoting, floors, doors and general fitments. The variety of the woods employed in these finishings has greatly increased within the last few years. How so many of these beautiful and suitable woods could have fallen into disuse within the present century is one of the decorative mysteries of this period. Walnut, which was the pioneer of the new departure, still remains in use, where cost is no object, although its dull color and unpolished surface are dingy and somber. It has had its use, however, in directing attention to the employment of solid woods, though it is now on the retired list. Mahogany is at present in high favor, the variety known as San Domingo mahogany being especially rare and desirable. When new it has a reddish yellow tone, which grows dark and rich with age. The old wood is much in demand for use in interior finishings and for furniture, and the genuine old pieces are highly prized by their possessors. Cherry is popular for common use, though at first falsified by the red stain, which destroyed its natural beauty and gave it no artificial excellence. Unstained cherry has a yellowish brown color, polishes well, and is excellent for interior woodwork, its moderate cost making it available for general use, though now getting very scarce. If any stain is required, it should be in the dark tones resembling mahogany color.

Black birch is one of the most beautiful native woods, having a grain resembling that of mahogany, and taking a fine satin-like polish. Unstained, it has a warm, rich yellow tone, and its darkened finish can hardly be distinguished from the more costly tropical wood. Yellow birch, though less beautiful and costly, is excellent in grain and color and is often used for fine floorings. The different varieties of oak are well adapted to interior uses, the wood being solid and durable, while each year of wear adds a depth and richness of color and a smoothness and polish to its dark surface. It has a beautiful grain, and is a popular wood for interior finishings and the floors of modern houses. After centuries of wear this useful wood is found in the houses of both humble and royal history as black and smooth as ebony. Butternut resembles oak in color, though not in grain, polishes finely and takes a carved decoration well, and ash and elm are often found as deceptive substitutes for oak, especially in its darker or so-called antique stains. Rosewood is one of the most beautiful woods in use, rich and deep in tone and capable of a mirror-like finish. It is costly enough to keep the merit of rarity.

Apple wood carves finely and polishes well, making excellent panels; so also does the wood of the pear tree. Maple is in high favor, bird's-eye maple being one of the choicest of the light-colored woods, and especially suited to dainty and sumptuous uses. Chestnut and ash are serviceable and inexpensive light woods.

As these woods come into more general use, their genuineness and elegance giving to the houses in which they are placed one of the strongest assurances of that permanency which is the best element of the new

Renaissance, they will be more and more enriched with ornament. And here it will be difficult to avoid the besetting sin of abundant means and inartistic taste, which unfortunately are so often found in company. The honesty of material and the uses which it serves should never be concealed under complex decoration. Most hardwoods are beautiful enough in grain and color to give lasting satisfaction, and for every-day use no decoration beyond a touch of good carving should be applied. Where something more sumptuous is sought, carving and inlaying will make them elegant enough to satisfy the most exacting taste, and when properly varnished or polished no other method of decoration can excel it in beauty or refinement.

I have deemed the foregoing introduction necessary, as it will enable the workman to have some idea of the development of the art of joinery, and the transition from the use of pine and the softer wood to that of the hard wood.

In the following, it is my intention to take each of the woods most in use; describe them, say what I think they are best adapted for, and the best way to finish them, as far as my knowledge extends. By this means the reader will have, under one head, all the book contains concerning the particular wood he is about to finish.

THE BETTER WOODS TO MAKE USE OF

The wood most made use of at the present writing for interior finish, is oak. It is made into doors, sashes, stairs, base, cabinet cases, and wainscot.

The working of oak, particularly in the framing up of panel-work, differs somewhat from ordinary pine or other soft wood panel-work, inasmuch as the latter is

generally painted and picked out in two or more colors; thus rendering it imperative to use sound stuff, and to have the work above suspicion. The material is generally so thin that the paneling should be stiffened with stout canvas glued to the back, which is often primed with red-lead paint to afford protection from

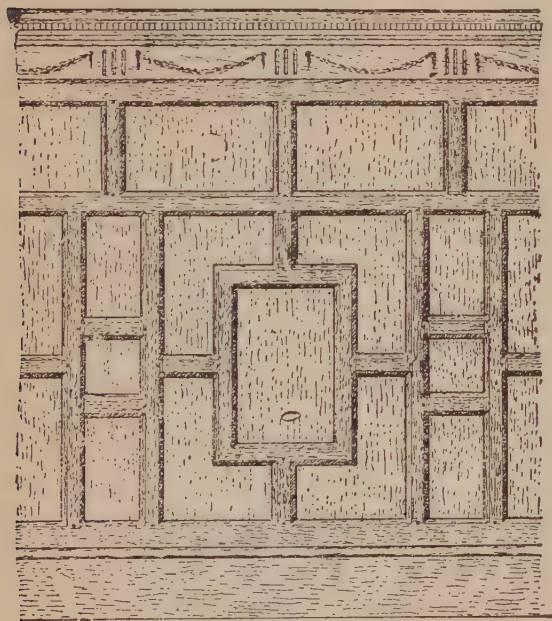


FIG. 1



FIG. 2

damp when the work is to be placed in a new building. It is usual to frame up the work with stuff varying in thickness from seven-eighths of an inch to one and a quarter inches, finished sizes. In some workshops it is not considered necessary to clean up the back of the work, though I think it always best to dress down the

joints on the back, and true it up with plane and straight-edge. All joints should be close and perfect, and tenons and mortises should be in the center of the stuff, and all should be well glued together and left to dry before fixing.

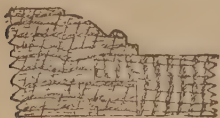


FIG. 3

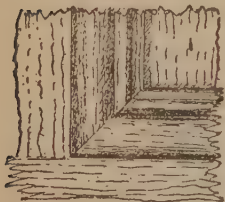


FIG. 4

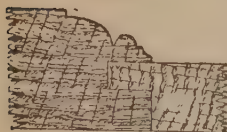


FIG. 5

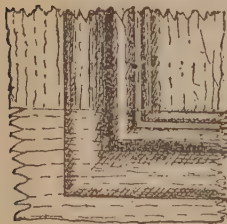


FIG. 6

The panel-work shown in Fig. 1 is framed with $1\frac{1}{4}$ in. stuff, got to thickness and widths as shown in Fig. 2. The center framing is mitered together at the corners, which are further strengthened by the insertion of a cross-tongue joint, while the side rails and top and bottom muntins are tenoned and pinned like all the other tenons in the framing. The moulding stuck on the edges (or in the solid) is not mitered in the same way as for ordinary work (see Figs. 3 and 4); but the mitered corners are worked as shown in Figs. 5 and 6, thus forming butt joints with mason-mitered corners to all moulded edges. These corners are worked on the bench after the paneling is glued up and cleaned off.

The bottom rail is tongued into the skirting as shown in Fig. 8, and the top rail meets the festooned frieze board under the small necking mould as shown, the frieze board being tongued to the dentiled cornice also. This cornice is double-dentiled, one row of dentils being cut farther back than the other, as shown

in Figs. 7 and 8. As usual with built-up cornices, this section can be worked on the four-cutter moulder or on a spindle machine; the dentiling, however, being

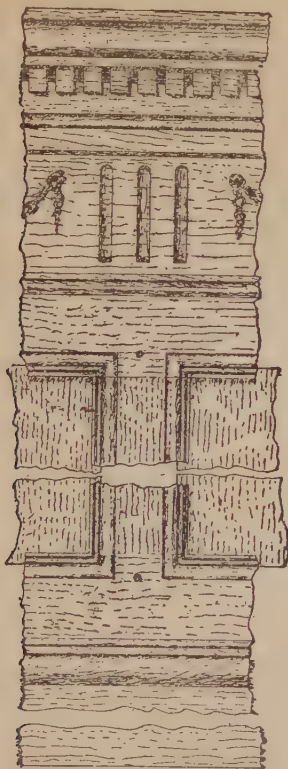


FIG. 7



FIG. 8

best cut by hand. A cover-board lies at the back of the cornice, which is back rebated to receive the front edge of the cover-board. The three flutes over the top muntins have rounded-out top ends, and finish at

the bottom on a splay; whilst the festoons are preferably cut out of the solid, but are generally planted on unless otherwise specified.

In fixing this class of work, which is, as a rule, screwed up, all fixing screws should be hidden, or the holes should be bored to take "corks" a little larger than the screw head, and the "corks" should be cut from wood closely matching that in which the hole is bored. The framing must be fixed as true and upright as possible (especially at external corners where mitered vertical joints occur), and be well scraped and cleaned down after the fixing is done.

The illustrations are reproduced to the following scales: Figs. 1 and 2 are three-eighths of an inch to the foot; Figs. 3 to 6, half full size; Figs. 7 and 8, one and a half inches to the foot.

While it is not the intention to enter into the subject of joinery in this work, it will not be out of place to make a few remarks on the manner of doing some odd jobs of work that are not generally discussed in books of this kind, or if discussed, are not done so with a view of showing how the wood should be prepared for the polisher. The examples given in the foregoing are only offered as an illustration of how similar work should be prepared when made from solid wood. Where the work is composed of material "built up" or veneered, the manner of preparing it for the finisher may be very different, but this I will discuss later on.

Suppose a column, or a pillar or spindle is required having a spiral form. Unless the workman is well acquainted with the method of laying out spirals, he will be up against a proposition which he will find difficult to solve. To meet a condition of this kind, 1

show the following method of setting out such work. This example is intended to be prepared for the lathe, but, of course, it may be executed without the aid of a lathe, but in such case much patience and skill will be required.

The sketch Fig. 9 shows the method of setting out the twist or spiral. First turn the wood round; then divide the circumference into four with lines, as shown, marked all the way down. Then, having decided on the size of your twist—and the same details apply to any size and depth—mark the cross-lines, and then the diagonals, which you can easily do with a twist of the leg in the lathe, and both sides as shown by dotted lines. The gouge, held in this direction, will follow the required twist. It is supposed the operator is acquainted with lathe work to some extent, and is aware of the methods and appliances made use of in turning spirals, and the sketch is only intended to instruct him in the manner of laying out the spiral. This will be found useful even in work where the column, etc., is not turned in a lathe, but is wrought by hand.

Handwork of almost every kind in woodwork is rapidly going out of fashion—more the pity—but now and again, men are found who insist on having their work done by hand, and it is well that every joiner should know how to go about the work with intelligence when such work is required. With this idea in view, I give herewith a few instructions and illustrations to help the



FIG. 9.

workman when he is confronted with problems such as I have indicated.

Often dovetailing—an almost lost art—has to be done by hand on some particular job or piece of work, and, in order to prepare the workman for this purpose, I offer the following instructions, and give the accompanying illustration, which I think will materially aid him in his efforts.

Dovetailing to a great many young workmen proves a pitfall, yet, when the method of laying out the work is once understood, it all seems easy enough. A dovetail joint, if made properly, requires no screws or nails, to hold it together or to bring the parts down to a proper joint; but in order to attain perfection there are one or two points which must be attended to when making this kind of joint. First, the stuff must be faced up properly, using the trying plane, on the flat surface. In passing, I will just mention that in dovetailing, whether boxes, drawers, or whatever is being made, the face *side* is always the *inside*, and the face *edge* is the bottom *edge*.

Another point which is often neglected is to put in plenty of "pins" or dovetails. A very good rule for ordinary work in soft wood is to space them not less than $1\frac{1}{2}$ in., or more than $2\frac{1}{4}$ in., from center to center; for hard wood, or for small work in thin wood, they should be spaced closer still.

In setting out the pins, or rather the mortises in which the pins have to fit, a half dovetail should be placed at both top and bottom, as shown in Fig. 10, and the intermediate "tails" should be brought to an extreme point as shown at B in the drawings—that is, if neatness is an object; but if this has to give way to

strength, then "tails" of the shape shown in Fig. 11, should be used.

The bevels of the "tails" should be as shown in the drawings, and in no case should they be shaped as at M, Fig. 14. If made like that, there would be great danger of the sides splitting off at E, and although this shape at first sight would appear to be stronger than the other, it is really not so in

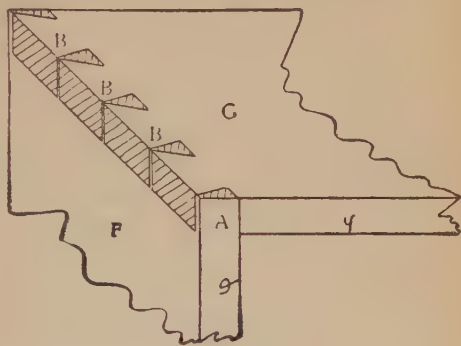


FIG. 10

practice. Also if one, two or three, or even more articles of the same size are being made, the dovetails need not be set out on one piece only. The whole could be placed together in pairs as shown in

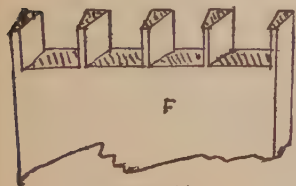


FIG. 11

Fig. 12, and the marks squared over as shown, then screwed in the vise together, and all cut at once with a fine tenon or back-saw, first of all sawing all the pieces off to exactly the same length.

To mark the pins, screw one of the ends upright in the bench vise, with the top end about half an inch above the bench top, as at F, Fig. 13, taking care to keep the face side toward the bench. Then lay one of the sides on it, as at G, so that the squared-over marks

on the edges of G coincide with the inside of F, as at H. With the front end of the same saw as was used to

cut the "tails," used as shown at I, mark the position of each one on the end grain, and, before removing the side board, number each piece as shown in the figure so that it is known which pieces go together.

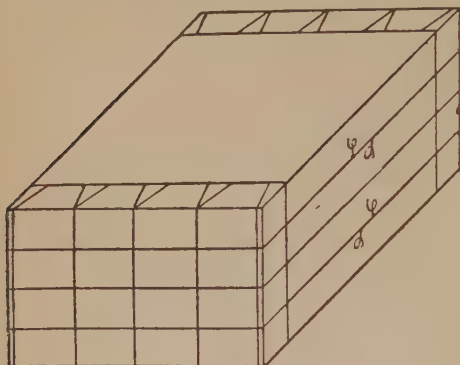


FIG. 12

All four corners of each job in hand must be done in the same way, unless perhaps the work is for drawers or where the front only is required to be dovetailed, although particular notice must be taken that the face *side* of the vertical piece must be towards the bench, and the horizontal piece underneath; and in addition remember that the face edges of both pieces

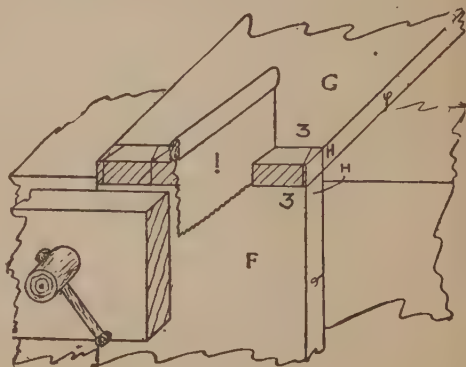


FIG. 13

must always come together. These are the edges which

must be kept level while marking. Neglect of these points is the reason of failure to produce good work when making dovetailed joints.

In cutting the "pins" some regard must be paid to the kind of wood being used; soft pine requires more wood left outside the marks than oak or other hardwoods, but taking ordinary work in any of the softer woods, about a sixty-fourth of an inch clear on each side of the mark will be ample, leaving rather less at the two half dovetails at the edges.

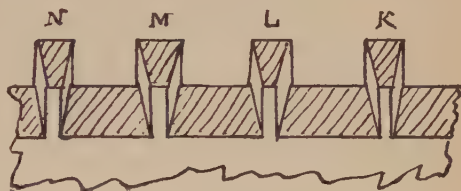


FIG. 14

I should have stated before that in cutting off the stuff for the ends of the box (or whatever is in hand) about half an inch extra length should be allowed, and in squaring across, this extra length should be given to the pin at each end, to be cut when the job is put together.

Before the pins are sawed down, the marks on the



FIG. 15

outside (that is, where they come to a point) must be squared down as a guide

for sawing parallel with the edges of the boards. This is a somewhat important part, and in Fig. 14 I have endeavored to show how they should and should not be cut. The "pin" K is parallel from point to heel, and this is correct, but not easy to manage. The "pin" at L is cut wedge-shaped, larger at the heel than at the

point, which is bad, being liable to split the boards, and also to show a badly fitting joint outside. M is cut slightly smaller at the heel than at the point, which is a good fault—there is no fear of splitting, and, unless overdone, a good fitting joint will result. N is cut out of parallel, which is the worst of all, and must on no account be done.

All the pins being cut, the spare wood must be cut out, using very thin, sharp chisels. Some workers use a bow saw to remove the spare wood between the pins, but I do not consider it any advantage—the chisel has to be used after, and it is quicker to remove all the wood with the chisel at one time.



FIG. 16

I must not forget to emphasize the fact that it is necessary, in setting out, to use knife or chisel for all cross lines, both on the sides and ends. Pencil will not do at all, if good work is expected.

Before putting together, each “pin” must be slightly pointed on all three sides, as shown in Fig. 15, so that they will enter freely, without bruising the wood.

When putting together, the “pins” should be well glued and the sides driven on at once, using a block which is large enough to reach quite across the whole work. If this is omitted, splitting is apt to result.

I have not touched upon putting the work together, as I do not think it necessary, because when the dovetails and “pins” are properly cut, they will be found to go together without any paring or cutting. Indeed, dovetails of any kind requiring fitting before going together may be put down as a botch job and unfit to be further finished.

In this, I have dealt only with simple work, but

there are other kinds of dovetailing, and I present several of them below.

In the figure shown at 17, the end view of a "lap dovetail" is represented, a style which is well known to every joiner who is familiar with drawer making. The method is the same as described as regards the sides, but the ends of the front are gauged on a certain distance, which should, if possible, be the same as the thickness of the sides, and the dovetails are



FIG. 17

stopped at the gauge mark. The method of marking is the same as before, and the only difference is in cutting the "pin," which has to be done largely with the chisel, as the saw can only be used to start them with.

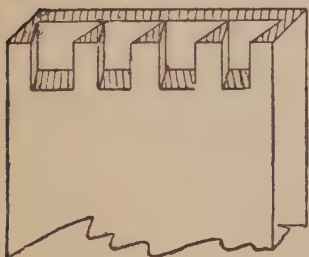


FIG. 18

The appearance of the "pins" when cut is shown in Fig. 18, and those who can do the ordinary dovetailing will have no difficulty in making the "lap" dovetail.

In Fig. 19 is shown what is sometimes called "secret," but it is really double lap dovetailing. One part is done as shown in the figure, making the mortises the same size as the pins, and cutting them as shown. The corresponding member is worked as in Fig. 17, the necessary marking being done as in Fig. 13, and marking round point, then cutting them out with

saw and chisel. The appearance of this when done is shown in Fig. 20, which is the one marked A, at the side, and Fig. 21, on the top edges; and as will be readily understood, very careful work is necessary in



FIG. 19



FIG. 20

order to make a good job, and, presuming this, the joint is as strong as the ordinary dovetail.

By mitering the top edges, as in Fig. 22, the appearance of this part is as Fig. 23, and if done properly is an improvement. It does not add much to the difficulty of making the joint.

Secret dovetailing proper is a difficult job for any but an experienced man to undertake, but I will deal

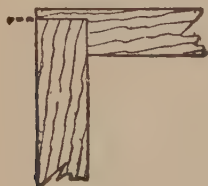


FIG. 21



FIG. 22

with it later on if space permits. It makes a good strong joint if done well, and the appearance is the same as a mitered joint.

Sometimes the end of the drawers, as shown in Fig.

23, is rounded off as shown in Fig. 22, and when such is the case, the drawer projects from the face of the framework as shown by the dotted lines.

In order to enable the workman to better understand the whole theory of dovetailing, I present herewith a couple of sketches which show how secret lap dovetailing may be executed in several ways. Figs. 19 and 24 show how the pins and mortises are laid out when the pins are simply no more than a square tenon.



FIG. 23

Secret lap dovetailing is used for a great variety of objects, such as sewing machine covers, instrument cases, etc. Where the dovetails require to be hidden it is not so important that the joint should be at an angle, as the corners can be rounded up to the joint. The difference between secret and plain lap dovetailing is that in the secret method the pins are shortened

and the dovetails not cut through, as shown in Figs. 17 and 18, and when put together, in Fig. 22.



FIG. 24

Miter dovetailing, Figs. 25 and 26, is a much more intricate operation, and calls

for greater care on the part of the workman. After carefully planing up the wood to a thickness, first gauge on the inside only the thickness of the lap on the end, remembering that the gauge for the lap will also be the gauge by which the ends of the pins and dovetails will be shortened, as shown in Fig. 27, where

the dotted lines show the manner in which each piece must be rebated. After rebating, cut the pins, then mark the dovetails and chop them out, after which proceed to miter the laps on both pieces and cut the

Mitre Dovetailing



FIG. 25



FIG. 26

miter across the edge, and, if neatly done, the joint will go together at the first trial.

Bevel or splay dovetailing is much more difficult than any of the preceding, and is not so generally known. The required bevel being given, proceed as follows: First joint the ends to the required bevel, then, without changing the angle, joint the bottom edge to the same bevel as the ends, working from the inside. Now comes the most important part of the operation. The ends must be beveled on the thickness of the wood. This is obtained by laying the blade of the square on the beveled bottom edge, then shooting the ends to the square, working still from the inside of the wood.



FIG. 27

If this part is omitted, the result will be that when the job is put together it will be not only open on the inside but will not be level on the outside—more or less, according to the angle of the sides. Gauge on the thickness of the wood as for

plain dovetailing. In cutting the pins, a center line through these should be parallel with the bevel of the bottom edge as shown in Fig. 28, and not cut square to the inside of the job as in plain dovetailing. If this be neglected, and the angle is much, the dovetails will be cut across the grain, and have no strength. After marking the pin with a marking point, before cutting the dovetails, mark them across the ends also, parallel to the bevel of the bottom edge as in Fig. 29,

Bevel Dovetailing

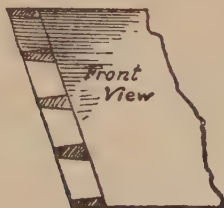


FIG. 28



FIG. 29

and cut accordingly. I would strongly advise the workman who has never made a bevel dovetail to try it upon two pieces of wood, as more will be learned from a little practice when the difficulties have to be surmounted than from any amount of study.

The illustrations shown in Figs. 30 and 31 will convey to the reader a better idea of lap and miter dovetail than the previous ones. Fig. 30 shows the finished corner, the face of the work being shown at F. This may be rounded off if it is so desired. Fig. 31 shows a corner all ready to be driven together, which will have a mitered lap. AA shows both front and side; the shaded laps show the miters.

Another style of bevel dovetailing is shown in Fig. 32, where the pins are at right angles with the line of

slope as shown at AA and BB. This style of dovetailing is well adapted for trays, hoppers and similar work. All stuff intended to be used in bevel or splayed work, that is to be dovetailed, must be prepared with butt joints before the dovetails are laid out. Joints of this kind may be made common, lapped or

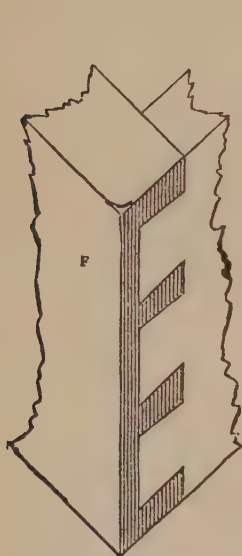


FIG. 30

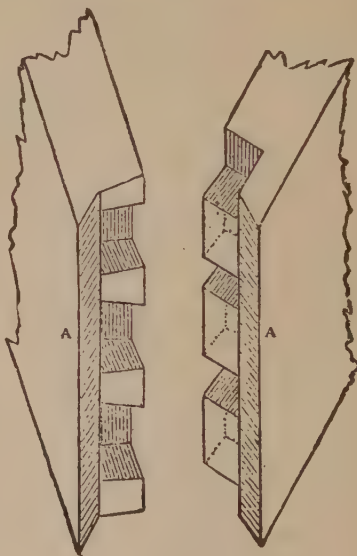


FIG. 31

mitered. In making the latter, much skill and labor will be required.

In making veneered doors there are a number of different methods practiced by workmen, but it is not in the province of this work to describe them all, or indeed, any of them at great length, but when a number of veneered doors are to be made at one time, the following method, which is adopted in some large

factories, may offer some suggestions that may be found useful:

The first operation is to take common coarse white pine boards, with sound knots, and which have been well kiln-dried, the stock used being generally 16 feet long, 1x12 inches, and surface it on both sides by a Daniels planer without regard to thickness. Some boards are thinner than others, while others are warped in drying, and the thickness of the boards is



FIG. 32

immaterial, perfectly seamed surfaces only being necessary. After the stock is planed it is cut into such lengths as the bill of doors calls for. They are ready now to be glued up. The face board, of what ever hardwood is to be used, is planed generally to $\frac{3}{4}$ inch thick, and is also run through a Daniels planer. The stock is now ready to go to the gluing press, and as the Daniels planer makes the best gluing surface in the world, no scratch planing is needed. After properly heating in a box the stock is brought out and carefully glued, the hardwood face parts being marked for it. From three to five parts are put in the press at

one time, and a pressure of 20 tons, brought down by screws, is put upon these parts. After remaining in the press the proper time they are taken out, and generally remain several days before being worked up, which gives the glue plenty of time to harden. When ready to work again these parts are taken to a Daniels planer and squared up, after which the parts are taken to a very nice cutting table or bench saw, and are cut up to sizes required, leaving them $\frac{1}{8}$ inch large for future dressing. It is a positive necessity that the saw cuts free and clear, as heating has a tendency to warp the stock or spring it slightly, which would make it necessary to dress the stuff again. If the saw does not heat, the stiles come out perfectly straight, and these stiles can be laid on a Daniels planer bed and a light shaving taken off. They are now straight, and if the saw table is in good condition, square; the other side may be finished with pony planer or with a Daniels. A Daniels is preferred, because it makes a better gluing surface. The work is now ready for the veneering, the thickness of which is immaterial, as it may vary from the thickness of thin paper to $\frac{1}{4}$ inch. Heated cauls are now used for the veneer, and the stiles, if heated at all, are just warmed and the veneer glued on by piling up with a hot caul between each stile. The old-fashioned way of making veneered doors may do very well when only two or three doors are to be made, but in these days of sharp competition, manufacturers are obliged to adopt the quickest methods compatible with efficiency and good finish.

The doors or other work—for this method will apply to wainscot or any similar work—should be placed in a dry room for a day or two, when they may be finished up and made ready for the polisher or varnisher.

If first-class doors are required, it is always better to build up the stuff for the stiles and rails, and glue them together before they are veneered. A white pine door is about the only door that can be made successfully from solid wood. In a house with, say, a dozen doors, what other wood is there that will absolutely hold its place during a reasonable period? Certainly yellow pine will not do it. A solid oak door is a pest, and should not be put in a house except under written instructions. Sycamore cannot be used solid, and certainly neither gum nor maple. Possibly walnut or butternut might, but who would think of using them under present conditions?

The door shown in Fig. 33 is an illustration of one of the most serviceable doors made. The section of stile shown in Fig. 34 will give an idea of the manner in which the stiles and rails are built up; the veneer showing on the outside, also the panel.

Work of this kind may be used outside as well as for inside, and no one need fear unpainted white pine or oak for outside work. There is in Europe abundance of woodwork, exterior and interior, that has not been tickled by a brush in over five hundred years. All the native Swiss cottages are unpainted on the exterior.

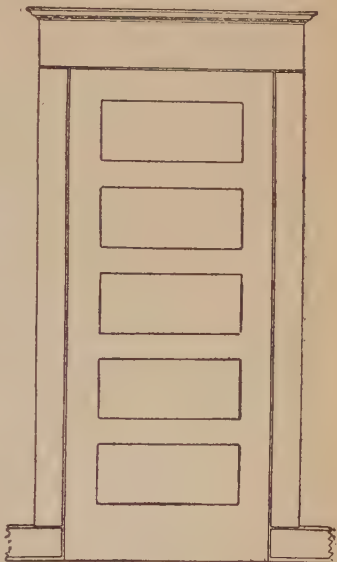


FIG. 33

All of the half-timber houses of France, no matter how richly decorated by the great artists of the chisel, are unpainted, and we have known of work in white pine and quartered white oak without the use of paint which has been in existence for centuries untouched by paint, and time justified the experiment. Nothing is more beautiful than the natural grain of the wood and its natural weathering under a proper transparent finish. It takes some courage to organize and push through an innovation of this kind, and one is beset by many warnings, but the beautiful result justifies the effort.



FIG. 34

The following method of making veneered doors was described by H. T. Gates in "The Woodworker" some time ago. It will doubtless be found of much benefit to workmen employed in factories where veneered doors are made in quantities. The hints and suggestions are to the point, and the instructions are clear and may be readily understood. The subject of veneered doors is one that has often been discussed of late and much light on it has been thrown, yet it will not suffer, if the subject is again brought forward, inasmuch as the various factories have particular ways of their own of producing this rapidly growing popularity in the door line. Instead of trying to lay down any fixed rule, saying thus and so shall they be made, let us consider some of the essential points which may be adapted to suit each condition as the manufacturer finds it.

I. Equipment.—Aside from the usual door-making machinery, this consists of larger facilities for preparing and applying glue, veneer press, resaw for veneers and

panels (unless they are purchased from a dealer in veneers), a warm room where the glue may be applied and material gotten ready for the press. Unless the factory is already supplied with a large kettle for preparing glue, it will be found of advantage to make a large copper kettle that will fit the holes in the heater, but large enough to hold three or four ordinary-sized kettles of liquid glue. This can be done by making it higher and wider about the flange, as shown in Fig. 35. In this way sufficient glue may be made ready for a good-sized batch of doors without fear of running out.



FIG. 35

Of course, these remarks do not apply to the factory having modern glue-spreaders, hand or power-feed, which are very essential in strictly veneer establishments. Our remarks apply only to the shop where veneered doors are one of the many by-products, so to speak, which accompany the usual line of mill work.

For spreading the glue by hand, procure a 4-inch flat wall brush and prepare it by pouring alcohol gum-shellac into the roots of the bristles, and driving blind staples into the butt end, as close together as possible, thus preventing the bristles from coming out. Have a pair of "horses" about 3 feet high, strongly made, and having an angular piece on the top, to prevent waste of the glue, and squeezing it off the work at the bearing point—see Fig. 36.

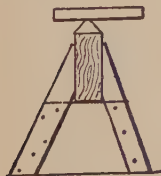


FIG. 36

Make the veneer press wide enough between the uprights to permit of veneering a table top or wide panel if needed, and have two rows of screws, so that

two stacks of cores may be pressed at one time. A strong press can be made with 6x6-inch maple cross-pieces and $\frac{7}{8}$ -inch round iron rods, with jambnuts to hold the upper piece in place, having regular

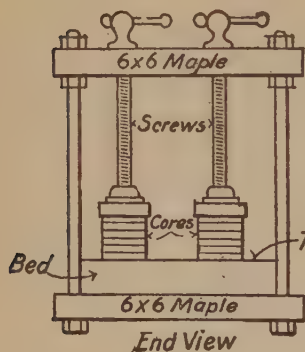


FIG. 37

veneer press screws at least $1\frac{3}{8}$ inches diameter. The bedpiece should be lagged up and trued, so that it will be straight and out of wind. To prevent the work from sticking to the bed, it should be covered on the top with zinc or tin—see Fig. 37.

For resawing veneers and panels, where there is no band resaw, a

gauge (Fig. 38) and pressure roller (Fig. 39) used on the band saw table, and $1\frac{1}{2}$ -inch saw in proper trim, with right management should turn three or four veneers out of inch stock, which may be applied direct to the coring without dressing, as described later on.

To do a good job of gluing to advantage it is necessary to have a warm room, so that a large batch of material may be worked at one time. There are various other purposes to which this room may be put, but to make a veneered door properly, without waste material or lost time, a warming room is very essential. First, the parts of wood to be glued must be thoroughly warm; also the temperature of the room

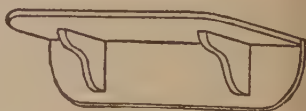


FIG. 38

where the work is to be done must be such as not to chill the glue and hinder its spreading and making good joints.

It is taken for granted that our factory has a hand jointer, pony planer, mortiser, tenoner, sticker, door clamp and drum sand-

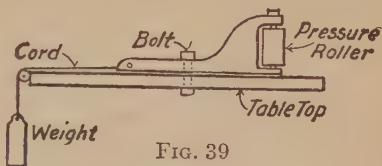


FIG. 39

er. It is a question whether veneered doors can be profitably made without the few essentials here enumerated, and where they are made in quantities, special machinery for spreading glue, cutting mouldings, presses, clamps, panel-raisers, etc., will be needed.

II. Materials.—Dry coring is the first thing that is required to make good doors. It is usual to cut up the material and put it in the dry (or warm) room referred to above, or in a dry-kiln, properly stacked, and leave it there as long as possible to drive out every particle of dampness. All waste material of suitable size and too poor to be used for any other purpose may be used for coring. It is preferable to



FIG. 40

have the strips wide enough so that when glued up they may be split through the center to make two stiles or rails—see Fig. 40—thereby saving much labor in gluing, which item cuts quite a figure in veneered door work. The stock sawyer

can lay aside such material from time to time and have it stored as mentioned, so that there is a supply of dry stuff to draw on when a batch of doors is wanted.

The glue for coring need not be of high grade, and where quick preparation is desired, a ground or pulverized bone glue will answer the purpose admi-

rably. The men soon become accustomed to handling the glue and it needs no soaking, as the flake or noodle glue does. For veneering a medium grade of hide-stock glue is to be preferred; one that is free from acid, clear in color, and not too quick-setting. It will pay to follow up the glue question more closely than we usually have done to obtain good results with economy. The glue for veneering does not want to be too thick. Practice in the work makes the workman proficient in its preparation. It should flow freely from the brush without being "tacky," as the painter would say.

The veneers and panels should be cut up and resawed before they are kiln-dried. The ends should be glue-sized, and they should be stacked straight and even in the kiln. Those who have tried resawing kiln-dried hardwoods, are aware of what a sorry job it makes; and how the veneers buckle, spring out of shape, pinch the saw or make it run crooked. When the saw has not too much set, the veneers may be glued onto the cores without planing, provided the sawing is a good, smooth job. Care must be taken in dressing veneers or panels, not to chip them out, as that is ruinous in this class of work.

III. Construction.—The man who is doing this work needs to be familiar with the work and its methods to do it well and economically. Filling the doors is the first work towards the desired end. A list of the size, style, thickness of doors and kinds of wood should be on each working bill, and follow the material in its progress out of chaos into stiles, rails, panels and finally the finished product. This bill should include the edge strips, the width, length and thickness of each bundle of cores, the finished size of

the parts they are intended to make, and the number and both the sawing and finished size of veneers and panels.

After the sawyer has the material cut, and it is thoroughly dry, the one who does the gluing assembles the cores, puts them on the heating coil and prepares his core glue; the pieces are spread on the horses and given a coating of glue, assembled in batches, and put into the press, the surplus glue being squeezed out by this process, which includes putting the edge strips on each stile requiring one.

After they have been allowed to set sufficiently, they are taken to the jointer and the straightest side trued up. If they are built-up for making two pieces, they are resawed and again jointed and thickened to desired size on the pony planer.

They are now ready for veneering. They are again put in the warm room over the coils; when warm, they are put on the horses as before, and spread with glue on both sides; a bottom board is first laid and then the veneers and cores stacked in regular order. The veneers must previously be carefully looked over, poor ones culled out, and any pin holes, porous spots or checks covered by gluing a piece of paper over, to prevent two stiles from being stuck together by glue oozing through such spots. They are again pressed out, and when dry, trued and sized to width. They are now ready to be laid out, same as any blind-tenon door.

The framing must be done in a first-class manner, with true joints and tight tenons. In fact, all machine work on veneered doors must be carefully done to have true work and tight joints.

Instead of putting the panels in when the doors are

put in the clamps, the framework is glued together with open panels, the stiles and rails being grooved, and after the doors are polished and put on the finishing bench, a panel strip is put in all around the edge of each panel, to which the panel mould is glued and nailed. The moulding is put in one side first,



FIG. 41

panels laid in, and moulded the other side, as shown in Fig. 41. This arrangement prevents the moulding from pulling away from the stiles, should the pan-

els shrink, and allows enough play for the panels to keep straight with the natural working of the wood in the changes of the atmosphere. There is advantage, too, in gluing up the framework without the panels. This cannot be done in the case of solid moulded doors.

The finish of a veneered door should be first-class; the panels, moulds and framework well sandpapered, and flat surfaces scraped smooth, as every defect seems magnified when the filler and varnish are applied.

Special care should be taken not to scrape, scratch or mar the face of the doors in shipping. Many a good door has been injured by careless packing or handling in shipping, after the cabinetmaker has finished his job. They should be crated, if shipped on a railroad or by boat, or they will not be worth much on arrival at their destination.

Wedged Doors.—The day of the wedged door has passed, and all modern-built houses contain what is known to the trade as "blind-tenon doors." The "dowel" door is practically a blind-tenon door. In plants where a set of dowel door machinery has not been installed, the problem of making these doors presents itself.

The advantages of this door are the saving of lumber on the rails, of time in laying out all stiles both sides and mortising them from both sides, the neat appearance of the stiles, especially on natural-finished work, and the ease with which they may be glued together.

Several points must be kept in mind in order to secure success. Let the stock sawyer cut all rails

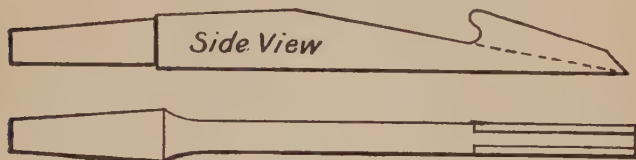


FIG. 42

exact, so the tenon will not touch the bottom of mortise before the shoulder is tight at the coping. The tenons should fit more snugly both sides and endways than in the old way, to hold well and make tight joints on the muntins. The glue should be applied to the mortise in such a way that it reaches the tenon, as well as the shoulders of rails and stiles, to make a strong job of the gluing.

The cleaning out of chips from the mortise has been a difficult problem, and it is not yet solved satisfactorily. Chain-saw mortises obviate this, but they have their faults, too. The "lip" chisels, Fig. 42, clear out the loose chips, but leave the fine chips that are pounded down by the action of the chisel, to be removed. In order to do this, a long S-shaped chisel with large wooden handle, Fig. 43, is used. The blade is $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch wide, and tapers from 0 at the cutting edge to $\frac{3}{4}$ or $\frac{7}{8}$ -inch at the handle.

This is a slow, laborious job. An easier method is

to use a twist drill bit in a horizontal boring machine, leaving the arbor in a fixed position and moving the stiles back and forth, both lengthwise and sidewise, by hand. The bit should not be quite as large as the mortise, so as not to enlarge it and make the tenons fit



FIG. 43

too loosely. Straight-flute bits, double-pointed bits, flat pieces of steel sharpened on edges and points, and various other patterns of cutters have been tried, and drills give the best satisfaction; only, they are easily broken.

The doors should be framed and stood in a hot room for about a week, to dry out. When ready to glue together, they are warm and do not chill the glue as it is applied. The kind of glue has much to do with the rapidity with which doors may be glued up. Expensive glue is not required for this work, but a strong, *quick-setting* glue is needed, so that the doors do not have to remain too long in the clamp, thus retarding the work. A light-colored glue, having had a sufficient quantity of oxide of zinc mixed with it by the glue manufacturer, is the kind required. Using this, the man at the door clamp can take them out of the clamps about as fast as he can properly apply the glue, without their springing apart at the joints so as to require small clamps to hold them.

Bear in mind, in making blind-tenon doors, you must have good machine work, dry lumber, snug fit to tenons, quick-setting glue, all applied in a good, sensible manner. The kinds of wood and styles of

doors both affect the results obtained, and must be made the subject of study in order to succeed.

A good tool for rubbing out the surplus glue after the veneering has been put in place is shown in Fig. 44. The rubbing part may be made out of an old plane iron, or from a worn-out scraper.

THE CHOICE AND USE OF GLUE

Glue is an article which plays an important part in carpentry. It is therefore to the interest of all to know how to choose a good article, and also how to use it properly for various kinds of work.

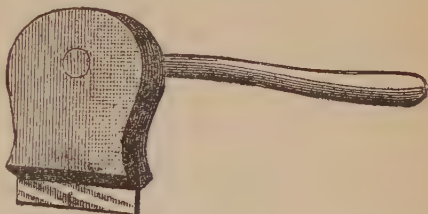


FIG. 44

First, as to how to recognize a good article. It is really useless to recommend Russian, Scotch, French, etc., as there are good and bad qualities of each, and we make as good glue in this country as anywhere in the world. Neither does the test of looking through the cakes at the light, and choosing those of only a bright color, apply in all cases, although it is a fairly good test with thin glue, that is, glue which is sold in thin cakes. The best test which the writer has found is to break a cake into two or three pieces, either by forcibly bending it, or by striking with the hammer. If the fractures present a smooth, even surface, the glue is poor in quality; but if, on the contrary, they present a ragged appearance, leaving any amount of sharp splinters, it is evidence of good quality, and may

be depended upon. The latter is to be preferred, as being best able to stand the damp weather without going mouldy and perishing.

The best way to prepare glue for use is to break up sufficient to fill the inner vessel of the glue pot into small pieces, and fill the vessel with water. After soaking a few hours, the outer vessel can be filled with water, and allowed to boil. When this takes place, give the contents of the inner vessel a good stir occasionally until all is melted, when the glue should run off the brush freely, and be almost as thin to all appearances as good linseed oil.

In glueing up joints of any description, or in repairing furniture, the great object is to get the wood into as close contact as possible before the glue begins to set; and the best way to manage this is to put on plenty of glue, boiling hot, and by means of pressure or by rubbing the parts together, to rub out as much as possible. The general idea is that a certain amount of glue must be left in a joint, and that it will hold best if it is reasonably thick. Greater mistakes were never made. The thinner the better, and the less left in the stronger the joint will be; therefore it follows that unless the parts to be joined fit closely together, a strong joint is impossible.

The glue pot must be kept free from dust and damp, as glue which goes mouldy, or gets mixed with foreign matter, is useless; therefore, unless it is used fairly often, only a moderate quantity should be made at one time.

The outer or water vessel of the glue pot should be large, so as to be capable of holding enough water to keep the glue hot long enough for any reasonable job. A small water vessel is a continual nuisance, owing to

its continually boiling dry when making glue, and failing to hold the heat when using it. Therefore, when purchasing, do not get one which holds less than a quart of water at the least. The extra cost will be saved in a very short time.

For large establishments where much glue is required, special appliances are provided, and may be obtained from most dealers in plumbers' goods.

For glue to be properly effective it requires to penetrate the pores of the wood, and the more a body of glue penetrates the wood, the more substantial the joint will remain. Glues that take the longest to dry are to be preferred to those that dry quickly, the slow-drying glues being always the strongest, other things being equal. For general use no method gives such good results as the following: Break the glue up small, put into an iron kettle, cover the glue with water and allow it to soak twelve hours; after soaking, boil until done. Then pour it into an airtight box, leave the cover off till cold, then cover up tight. As glue is required, cut out a portion and melt in the usual way. Expose no more of the made glue to the atmosphere for any length of time than is necessary, as the atmosphere is very destructive to made glue. Never heat made glue in a pot that is subjected to the direct heat of the fire or a lamp. All such methods of heating glue cannot be condemned in terms too severe. Do not use thick glue for joints or veneering. In all cases work it well into the wood, in a similar manner to what painters do with paint. Glue both surfaces of your work, excepting in case of veneering. Never glue upon hot wood, as the hot wood will absorb all the water in the glue too suddenly, and leave only a very little residue, with no adhesive power in it.

REMARKS ON VENEERING

A wood suitable for veneering requires to be thoroughly well seasoned, free from knots and shakes, and should not contain turps. The best of woods for the purpose are mahogany and American walnut, although good pine answers well for ordinary purposes. The surface, if flat, is carefully planed with the trying plane. It is then well toothed over with the toothing plane—first the lengthways of the wood and afterward the crossways—care being taken to tooth the work thoroughly. If you are working pine, use a coarse toothing iron; if mahogany or other hardwood, a finer iron is requisite. If the wood presents a hollow or rounded surface, it is shaped with suitable planes, rasps and files, and finally well prepared crossways with coarse glass paper such as strong No. 2 or No. 2½.

The next preparation is sizing. To make the size, take one part of good glue and boil it well with 50 parts of water; then brush over the ground-work while hot; allow to dry, and, if there should be any defects in the ground-work, fill in with stopping. Make your stopping by mixing some finely ground plaster of Paris with hot glue and water, enough to form a moderately stiff paste. Then lay in where necessary with a chisel, taking care to allow for shrinkage; let it dry, then level off with a rasp.

Having sized the ground-work over, next proceed to the preparation of the veneer while it is drying. Look carefully to the wood before cutting it, and see that it is done in such a manner as to get the grain of it to the best advantage. Cut it rather larger than the surface it is intended to veneer, to allow for leveling at the ends and sides. Most veneers, such as mahog-

any, oak, chestnut, maple, sycamore, birch, satinwood and various other woods, are ready for cutting as received from the merchant; but some, like burr walnut, brown oak, Amboyna, etc., present an uneven surface, called "backly." When this is the case, damp one side with clear water, lay it down with its dry side upward, and put the wet side of the next veneer upon it, repeating the operation till all are done. Take particular care to keep each veneer, if there are more than three or four, in its proper order as you damp and turn over, and do not on any account get them mixed. Let the wood stand about four or five hours, then lay them out to allow to nearly dry and they will be ready for cutting out.

The next process is flatting. Get two pieces of wood (dry, straight pine will answer), rather longer than the veneer, and heat them on a stove or before a bright fire; then place the veneer together between the hand screw, and allow it to remain for about half an hour; repeat this operation until the veneer is perfectly dry and thoroughly flat.

Our wood is now ready for filling in. If it is perfectly sound this operation is, of course, unnecessary; but it frequently happens, especially with burr walnut, that it contains holes that require filling. To do this, take a piece of the veneer (off the edges of that already cut out), and flat it precisely as the other. Select the part of it which matches best with the grain of the wood around the hole to be filled in. Place this underneath the hole. If you have a stamp rather larger than the hole, you may now cut it square or circular and the piece for filling it at the same time. If not, take an ordinary pocket knife having a sharp point and cut your hole and veneer the required shape.

When you have filled in the wood, lay it on a flat board, then press the piece in with a hammer. If they are rather large use one or two finely pointed tacks to keep them in position. Now cover all the pieces with strips of paper, selecting a strong paper such as copy book or note paper for the purpose—one that is not too thick—and glue it on one side. Take care to use glue just thick enough to hold the wood in position. Pay particular attention to this, or it will cause a good deal of trouble. You will find it best to cut the paper in strips about $1\frac{1}{4}$ to $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches wide. Lay it on a board to glue and smooth it over your veneer with a damp rag.

Jointing.—We now proceed to jointing. Place the veneer in the position it will appear when laid. Observe that it matches. If you are to have one joint with two veneers or two joints with four veneers, see that the grain of the wood forms a figure having both sides alike. If the veneers have been kept in their right or following order, this will not be difficult. If you are working a thick veneer (saw cut), make the joints with an iron plane or ordinary trying plane on the shooting board; if using thin veneer (knife cut), make them with a chisel and straight-edge. Take particular care to have the bevel edge of the chisel against the straight-edge when cutting or it will run, and you may come off with an ugly cut. Now put the jointed edges together on a deal board, and tack one edge down; put the tacks about $\frac{3}{4}$ inch from the jointed edges and about $2\frac{1}{2}$ inches apart. Having tacked one piece down, put the other up to it and tack it in the same manner. Now cover all the joints with paper, glue together in the same manner as previously mentioned in the filling in; smooth it well down

with a damp rag and allow to dry. If the weather is hot it is best to cover your joints to prevent them drying too quickly. A good and simple method is to lay your board with the veneer downward on the floor. Let the joints dry, then take out the tacks and knock the head holes in with a hammer from the underneath side. Put the veneer aside until you are ready for laying it. It is best to cover it up and keep the air from it by placing it under a board or wrapper.

There are two ways of laying veneer—by means of a caul or a veneering hammer. I shall describe both methods, although the first is of greater importance, and should, whenever practicable, be adopted, but in certain cases which I shall mention the second is extremely useful.

Veneering by Caul.—First make a caul, then take a piece of well-seasoned cedar or pine, rather larger than the surface intended to cover (about 1 inch to 1½ inches each way), and plane it up true on both sides, if the work is flat. If otherwise, make it to the requisite shape to fit the work, hollow, round, or whatever it may be. If it is necessary to shape the caul, use thicker stuff, and it is advisable to screw on two or three battens on the back. When making shaped cauls it is best at the same time to get out the pieces of wood necessary to form a flat surface when the wood is put in the caul. Thus, suppose we wanted to veneer a door having a rounded surface on one side and a hollow one on the other. We have made a hollow caul to correspond with the rounded surface having its under side flat. Now put the rounded side of the door in the caul and shape your piece of wood, rounding it to fit the hollow side. They should be 2 inches wide—the same width or a little larger than the

caul, and 5 inches or 6 inches apart. If one side only of the wood is shaped these woods are unnecessary. If the wood is not wide enough, make a good joint, dowel it together, and take it to pieces for heating. The caul, if likely to be much in use, should be covered with zinc. Cut the metal out large enough to cover the face of it, with sufficient to turn over the edges and ends, and fasten it on with flat-headed zinc or copper nails.

Numerous failures in unaccustomed hands may be ascribed to bad glue. Nothing but the very best glue should be used for veneering. Get the very best glue you can, break it up and boil thoroughly. It differs so much in strength that the proportion of water cannot be given, but after breaking up in pieces just cover with water and allow it to soak; then boil off with frequent stirring. It will, if good, now require about half as much water as previously added to bring it to the right consistence for veneering. It should be spread evenly with the brush and be free from lumps. Having made the caul and prepared the glue, get the hand screws and cramps to commence laying. Heat the caul on a stove or before a bright fire. If it is to be doweled together, and if it is more convenient, take it to pieces, taking care to mark your joints first. If you intend laying two similar pieces of veneer on flat surfaces, heat both sides of it and do both pieces together. If not, get one side of it well heated, as hot as you can without letting it burn. While it is heating, set the hand screws and cramps open as near the distance as you will require them, and place handy for the work. Now glue the ground-work well, and if the veneer shows any signs of being backly glue it slightly on the underneath side, as this will help to

soften it. Having finished gluing, put the veneer on the work and smooth it over gently with the hand. Then see that the caul is hot enough, and that its surface is free from any small cinders or dirt. Now rub it over with a greasy rag, and lay it gently on your veneer. Draw the work and caul a little over the edge of the bench, just enough to get the hand screw on; put it on very gently, then tighten as much as possible. You can then stand it upon the floor, and if you have nobody to hold it for you rest the hand screw against the bench while you put on the remainder. They should be placed about 6 inches apart, and mind that they bite fairly. Do not get any screws tighter than the other, or you will only get the pressure at the outside and inside of the cramps. If you have a piece of work so wide that the screws will not reach the center from either side or the ends, get two pieces of wood 2 inches or $2\frac{1}{2}$ inches thick and about the same thickness, plane them up, slightly rounding on one side, put their rounding sides facing each other on the work, and hand screw them at each end; they will then tighten in the middle and give sufficient pressure. Let the caul remain on for nearly an hour (in very hot weather longer will not hurt), then undo the hand screws, and if the caul sticks, insert the edge of a thin metal square, the back of a hand saw, or anything of a similar nature, between it and the veneer, and work it carefully about until you get them apart. If the glue has been used thick enough and the caul well greased, there will not be very much trouble, and they will often come apart themselves, or by giving the end of the caul a tap with the hammer, or on the end of the bench. See that the veneer is down. Feel it all over with the hand. If it is up you will be able to tell by

the hollow sound on tapping it with the tip of your finger. as well as by the raised appearance called blisters it will present when held to the light. If you heat your caul sufficiently, use the glue thick enough, and put the hand screws on properly, you will not be troubled with blisters. Should, however, there be any, let the work stand for one or two hours, and then put a smaller hot caul on when required until well down all over.

To level the veneer, first lay it (veneer downward) on a board and scrape off with a chisel as much of the glue that has come over the edges as you can. Now put it on the bench screw, and level toward you, with the paring chisel if thin veneers; if thick, use a smoothing plane. Put it aside to dry. If you have two pieces of the same size put them with their veneer sides together; if only one, place it so that the air does not get to the veneer; allow to stand for two or three days, then scrape off the paper for filling in pieces and jointing with a chisel, having previously damped it with hot water. The work is now ready for sizing. This operation may be dispensed with, but it is decidedly advantageous, especially if working wood which has an open grain. The size, which should be about the same strength as that used for the ground-work, is brushed or rubbed over the veneer with the hand, then wiped off as dry as possible with a cloth.

As has already been mentioned, this method is useful in certain cases. We sometimes want to veneer an edge, to put a narrow slip of veneer on some small surface where it would be very inconvenient to caul it down. If you are working a wood of a glossy or greasy description, like satinwood or rosewood, its nature will not admit of sufficient pressure by this

process, nor should it ever be adopted for work where water will act injuriously. I believe the prevailing opinion is that veneer requires a good deal of water to make it lie. In the first process, you will remember that it is laid quite dry. In the second process water is used, and if we consider that a damp surface tends to cause the wood to cast as it dries, we can readily understand where it should be used.

Veneering Round and Tapering Columns.—Occasions often arise where it is desirable to veneer columns of varying size and shape, and just how to do the work to the best advantage is a question not always readily determined by the workman.

In commenting upon this matter a well-known authority offers the following suggestions concerning tapering columns:

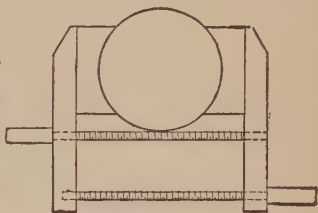


FIG. 45

“The success of this work depends entirely on the proper cauls. The sponging and gluing is the same as the work previously mentioned. Take a circular column 3 or 4 inches in diameter, the core to be made of any suitable material. Pass a piece of paper around the core and make a straight joint through the center and we have the exact size of the veneer. A caul of tin with a cleat on each end for the purchase of the hand screws is to be made as in Fig. 45, leaving the top open for an inch or more to give the glue a chance to escape. Apply the glue to the core and pass the veneer around it, not forgetting, however, to sponge the veneer before doing so. After screwing together, put the whole in the steam box to warm up the stiffened glue. After the work has become thoroughly

warm, take it out and give the hand screws a few turns, then lay it aside until the glue is set. Take off the hand screws and dispense with the tin cauls. The

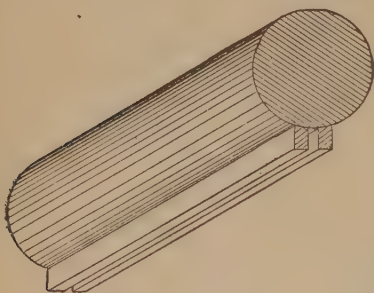


FIG. 46

ends may then be brought together, as shown in Fig. 46, only the caul on the joint is to be heated.

"Fig. 47 is a tapering column. The work is the same as above described, only the shape of the veneer is different, which may be got either by passing paper

around, trimming on both ends and making a straight joint in center of column, or by laying out the diagram, as in Fig. 48. In explanation thereof, let A, B, C, D

represent the column in question. To find the shape of a veneer to pass around this column extend AB and CD to E. With the radius EC and ED, describe the arcs CF and OH, which will be the required shape, and the distance AF and IH will pass half-way around,

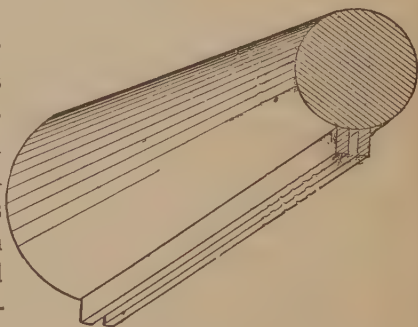


FIG. 47

and the veneer requires to be cut as large again to pass all around the column. Under no circumstances make more than one joint. By following the instruc-

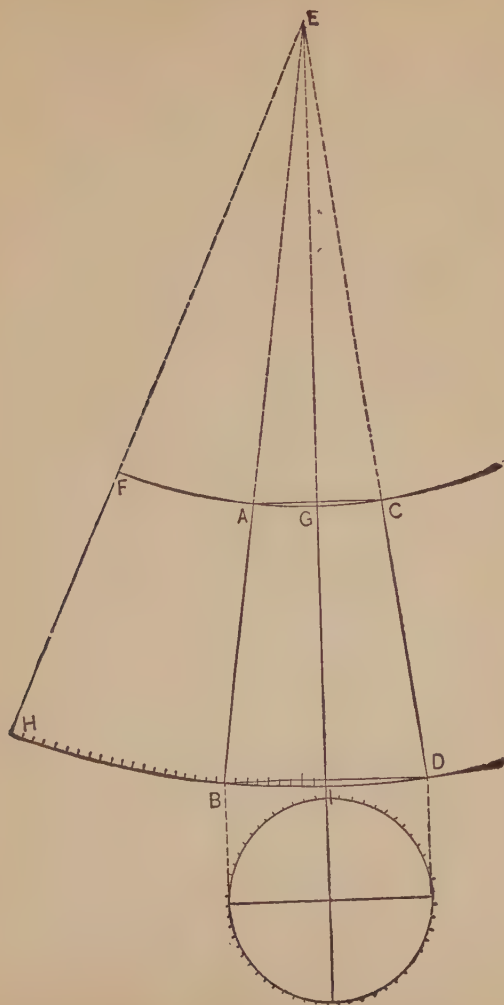


FIG. 48

tion herein given any fair mechanic will be enabled to execute a creditable piece of work."

In veneering small work, such as picture frames, clock stands or similar work, cauls should be reverse of the moulding or face of the work to be veneered, and the top of caul, when laid on the moulding, should be parallel with the under side of the work, so that caul and work can be gripped firmly with hand screws, when the veneer is being glued in place.

The section shown in Fig. 49 is known in the trade as a plain chamfer, and Fig. 50 shows a method by which such a frame may be veneered without taking it to pieces. Veneer $\frac{1}{8}$ inch thick can only be laid with cauls; and a suitable one is shown, and also the method of fixing it. The dotted outline of the caul is shown in section in Fig. 49, with the veneer between it and the base. If the frames are polished, remove

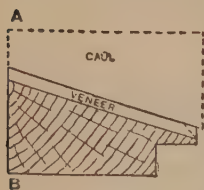


FIG. 49

the polish carefully with a sharp scraper; avoid working the surface into holes, but leave it rough from the scraper. Cut the veneer to a width that will allow sufficient margin for beveling, as shown in Fig. 49, and tooth or scratch the under face with a saw. Joint the inside edge to a correct bevel, cut to a miter and joint the ends in a miter joint, bedding the veneer either on a piece of the moulding or on a waste piece chamfered to the same angle; this is to obtain a vertical face to the miter. Next prepare the caul (as shown in Fig. 49) out of a piece of deal. The caul should be $\frac{1}{4}$ inch shorter than the veneer, and mitered at each end; not cut square as shown in Fig. 50; which is drawn thus for clearness. Make the caul slightly

round in length and beveled, so that the two surfaces marked AB (Fig. 49) are parallel. Well glue the veneer and the frame, lay the veneer in the proper position, place a strip of paper on the surface of the veneer, and lay the caul (preferably hot) upon this paper and fix with hand screws as shown, the more screws the better. Take care that the inside edge of

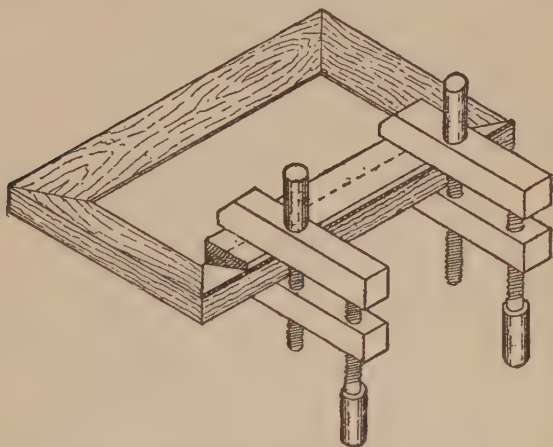


FIG. 50

the veneer is flush with the edges of the frame. Proceed to fix the opposite side in like manner; then wipe off the superfluous glue with a rag dipped in hot water, and wash the miters clean; then fit in the two end pieces, which can be fixed in the manner described for the sides. Allow twelve hours to dry, then clean off the back edges and scrape up the faces.

MAKING READY FOR POLISHING

If the workman who finally finishes woodwork had the selection of the materials out of which the work

is formed, and wrought the work himself, the following suggestions would scarcely be required, for he would see to it that the material was free from shakes, cracks, worm holes, doze, sap and fractures; and he would so choose his material that the full beauty of the grain would show, when the polish coat went on. He would also see that the work was *clean*; that is, that no plane marks were visible, no rough spots or cross-grains noticeable, and that all angles were sharp and definite, all mouldings smooth and not a nail head or screw top to be seen, nor any point that could suggest a nail head. As a rule, however, the workman who puts on the last finishing touches never makes the work, though he is *always* expected to cover and hide all the faults of bad workmanship, bad selection of timber, and a thousand other objectionable things in connection with work over which he has had no control. In order to aid the finisher as much as possible, I give a few hints herewith, for the use of the workman whose duty it may be to prepare and put up the work to be finished. The suggestions given are equally applicable for hard and soft woods, and I trust they will not be out of place.

First, then, see that the material is dry, free from imperfections, of the full sizes required, and of such variety of grain as may be suitable for the purpose intended. Next, make all joints close and as near perfect as possible, as on this point rests, in a great measure, the artistic appearance of the work. Make all angles sharp and clean, and all mitered mouldings true and with perfect intersections. Never use glass paper where a scraper can be applied, and when a large quantity of mouldings of similar contour and size are to be employed; it is always better to make a

scraper their reverse shape, and use it in cleaning and preparing the mouldings for the varnisher, than to use glass paper for the purpose.

The scraper illustrated by Fig. 51, and shown handled by Fig. 52, is an aid in producing surfaces more flat and regular than can be produced with the plane alone. Its use does not dispense with the plane; on the contrary, any surface on which the scraper

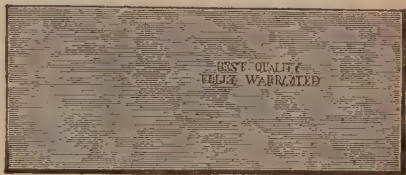


FIG. 51



FIG. 52

is to be used must previously be planed as level and smooth as plane can make it. But the plane, in doing its work—no matter how sharp it may be, or how closely the back-iron is set up to the edge of the cutting iron, or how straight across the edge the cutting iron is sharpened—is liable to leave marks and ridges on the face of the work, which, on hard woods, are not effectively removed by the use of sandpaper alone. The scraper is used after the plane has finished its work, and previous to the final operation of sandpapering. In addition to the removal of the ridges left by the plane, the scraper is used for dressing up all kinds of cross-grained surfaces that occur in curly and figured solid and veneer woods; but as far as possible this use of the scraper should be avoided. Excessive dressing up of a cross-grained patch on a panel, a stile, or a table-top will most certainly show, and spoil the flatness and general appearance of the article when it is polished. As a rule, such excessive

scraping is resorted to in consequence of the plane having been sharpened and set badly, or of some other technical oversight or unskillful manipulation.

The scraper is a thin and very hard steel plate, about 5 in. by 3 in., or $4\frac{1}{2}$ in. by $2\frac{1}{2}$ in., and slightly less than $\frac{1}{16}$ in. in thickness. The long edges are sharpened in a peculiar manner. Both of the long edges may be straight, as in Fig. 51, and at AB, Fig. 53, or one edge may have round corners of differing radii, as at

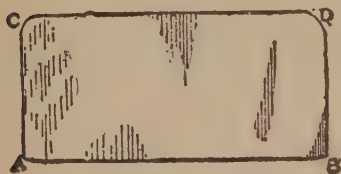


FIG. 53

CD. These corners are often useful in working up hollows and mouldings generally. The "straight" edge AB, it will be noticed, is not quite straight throughout its whole length. Near

the ends the edge is gradually rounded off, to prevent the corners catching in the surface that is being operated on. In this respect, the commercial scraper (Fig. 51) is incorrectly shaped. The cutting power of a scraper depends upon, first, the quality and temper of the steel of which it is made; and, secondly, upon the proper formation of the burr or feather along its edges. Also, the faces of the steel plate must be perfectly bright and free from rust marks or indentations of any kind. It is by no means an uncommon thing to find any rusty piece of sheet steel—a piece of an old hand saw or try-square, for example—being used as a scraper. The smallest appreciation of why the scraper cuts would indicate how useless such material is for this particular purpose. On the other hand, scarcely anything better can be found for making a scraper than a piece of broken saw blade, provided the sides of it are

still polished and bright. The fact that the saw was broken may easily be taken to indicate a higher temper than usual in the blade, thus fitting it exactly for the purpose of a scraper. The temper of an ordinary saw blade is not usually hard enough. Provided that there is enough elasticity to "give" in the operator's hands as it is being pushed along, the scraper should be nearly too hard for an ordinary file to touch. If it can be filed easily, then its edge will soon be gone. At the same time, if the steel is merely hard without the required amount of elasticity, the burr will strip off as it is applied to the work, leaving a coarse, jagged edge which is worse than useless.

The correctly sharpened scraper is a real cutting tool, and not, as its name suggests—and as in practice it often is—a mere abrader of the surface. When in good working trim, the scraper should, if desired, take off shaving after shaving perfectly uniform in thickness, and nearly as wide as the cutting edge is long. But such a performance is rarely required of it, and never when the plane has previously done its work properly. Too much emphasis cannot be laid on the fact that the proper duty of the scraper is not to make a surface, but to correct the irregularities on it. In explanation of the cutting action of the scraper, a diagrammatic figure is shown in Fig. 66. The figure correctly illustrates the cutting principle, though it does not represent a true section of the scraper. In use, the scraper is held firmly in both hands and tilted forwards, away from the operator, until the cutting edge grips the surface of the wood, exactly as shown in Fig. 54. It is then kept steadily at this angle, and made to cut a fine shaving at each stroke as it is being

pushed away from the operator in the direction from E to F (Fig. 54).

The proper formation of the burr edge is of the greatest importance. Having procured a suitable

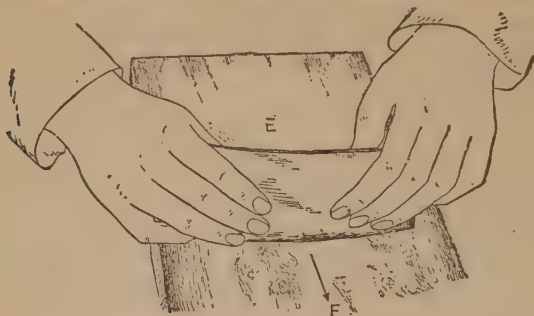


FIG. 54

steel plate, a usual but not recommended method is as follows: The plate is laid down on the bench as shown in Fig. 55. A narrow chisel, brad-awl or gouge,

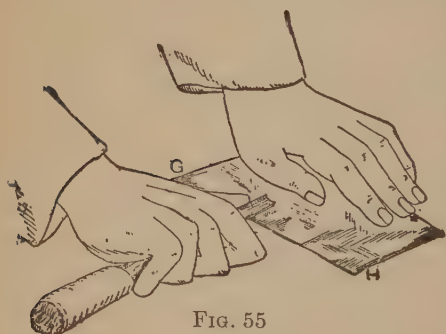


FIG. 55

as shown in Fig. 56, is then laid on the scraper horizontally, and with considerable pressure is stroked backwards and forwards from end to end of the plate, G to H, Fig. 55. After about 10 or 12

strokes the scraper is turned over and the other side is treated in the same manner. This completes the first part of the process of sharpening. Next, the gouge

is placed vertically against the edge, as shown in Fig. 57, and stroked to and fro with about the same pressure and firmness as the sides of plate received,

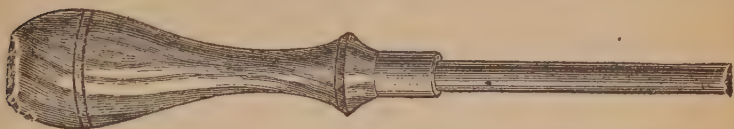


FIG. 56

and about the same number of times. Or else, for this second part, the scraper may be placed on its corner on the bench, as shown in Fig. 58, and held firmly in the left hand, while the right hand deftly strokes the convex side of the gouge with a quick action and considerable pressure, once or twice in an upward direction, as from I to J in Fig. 58. The scraper is then tried on the work to determine its sharpness. If, after this process, the scraper fails to cut satisfactorily, it is laid down on

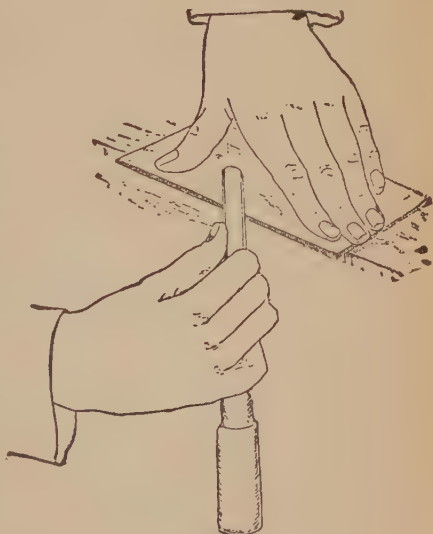


FIG. 57

the bench and the two processes are repeated. The following is a better method of sharpening a scraper: First, have the scraper ground so that its edge shall be

straight and square, and slope up at the ends, as shown at A and B, Fig. 53. It should then be placed on its edge on a fine-cutting oilstone, as shown in Fig. 60, and rubbed backwards and forwards until all traces of the grinding have disappeared. Then it should be laid flat on its side, still on the oilstone, as in Fig. 61, and rubbed until the sides are bright and polished all along the edges. If any false burr or feather-edge has been

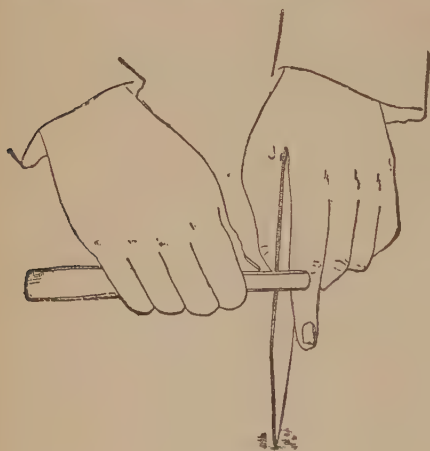


FIG. 58

created in this last process, the scraper must be set up on its edge again, as in Fig. 60, and rubbed a little more, until two perfectly square and sharp corners appear all along the scraper. Now, if due care has really been taken in making the corners perfect and square, the

scraper in this condition would produce shavings tolerably well on any hardwood; but the shaving would be the result of abrasive and not of cutting action. It is purely a matter of choice if, at this stage, a smooth-backed gouge is passed to and fro over the side of the scraper, as in Fig. 55, with the object of imparting a still higher polish to the plate of steel at the places where the burr is to be formed. But the greatest care must be taken not to press too heavily, and also to maintain a perfectly level position

with the gouge, while the polishing is being done. As stated, this polishing of the side is not really necessary, and the scraper would cut very well without



FIG. 59

its supposed assistance. Next, the scraper is placed on its corner on the bench, and a flat and smooth-backed gouge is passed once—or at most twice—along

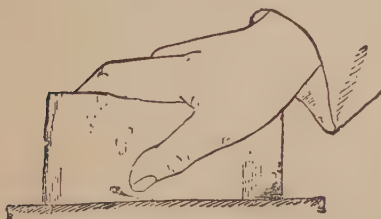


FIG. 60

the edge. The scraper during this operation may be held either as already shown in Fig. 57, or as is here recommended and shown in Fig. 61; or it may be fastened in the bench-vise. The aim in this

particular action is the production of an exceedingly fine burr, scarcely enough to be called a burr at all, but a perfectly regular bending over of the corner; the gouge

must be very lightly pressed, or it will cause the burr to curl up too much, and also it must be kept nearly, though not quite, horizontal. With regard to resharpening the scraper,

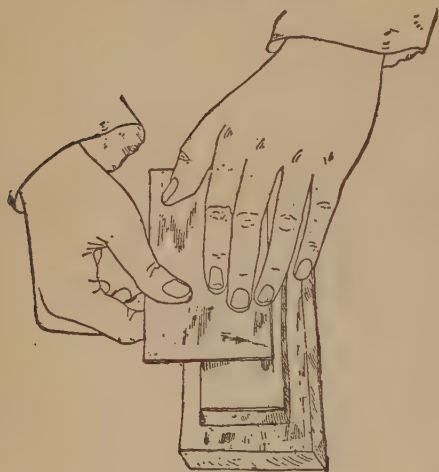


FIG. 61

when this becomes necessary, the scraper must be placed upon the oilstone and rubbed up again to perfectly square corners as previously described in connection with Figs. 60 and 61.

There are other methods of sharpening scrapers which are made use of by some

workmen; indeed, nearly every workman, after experience, will adopt such method as will seem to him to be the best for the purpose. There are workmen who seldom or never use an oilstone, but employ a fine file instead, and draw-file the edge of the scraper as shown in Fig. 63. This is done by placing the scraper in a vise and with a smooth, flat file making the edge perfectly square and as straight as possible after the manner of jointing a hand saw. Next place the file squarely across the edge and pass it from end to end of the scraper two or three times. This operation is known as draw-filing, a plan view of the position and direction of the file being shown in Fig. 63. Treat all four edges



FIG. 62

the same way. The edge, as it will now appear, is shown enlarged and exaggerated in Fig. 64. Remove the scraper from the vise and lay it flat on the bench, then taking the gouge, Fig. 56, rub out straight all the wire edges, keeping the gouge on the scraper and passing it quickly back and forth after the manner of stropping

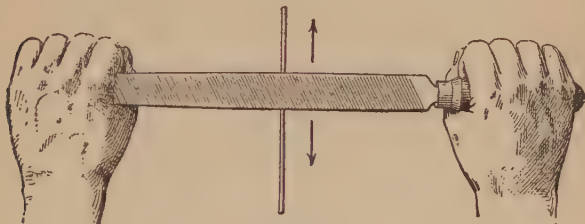


FIG. 63

a razor. The edge will then appear as in Fig. 65. Now, taking the scraper in the left hand and holding it firmly edgewise on the bench, place the gouge across the edge, making a small bevel with the side of the scraper, and draw it upward two or three times, using considerable pressure. This will turn the edge



FIG. 64

back as it was after filing, but it will now be straight instead of grooved, and smooth instead of ragged. All of the eight edges must be treated in the same manner, when they will appear as in Fig. 66, and the scraper should now take off a shaving like a smooth-plane, but much finer.



FIG. 65

In order to resharpen the scraper it is not necessary to go through the filing operation again for some time—simply flatten out the edges and turn them again with a little more bevel than before. This can be done

very rapidly. In order to avoid too many stops, always keep three or four scrapers at hand and sharpen them all at once.



FIG. 66

The best thing with which to hold the scraper is a piece of sandpaper, with the sanded side next the scraper. This gives a good grip and prevents the tool from burning the fingers.

Some people file the edge of the scraper rounding, to prevent the corners from catching. This is not at all necessary, as the action of pushing the scraper bends it slightly, which raises the corners somewhat. The sharpening of a scraper, however, like the sharpening of a hand saw, takes considerable practice and no little knack; so if at first one does not succeed it is only necessary to keep pegging away at it until success crowns the efforts, for it is well worth all the trouble. It may be mentioned incidentally that a good burnisher may be bought all ready at

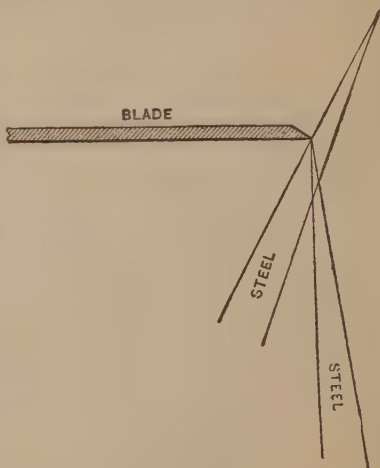


FIG. 67

any good hardware store. Leather curriers use them for turning the edges of their knives and they are better than a gouge because of their being tempered harder and more highly finished.

The true theory of a scraper, for some purposes, may be described as follows: Where there is a lot of superfluous wood to remove, as in hardwood floors or other similar work, where it is not desirable to use a smooth plane, it is well to file or grind the scraper to a bevel, the same as a plane iron, and bring it to a keen edge on the oilstone; then proceed to burnish it. Hold the burnisher slightly at an angle with the bevel as indicated in Fig. 67, and draw it lightly across the blade. Then increase the angle and the pressure, repeating the process until the burnisher is at nearly right angles with the blade, after which run the burnisher back and forward a few times, first one side and then the other, as indicated in Fig. 68, when it is ready for use. When it becomes a little dull, do not turn the edge back, as many do, but use the burnisher, as shown in Fig. 68. A good blade will stand for two or three hours without filing or grinding.

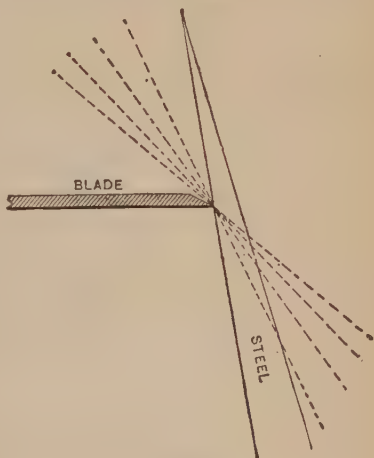


FIG. 68

For fine work file or grind the blade perfectly square on the edge and get it perfectly smooth on the oilstone. Then hold the burnisher as shown in Fig. 69,

the dotted lines indicating how to start and the full lines how to finish. In all cases finish the operation as shown in Fig. 69. If unsuccessful the first time, do not give up the job, for the scraper is a tool that requires a great deal of practice in order to become expert in sharpening.

Defective Sharpening of Scrapers.—A frequent mistake is to put too great pressure on the gouge, and to stroke too much. One or two strokes should be quite

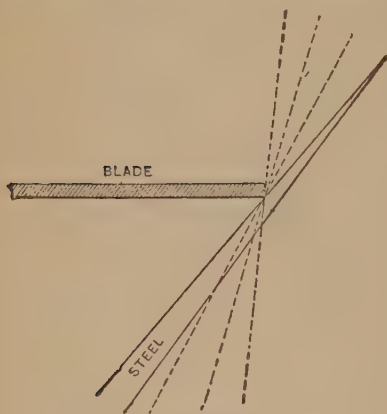


FIG. 69

sufficient to give the scraper the proper edge. At all events, after the scraper has had a couple of strokes of the burnisher or gouge, it should be tried, and if it does not grip the work properly, give it a few strokes more. Scrapers with a high temper require more burnishing than if soft or medium tem-

per., but if overdone, the edge will crumble and it will not do clean work. Soft scrapers are easier handled than hard ones, but require a great deal more sharpening, and this sometimes leads to rough work, as the workman will not take time to repeatedly put his scraper in order. As before stated, the workman should have at least three or four scrapers on hand, and they should always be kept in good order. It is a good plan to have a little box or case in the tool chest purposely to hold scrapers, for two reasons: The workman will always

know where to find them when wanted and, secondly, it will save the edges from being broken or damaged by being jolted or rubbed against other tools.

Varieties of Scrapers.

—There is a new scraper in the market which is said to be superior to anything made in the scraper line. A representa-

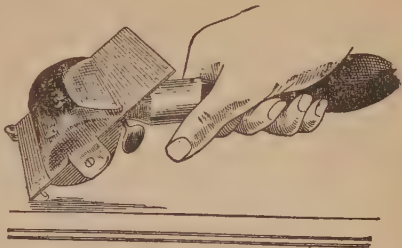


FIG. 70

tion of it is shown in Fig. 70, which is taken from an advertisement. I do not know of my own knowledge



FIG. 71

how the scraper works, but, judging from its shape and setting, I should think it theoretically correct.

Other shapes of scrapers are shown in Figs. 71 and 72. The first of these is intended for smoothing up hollows and rounds. A number of these should be kept on hand, with curves of various radii. Fig. 72 shows a scraper made purposely for cleaning out hollows of various curvatures, and will be found very useful on work where there are a number of curves or other hollow mouldings. Often the workman may have to make



FIG. 72

scrapers to suit certain kinds of work, and when such is the case, he should make it a fixed rule never to change them, but to keep them in his tool chest, and make others, when necessary, from new material. An old hand saw blade generally answers quite well for scrapers, and one saw will make a couple of dozen scrapers of different sizes and shapes.

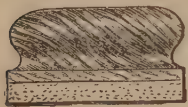


FIG. 73

How to Use Sandpaper.—For properly using sandpaper a rubber is needed. A piece of mahogany or clean pine, $5\frac{3}{4}$ in. by 3 in. by 1 in., shaped as in Fig. 73, answers well if a piece of sheet cork is glued on the face as shown. Fold a piece of sandpaper, 6 in. wide and about 10 in. long, into three, place it sand side downwards, and put the face of the rubber on the middle division. Grasp the rubber so that the ends of the sandpaper are held firmly on its back and sides (see Fig. 74), and work then can be commenced.

A solid rubber about one inch thick makes an excellent block for the purpose. A piece of rubber belting glued to a piece of basswood also makes a good rubber block.

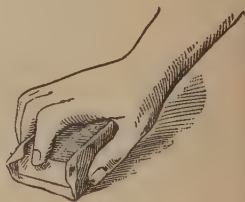


FIG. 74

Rasps and Files.—The woodworker occasionally uses rasps, and these generally are half-round, though sometimes flat. The cabinet rasp shown in Fig. 75 is not a very coarse one.

Cabinet and wood rasps range from 4 in. to 14 in. in length, and at 12 in. and less the price is about 4 cents per inch. The extra 2 in. in a 14-inch rasp adds nearly 50 per cent to the price. Files also

are used, for smoothing up hardwood. When a file is used, it should be pushed and drawn in the direction of the grain. The file usually employed by carriage makers for smoothing up spokes and other work is generally a half-round bastard file, and when properly used makes exceedingly smooth work. A finer file than the bastard is shown in Fig. 76. This is sometimes used for finishing narrow flat work.

SAWS FOR WORKING HARDWOOD

Saw-filing is an art unto itself, and few men ever attain the art to perfection. To file a saw in such manner that the working of it is a pleasure requires an amount of skill and a high order of technical knowledge that can only be acquired by thought and experience; yet a properly set and filed saw is a real necessity in the making of good joiners' work, and, while every workman cannot become an expert saw-filer, he ought at least to possess such knowledge of the art as will enable him to set and file his own saws in such a manner as will enable him to execute such work as he may be called upon to make; and to this end, I propose to offer



FIG. 75



FIG. 76

a few instructions and remarks that will assist him in managing his own saws without the employment of expert aid. It is not my intention to go into the matter of saw-filing to any great extent, as that subject will probably be discussed at length in another volume, but what I do offer will, I trust, be up to the mark.

All workmen in wood require two saws, namely, a cross-cut saw, and a rip-saw. The shape of the teeth in these saws differs, also the size, and each requires a special form of tooth and a different style of filing.

Many workmen think that so long as the tooth of a saw has a sharp edge the shape of the tooth is a matter

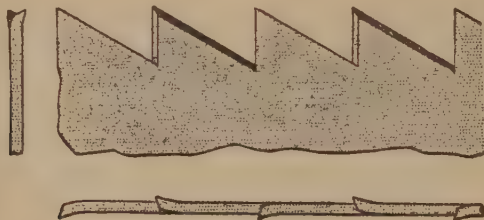


FIG. 77

of small importance, and as a result of this ignorance or indifference they are always in trouble with their saws, and their work becomes much more laborious than if proper attention had been paid to the shape of the teeth. Substances of different texture cannot be cut advantageously with the same tool; in fact, the tool must be adapted to the work if the best all-round results are to be produced. Fig. 77 illustrates a form of tooth suitable for an ordinary hand rip-saw. The tooth points number about four to the inch, and the front of the tooth is upright, that is, at an angle of 90° . The face of the tooth should be filed to an angle of 85° to 87° , or 3° to 5° from the square. Some

experts contend that the teeth of a rip-saw should be filed dead square. The object in filing them a little on the bevel is that the teeth may cut more freely and easily when they have become a bit dull, there being then what is termed a little clearance cut in the teeth. In nearly all timber there is, it is well known, a certain

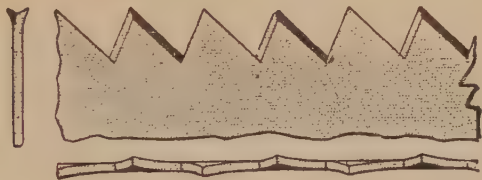


FIG. 78

amount of fiber to be cut either directly or obliquely across, and teeth that are filed square will not, whether they are sharp or dull, divide this fiber so easily as teeth that have a slight bevel.

The illustration, Fig. 77, shows a saw tooth that works quite well in the softer woods, but for the harder



FIG. 79

woods a little more plane or angle on the cutting edge would cause the saw to cut with less labor; and if there were about five teeth to the inch, it would cut with ease any kind of hardwood.

The teeth shown in Fig. 78 are well suited to a hand saw used for cross-cutting soft wood. The tooth

points in this saw may number five or six to the inch. The front of the tooth slopes at an angle of about 105° . The face of the tooth in sharpening should be filed to an angle of from 55° to 60° . The softer the timber that is to be cross-cut, the more acute should be the angle of the teeth, as the keener edge separates the fibers more easily. Fig. 79 shows a form of hand saw



FIG. 80

tooth suitable for cross-cutting hardwood. The number of tooth points may be from six to eight to the inch, and the front of the tooth should slope at an angle of 110° to 115° , according to the hardness of the timber to be sawed. The face of this tooth should be filed to an angle of 70° to 75° , because the cutting edge must



FIG. 81

be less acute owing to hardwood fibers being more compact than those of soft wood.

The whole number of saws made use of by the wood-

worker amounts to some six or eight, comprising the rip, cross-cut, hand, panel, tenon, dovetail, bow or turning, and keyhole. The hand saw type includes the hand saw proper, the ripping, half-ripping, and panel saws, all of similar outline, but differing in dimensions, and in form and size of teeth. There is no sharp distinction between these tools, as they merge

one into the other; yet at the extremes it would be impossible to substitute the ripping and panel saws one for the other. The hand saw, however, which is a kind of compromise between extremes, is used indiscriminately for all purposes.

A tenon, or back-saw, is shown in Fig. 80. It is made in different lengths, and the blades are not all made the same width. The dovetail saw is a back-saw with a very thin blade; it is not much used in this country, only by Europeans. It is intended especially for very fine work. The other saws named are for special purposes, and

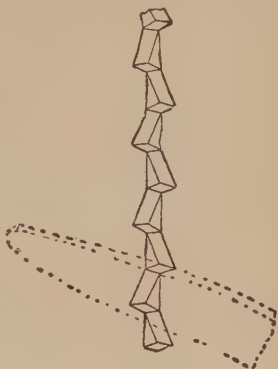


FIG. 82

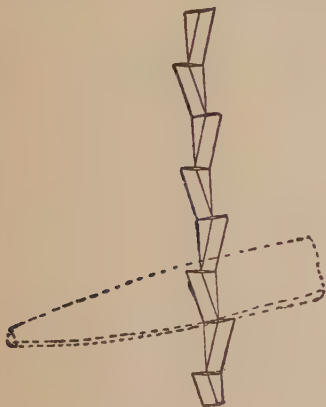


FIG. 83

need not be described here.

The methods of filing, however, are about the same as described for the saws first named, with the exception of the bow or scroll saw.

This saw, which is intended to cut with and across the grain, or obliquely to it, should have its teeth filed with a sharper plane than a rip-saw, but not quite so sharp as a cross-cut saw; in other words, it wants a hybrid tooth, "between and

betwixt" a cross-cut and a rip-saw tooth. (See Fig. 81.)

The set of a saw is important, and this is shown in

Figs. 77, 78, 82 and 83. The teeth at both point and butt of a hand saw should be very slightly smaller than those in the middle, as it is at the last-named point where the greatest force is exerted in every down stroke. But it is absolutely necessary that the set is the same from point to butt of every saw, whether rip or cross-cut. The middle of the cutting edge of a cross-cut saw should be slightly rounded, being highest at about the middle. The saw being still in

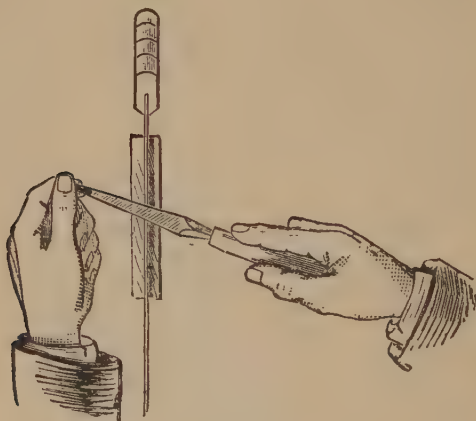


FIG. 84

the saw vise, insert the file in a handle, and grasp it with the right hand, taking the point of file in the left, as shown in Fig. 84. Place the file against the face of that tooth nearest the handle that inclines away from the worker, holding the file at an angle with the blade or saw as shown in Fig. 84. Then lower the right hand to about the angle shown in Fig. 85 (which shows the left hand removed). The file should be held obliquely across the saw blade, as in Figs. 83 and 84,

the point end of the file being inclined towards the saw handle as illustrated by Fig. 84. Gently push the file forwards, lifting it at the end of stroke, returning it, and again pushing it, until the point of the tooth has a keen edge. Repeat this upon each alternate tooth until all upon one side are sharpened. Serve the other side in the same manner. Be careful not to press the file against the back of the tooth, as unevenness will surely result.

Keep all saws slightly rounding on the edge. The rip-saw and the hand saw may have a full quarter of an inch rounding with advantage. All saws, except

circulars, have a constant tendency to get hollow, and this must be prevented; and the only way to prevent it is to file



FIG. 85

the teeth down by passing a partly-worn file along the edges till it touches every tooth. Then, in filing the teeth, take care only just to take out this bright mark—not one touch more or that tooth will be shorter than its neighbors. A saw properly sharpened, and in good order, has each tooth do its proper share of cutting and no more.

Sharpening Tenon Saws.—Sharpening tenon saws is practically the same as sharpening hand saws. It may happen, however, that some of the teeth will be much larger than others, this being due to the file not having been held at the same angle in sharpening each tooth. Fig. 81 shows the saw teeth improperly sharpened, the front of the large teeth inclining much

more than the front of the small teeth. If the teeth in one range are found to be filed smaller than those in the other, file the back of the smaller teeth to a more acute angle, keeping the file at the same time well against the front of the other tooth at the bottom, and see before the filing is finished, that the front of the next tooth has been filed up to its point, as it is the front, not the back, of the tooth that does the cutting. To regulate the teeth of the saw, file every tooth in succession, shooting the file straight across the teeth. After filing all the teeth from one side, turn the saw, and file as before from the other side. When the teeth are fairly regular, the flat file may be run over them lightly. This will bring the teeth uniform in length. Now file every alternate tooth, first on one side and then on the other side of the saw, as shown in Fig. 84. Hold the file as nearly as possible to the same angle in each case, as it is on this filing that the regularity of the teeth depends. When all the flat places caused by the file when topping the teeth disappear, cease filing, as any further filing may cause low teeth, which tend to make the saw cut irregularly. When the saw is so filed that all the teeth get their equal share of cutting, the saw may be said to be well filed. When the teeth are filed as shown in Fig. 83, there is a larger and better cutting edge than with the one more obtuse. If the points only of the teeth are allowed to do the work, the action is a scratching and not a cutting one.

One of the great difficulties in hand sharpening is to get the bevels of the teeth exactly alike. A number of mechanical arrangements to guide the saw and effect this object have been tried with more or less success. In one of the best of these devices a circular

casting is divided and indexed from its center each way, giving bevels for each side of the saw, or square across. The file is fitted into a guide, and is held by a set-screw. The index shows the pitch at which the file is set, and a rod passes through holes in a graduating ring and guides the file. The frame upon which the ring is held slides in grooves cut on each side of the vise in which the saw is fixed; a table connected with the guide is arranged and indexed so as to give the required bevel and pitch for the kind of saw to be filed, and it is only necessary to set the ring for the bevel, and the indicator for the pitch, and the apparatus is ready for use. As the filing is proceeded with from tooth to tooth, the frame follows, giving to each tooth on one side of the saw the same bevel, pitch, and size as on the other, thus leaving the saw, when filing is finished, with the teeth all uniform in size, pitch, and bevel, so that each tooth will do its share of cutting equally

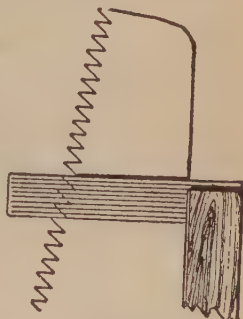


FIG. 86

with the others, thus turning out more and better quality of work with less expenditure of energy. An old-fashioned way of getting the right angle of a tooth of a hand saw in filing is shown by Fig. 86. A hand saw blade is narrowest in width at the point, and broadest at the butt; and the slope of the back, compared with the line of teeth, is almost always uniform for all saws; and if a square be placed against this back, a tooth may be filed whose cutting edge is perfectly in line with the edge of the square. All the teeth being thus filed and afterwards set, a saw which will answer

general purposes is produced, and one which will suit the worker who has but one hand saw. It will cross-cut soft woods and rip hard woods, thus being a kind of half-rip. Moreover, this square may be used as a gauge, the teeth not necessarily being filed as shown; and if the rake or lead be very much, an adjustable bevel may be used.

PLANES GENERALLY

In workshop practice, planes are the tools chiefly used for smoothing the surface of wood after it has been sawed to approximate size. In its simplest form, a plane is a chisel firmly fixed into a block of wood by which it is guided in its cut, and the amount of wood taken off in the form of a shaving is regulated to a nicety. In fact, such a simple tool actually is used sometimes, when a proper

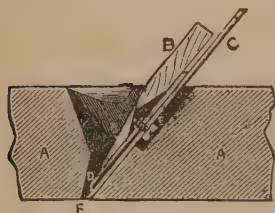


FIG. 87

plane of the requisite shape and of a suitable size cannot be procured. To make the construction of an ordinary plane quite clear, a section of one is illustrated by Fig. 87, in which A shows the section of stock; B, the wedge; C, cutting iron; D, back iron; E, the screw for fastening irons together; and F is the mouth through which the shavings pass upwards. A plane is simply a copying tool, and a notch in the plane-iron at once proves that the pattern produced corresponds with the edge of the plane-iron, and all the imperfections of this edge will be copied on to the stuff. In all planing operations the edge of the tool is the pattern, which is copied in reverse on the wood. If a hollow is required

to be produced on the wood, a tool is used with a round edge of exactly similar form to the hollow we wish produced. In machine planing the pattern is the edge of the tool, which produces a similar surface upon the wood.

Direction of Grain in Planes.—For flat planes such as jack, try, and smoothing planes, the grain must be straight and, of course, run lengthways of the tool. The wood is selected from a center plank of beech as near to the bark as possible; in all planes, the wood nearest the bark, that being the hardest part of the wood, becomes the sole or working surface. The wood is seasoned thoroughly, and never is used until at least three years after cutting. Moulding planes mostly work on the spring, and need not have the grain so straight as flat planes. Hollows, rounds, and rebate planes are exceptional, however, and should have the grain as straight as possible, because the rebate plane is cut right through, and is liable to cast or warp if not quite straight-grained; and most of the hollows and rounds, being thin, are liable to cast also if not of straight, mild, and well-seasoned wood. Wood for plane making should be as free from knots as possible.

Jack and Trying Planes.—The jack plane, Fig. 88, is the first applied to the wood after it has been sawed. This plane is always employed to remove the roughness of the work before finishing up with trying and smoothing planes. It is made up of five parts—namely, the stock (which should be 17 in. in length), the toat or handle, the wedge, the cutting iron or cutter ($2\frac{1}{8}$ in. broad), and back iron. Immediately behind the iron is a handle, which, in use, is grasped only by the right hand in planing fir; but in heavy

planing, and especially in hardwood, it is necessary to place the left hand across the front of the plane to press it down, to cause the iron to take hold of the wood. When using both hands to the plane, the left is placed with the four fingers lying across the top near the fore end, the thumb passing down the near side. Well-seasoned beech is a suitable wood for the stock. The construction of the trying or truing plane is almost exactly the same as that of the jack

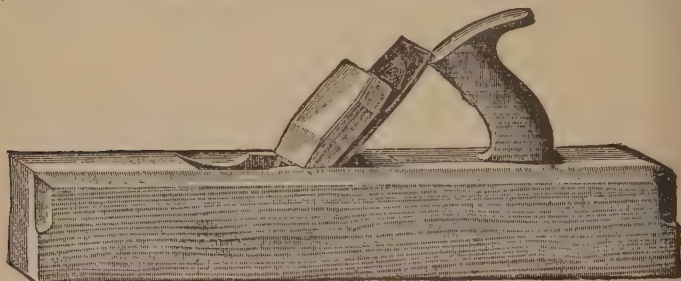


FIG. 88

plane, but it is much longer, so as to produce truer surfaces.

Using the Plane.—When using the plane, always keep the plane well oiled in front of the iron; be sure and work with the grain as shown in Fig. 89, whenever possible. A far thicker shaving can be taken off smoothly in this way than if worked as shown in Fig. 90, which is working against the grain and requires more careful work with a more finely set plane. Do not use the plane at an uncomfortable height. When the board to be planed is in position, and the worker takes hold of the plane ready to begin work, a line drawn through his elbow and wrist should be rather lower than higher at the wrist, though if the forearm is

level it will do fairly well. Do not attempt to take off thick shavings at the outset, and do not be disappointed if a shaving is not taken off from end to end at the first trial. If the wood has any hollow in it, it will be impossible to do this, and even if it is perfectly straight it is sometimes difficult to do it.

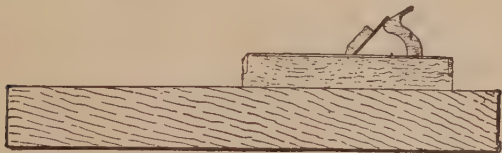


FIG. 89

There is always a tendency to plane off too much near the bench stop, as the arm is apt to be raised at this point. Errors of this kind can be avoided by careful practice and attention. It is a good idea to try to plane the center of the material rather than the margin, for if a good plane is in proper order it is impossible to make the work too hollow or concave; whereas,

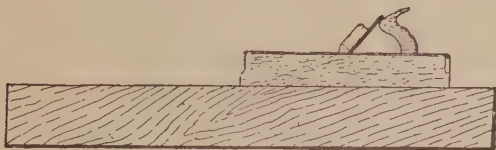


FIG. 90

however good the plane, careless use of it can and will make the work convex in every direction.

In making use of the smoothing plane for finishing up stuff, it should be held as shown in Fig. 91, the right hand grasping it firmly at the back, whilst the left hand steadies it in front. In starting, the tool is

applied to the fore-end of the board, and gradually worked backwards, thus taking out any marks previously used tools may have made. It should be held firmly, and lifted sharply at the end of stroke, or a



FIG. 91

mark will be left where the plane finished. The work is continued until the board presents a perfectly smooth surface, without marks of any kind. The left hand should frequently be passed across the face of the board, as any marks made by the plane can be readily detected in this manner. It may also with advantage be held so that the light passes across its surface from the side, thus showing up imperfect planing. Should there be too much iron out, a few blows with the hammer at the back of the plane will draw it back. Take care to tighten up the wedge again. A few drops of linseed oil applied to the face of the plane will facilitate the planing.

The proper method of setting an iron in a plane so that it will not show lines or marks on the work, is sometimes quite a difficult operation, as the iron is

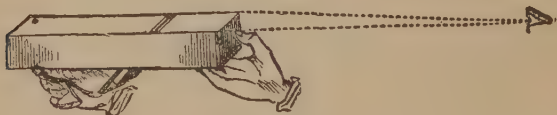


FIG. 92

expected to be perfectly square and straight on the face. It is always well to either round off the corners of the iron slightly, or grind them with a slight bevel, which will keep the corners from "digging in."

The smaller, or break-iron, whose office is to bend up the shaving somewhat sharply so as to ensure the cutting of the other iron, and to prevent its splitting off the surface of the work, should be placed so as to come within one-eighth of an inch of the extreme edge of the cutter for rough work, and within one-twentieth for finer or finishing work. The two should then be placed in position so that the edge projects the smallest possible degree below the sole. The position can only be determined by looking carefully along the

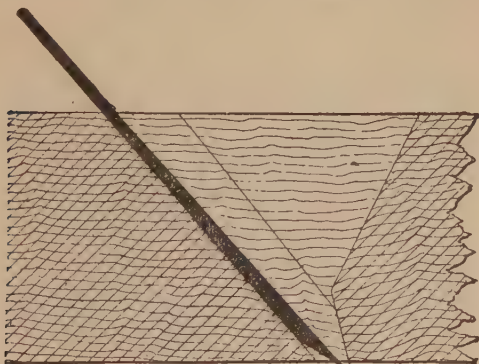


FIG. 93

bottom of the plane, with the front of the same next to the eye, as in Fig. 92. The edge will, if correctly formed and placed, appear quite parallel with the sole. It is then ready for use. The same rule applies to the small as to the large planes, except that in the jack-plane the iron projects rather more, as it is used for roughing down a surface. The trying-plane, which is longer, as before stated, and intended for edging boards which are to be joined lengthwise, is always very finely set, and the mouth is narrow. The break-

iron is also set very close down to the cutting edge. The longer the plane the more accurately level and true will be the work done by it.

New planes are often a source of trouble owing to the shavings getting fast in the mouth, the plane refusing to take any more until the wedge and iron have been removed, and all cleaned out. The cause of this difficulty is that the mouth of the plane is too narrow, as shown in Fig. 93. Sometimes workmen cut

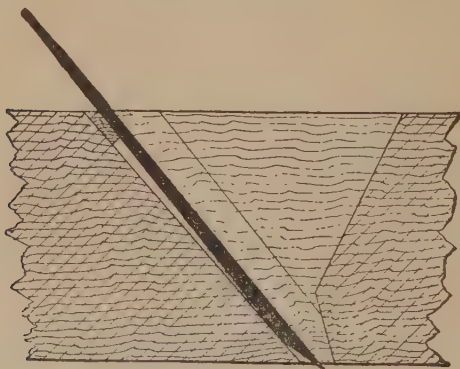


FIG. 94

a little out with a chisel, but in many instances this results in spoiling the tool, because in a short time the bottom of the plane wears away, and the mouth gets larger, subsequently getting so large as to require a piece to be set in to lessen the opening. The mouth of the plane can be kept open as long as needed by gluing a strip of soft leather, about three-fourths of an inch wide, in the mouth of the plane under the top end of the iron as shown in Fig. 94. When the plane bottom is sufficiently worn the leather can be removed

and the iron put back into its original position. The leather causes the iron to be more upright, and consequently there is a larger opening in the mouth (two thicknesses can be put under if necessary).

Pitch of Plane Cutting Iron.—To assist the reader to understand correctly the principles of plane-iron sharpening, the following information is given. The seat of the plane-iron is made at different angles, to give the pitch to suit different kinds of work. The four angles most in use are as follows: Common pitch, in which the seat for the back of the iron is at an angle of 45° from the sole (this inclination is usually employed for all planes for soft wood); New York pitch, which has an angle of 50° , and is adapted for use with mahogany and other hard, stringy woods; middle pitch or 55° , and half pitch or 60° , which are employed with moulding planes, the former being for soft wood and the latter for the harder kinds.

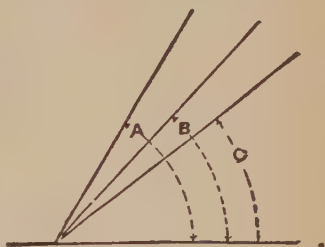


FIG. 95

Fig. 95 affords an idea of three angles, A giving the set of a half-pitched plane, B that of an ordinary plane, while C shows the inclination of an extra-pitched plane. The pitch or angle at which the cutter is set is of importance. There are three angles involved in this case: (1) The angle between the cutter and the surface of the work; this should be as small an angle as possible. It is obvious that if the surfaces of the cutter and the work were perfectly parallel, the cutter would glide over the surface without cutting, except under great pressure. By making the cutter edge

rather than its whole surface touch the work, the tendency to cut and to continue the contact is secured. The angle, which may be called the clearance angle, or the back angle, should only be enough to secure this condition of contact. (2) The angle of the cutter itself. The more acute this angle the better, if only



FIG. 96

the material will stand the strain and face the work without losing its edge. (3) The front or remaining angle may be found by subtracting both (1) and (2) from 180° , if dealing with plane surfaces, and is available for the passing away of the waste

material; in the case of the plane, however, this is limited, in order to provide means to prevent the shaving being torn up in advance of the cutting action. This provision is made by the front portion of the plane, and to be efficacious must be in contact with the work and as near the edge of the cutter as possible to allow waste to escape. A few

experiments with a knife will show that for soft materials a slight angle is best. This involves a thin knife, and its side almost in contact with the material to be cut; but as harder things are tried the stiff-

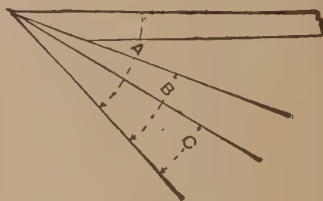


FIG. 97

ness of the cutter, and the consequent angle, must be increased, not because it is merely desirable, but because it is absolutely necessary to have a stronger cutter. The more upright an iron is set, the less

liable is it to tear up the wood in planing; but in the same degree the iron loses its edge more quickly, is more likely to jump and chatter, and is more laborious to work. In toothing planes the irons are set upright, and in "old woman's tooth," planes or routers nearly upright. In working with an upright iron, the action of the tool is a scraping one, while the more the iron is inclined the nearer it approaches the action of splitting the wood. For this reason an ordinary or extra-pitched plane is more liable to splinter up the surface of a piece of work; but this accident may be in great measure prevented by using a properly adjusted back iron. Moulding planes, rounds and hollows, bead planes, and others that work without a back iron, are usually preferred set to the half-pitch angle; while for working on end-grained stuff, extra-pitched tools, such as shoulder and bull-nosed planes, give the best results. In examining the side of a plane-iron, it is found to be made up of an iron back faced with steel. The steel, welded on to the iron and distinguished by its brighter color and finer grain, acts as a cutting edge, the iron being required to give sufficient stiffness to prevent chattering. When newly ground and sharpened, a plane-iron has three angles, one due to the pitch, A, Fig. 97, one made by the grindstone, B, and one made by the oilstone, C. The angles A and B do not alter, but C gradually becomes more acute with sharpening on the oilstone, until it lines with the face of the plane, as in Fig. 98, when the iron refuses to cut properly, and requires grinding. The pitch angle A (Fig. 96) varies in planes by different makers, as described above.



FIG. 98

Oilstones for Sharpening Plane Irons.—A good oilstone, capable of putting a keen edge on the plane irons, is a necessity to all woodworkers, but more particularly to the hardwood finisher. The Washita stone, manufactured by the Pike Mfg. Co., or other fast cutting stones are useful for removing the waste or superfluous metal from the iron when it is too thick; but it is seldom that one of these stones can be trusted to leave a keen edge on the tool. Turkey and Washita stones are the only ones that have the two good qualities combined of cutting quickly and leaving a good edge.

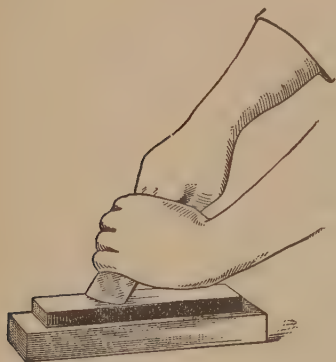


FIG. 99

Most other oilstones are slow cutters, but they are to be relied on for leaving a good, keen edge. It is necessary that the oilstone should be kept perfectly level, or it will not be possible to get a true edge. The stone should also be free from grit, or the iron will be gapped in sharpening, and will leave ridges on the planed work. In sharpening the iron after it

has been newly ground, the hands should be kept low to make the bevel correspond nearly with that made by the grindstone. As time goes on, when the iron is resharpened the hands are kept a little higher upon each occasion (see Fig. 97), until it becomes thick, as in Fig. 98; then it must be again put upon the grindstone. Some workers find it convenient to use two oilstones—one as a quick cutter, to some extent superseding the grindstone, the other for finishing the edge.

In using the oilstone, first put a few drops of good oil upon the stone, and grasp the iron as in Fig. 99; the right hand is at the top, and the thumb and fourth finger pass under. Place the whole of the fingers of the left hand upon the iron, with the thumb at the back, as seen. Now put the cutting edge (previously ground to a bevel) upon the stone in an oblique direction, as shown in

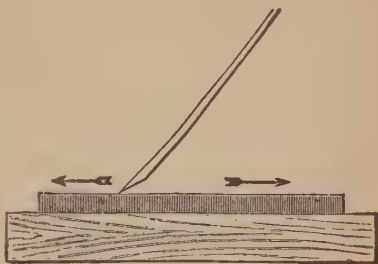


FIG. 100

Fig. 99, bearing in mind the previous remarks on the necessary inclination. The iron should now be rubbed up and down the stone, pressing it down with both hands. If the edge had been examined before placing it upon the stone, it would have been found to show a fine white line. The object of sharpening is to remove this, which must be done by rubbing on an oilstone. Having accomplished this, turn the iron face down upon the stone, and rub it lightly a few times (see Fig. 100). The iron should now have the appearances



FIG. 101



FIG. 102

indicated by Fig. 101. If the face of the iron has not been kept perfectly flat, it would appear as Fig. 98,

and would be of no use as a cutting iron. If the iron has been rubbed too long, a wire edge will appear and utterly spoil the cutting properties of the iron unless removed. This may readily be done by rubbing the iron alternately upon each side until the wire edge falls off.

When the iron is judged to be sufficiently sharp, it should be cleaned, whetted on the left hand, and its edge tried for keenness. Some try the edge by passing the thumb gently across it, but its sharpness may be judged by looking directly at it. In a sharp tool the edge is not visible to the naked eye, while if the iron should be blunt, the edge will be seen as a bright line.

SECRET OR BLIND NAILING

Secret nailing is sometimes called "blind nailing," also "chip nailing" and "sliver nailing," and is the art of finishing work in a manner which leaves no mark of nail holes or screw heads exposed to view, which, under the ordinary method of doing work, would require puttying before the painter could apply the finish.

The process of secret nailing is only used on occasional jobs of hardwood finish where an extra fine job is required. The process is very simple and can be followed by any mechanic of ordinary skill and ability. Take a very thin and sharp paring chisel, $\frac{3}{8}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$ inch wide, to raise the "chip." A sharp knife should be used to make two cuts with the grain of the wood, the width of the chisel apart, to keep the sides of the chip from splitting. The chisel should be set at a steep angle at first, till the proper depth is reached, and then made to turn out a piece of wood of even

thickness, about a sixteenth of an inch or near it, and of sufficient length to admit of driving the nail or screw. Care should be taken in raising the "chip" not to give it too sharp a curve or too great a thickness, as it is liable to break off while being straightened out again.

Some mechanics prefer a gouge for raising the "chip"; the gouge should be $\frac{5}{8}$ to $\frac{3}{4}$ of an inch wide and of a quick curve. In this case no knife is needed, as the corners of the gouge will cut the wood as it advances. The cut being made and the "chip" properly raised, a nail or screw may be driven in:

See that the nail or screw head is sunk below the surface of the recess, so that the "chip" will fit back in again without any obstruction. Now take properly prepared glue and apply to the "chip" and recess, and press the "chip" firmly in place, rubbing the face with a smooth block till the glue holds, and finish by using a little sandpaper.

If there is any difficulty about the "chip" breaking off, moisten the wood with a little water applied with a sponge to the part where the "chip" is to be raised. This will be found to be a great advantage if working on brittle wood.

As stated previously, when putting up hardwood

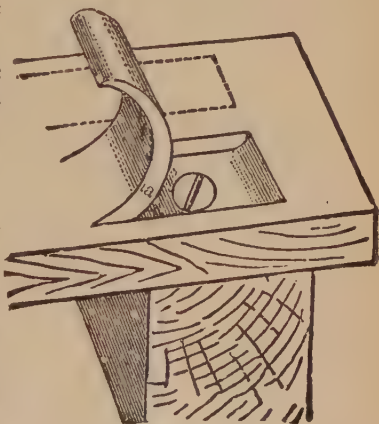


FIG. 103

finish, where it is desired that no nail or screw heads should be in sight, it is always better to make use of glue whenever possible; this will be found to be much more satisfactory than blind nailing.

The methods of secret nailing, as described in the

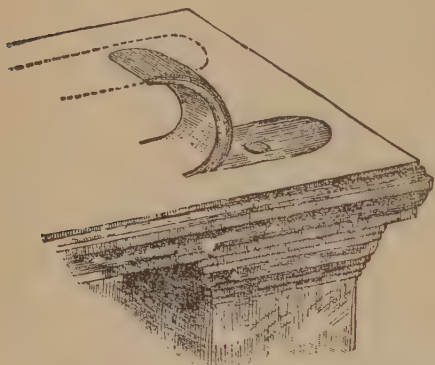


FIG. 104

foregoing, are shown in the diagrams, Figs. 103 and 104. The first shows how a square chip is raised so that a screw or nail can be put in place, after which the raised chip *a* can be glued down in place, covering the head of nail or screw.

Fig. 104 shows how the work is done by using a gouge instead of a chisel.

Sometimes blind nailing is done by driving headless nails in the edge of the work, "toe-nailing" them in the work just as matched flooring is laid. This is not a satisfactory way to do work and is not recommended, though there are cases where it will answer quite well.

HARDWOOD FINISHER

A.

American woods, 12
Apple wood, 15
A patent glue-pot, 47
A diagram of planes, 86

B.

Bevel dovetailing, 31
Bevel scrapers, 71
Blind nailing, 96

C.

Characteristics of woods, 13
Carving woods, 15
Construction, 40
Clamping veneers, 42
Cauls, 51
Cross-cut saws, 77

D.

Details of wainscot, 18
Drawing spiral baluster, 21
Dovetailing, 22
Dovetailing, plain, 23
Dovetail pins, 25
Dovetail mortises, 25
Dovetailing, tap, 27
Dovetailing, miter, 29
Dovetailing, bevel, 31
Daniels planer work, 34
Doors, 35
Doors, wedges, 42
Diagrams for veneer, 57
Dry material for work, 60
Diagrams of scraper, 69
Diagram of cutting edge, 70
Defective sharpening of scraper, 72
Dovetailing saw, 78
Determining pitch of saw teeth, 83
Direction of grain in planes, 85
Diagrams of cutting pitches, 91
Diagrams for blind nailing, 97

E.

Elevation and section of oak wainscot, 19
Equipment for making hardwood doors, 36

F.

Flatting work, 49
File-sharpening a scraper, 69
Files and rasps, 74
Filing a saw, 78
Fixing planes, 87

G.

Glued up stuff for doors, 36
Glue-pot, patent, 37
Gluing horse, 37
Gluing frame, 38
Gluing up stuff for general work, 39
Gluing up joints, 46

H.

Hardwoods generally, 16
Hardwood wainscot, 17
How to use a scraper, 63
How to hold a scraper, 64
How to sharpen a scraper, 65
Holding a scraper, 67
Handled scraper, 72
How to use sandpaper, 74
Hand saws, 77
How to file a saw, 80
Hag's tooth, 93
How to set a plane iron, 93
How to sharpen plane irons on oilstone, 95

I.

Introduction, 7
Inserting plane irons, 89

J.

Jointing, 50
Jack planes, 85

L.

Laying out dovetailing, 23
Lap dovetailing, 27
Laying out saw teeth, 83
Laying hold of smoothing plane,
88

M.

Miter dovetailing, 30
Mitered splay dovetailing, 32
Moulded panels, 42
Mortising doors, 43
Mortising tools, 44
Metal cauls, 52
Method of veneering columns, 56
Making saw teeth uniform
length, 82
Method of sighting iron in
planes, 88

P.

Preface, 5
Planer work, 34
Preparation for veneering, 48
Polish for scraper, 65
Patent scraper, 72
Planes generally, 84
Planes—how to use, 86
Pitch of plane irons, 91

R.

Remarks on veneering, 48
Round corner scraper, 62
Rules for scraper sharpening, 70
Round and hollow scrapers, 73
Rasps and files, 74
Rip saws, 76
Regulating the saw teeth, 82

S.

Spiral baluster or newel, 21
Section and elevation of oak
wainscot, 19
Secret lap dovetailing, 28
Surplus glue, rubbing out, 45

Sizing up work for gluing, 48

Scrapers, 61

Scrapers with handles, 61

Saw plate scrapers, 62

Sharpening a scraper, 64

Sharpening on oilstone, 68

Sharpening by using a file, 69

Sandpaper blocks, 74

Saws for hardwood, 75

Saw teeth, 78

Setting a saw, 79

Sharpening tenon saws, 81

Squaring over saw teeth, 83

Smoothing planes, 87

Sighting plane iron, 88

Setting in plane iron, 89

Stones for sharpening plane
iron, 94

Secret nailing, 96

T.

The better woods to make use
of, 16

The choice of glue, 45

Tenon saws, 78

Trying planes, 86

V.

Veneers, 40

Veneering, 41

Veneering by cauls, 51

Veneering round and tapering
columns, 55

Veneering small work, 58

Veneering beveled picture
frames, 59

Varieties of scrapers, 73

W.

Wood discussed, 10

Woods of various kinds, 12

Wedged doors, 42

Wood scrapers, 61

Wood planes, 86

